



Cloud Manager 3.8 docs

Cloud Manager

NetApp

June 15, 2020

This PDF was generated from <https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/occm/index.html> on June 15, 2020. Always check docs.netapp.com for the latest.



Table of Contents

Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP documentation	1
Discover what's new	1
Get started	1
Automate with APIs	1
Connect with peers, get help, and find more information	1
Release notes	2
Cloud Manager	2
Concepts	17
Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP overview	17
NetApp Cloud Central	18
Cloud Central accounts	19
Cloud provider credentials	25
Storage	32
High-availability pairs	42
Evaluating	51
Licensing	51
Security	52
Performance	55
Get started	56
Deployment overview	56
Getting started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS	58
Getting started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure	59
Getting started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud Platform	61
Set up Cloud Manager	63
Network requirements	86
Additional deployment options	107
Logging in to Cloud Manager	121
Keeping Cloud Manager up and running	122
Manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP	123
Deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP	123
Provision and manage storage	159
Replicating data between systems	180
Backup to Cloud	188
Monitor performance	204
Administer Cloud Volumes ONTAP	212
Manage ONTAP clusters	231

Discovering ONTAP clusters	231
Provisioning storage for ONTAP clusters	232
Tier on-prem data to the cloud	233
Provision volumes for file services	267
Managing volumes for Azure NetApp Files	267
Managing Cloud Volumes Service for AWS	277
Viewing your Amazon S3 buckets	283
Gain insight into data privacy	285
Learn about Cloud Compliance	285
Get started	289
Gaining visibility and control of private data	308
Viewing compliance reports	322
Responding to a Data Subject Access Request	326
Disabling Cloud Compliance	328
Frequently asked questions about Cloud Compliance	329
Administer Cloud Manager	334
Updating Cloud Manager	334
Managing workspaces and users in the Cloud Central account	335
Removing Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environments	338
Configuring Cloud Manager to use a proxy server	339
Renewing the Cloud Manager HTTPS certificate	340
Overriding CIFS locks for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA in Azure	340
Restoring Cloud Manager	341
Uninstalling Cloud Manager	342
APIs and automation	343
Automation samples for infrastructure as code	343
Reference	344
Security group rules for AWS	344
Security group rules for Azure	351
Firewall rules for GCP	358
AWS Marketplace pages for Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP	365
How Cloud Manager uses cloud provider permissions	366
Default configurations	375
Roles	379
Where to get help and find more information	380
Earlier versions of Cloud Manager documentation	383
Legal notices	384
Copyright	384

Trademarks	384
Patents	384
Privacy policy	384
Open source.....	384

Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP documentation

Cloud Manager enables you to deploy and manage NetApp Cloud Volumes ONTAP, which is a data management solution that provides protection, visibility, and control for your cloud-based workloads.

Discover what's new

- [What's new in Cloud Manager](#)
- [What's new in Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)

Get started

- [Get started in AWS](#)
- [Get started in Azure](#)
- [Get started in Google Cloud Platform](#)
- [Find supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)
- [Review networking requirements for Cloud Manager](#)
- [Review networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP for AWS](#)
- [Review networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP for Azure](#)
- [Review networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP for GCP](#)
- [Plan your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration](#)

Automate with APIs

- [API Developer Guide](#)
- [Automation samples](#)

Connect with peers, get help, and find more information

- [NetApp Community: Cloud Data Services](#)
- [NetApp Cloud Volumes ONTAP Support](#)
- [Where to get help and find more information](#)

Release notes

Cloud Manager

What's new in Cloud Manager 3.8

Cloud Manager typically introduces a new release every month to bring you new features, enhancements, and bug fixes.



Looking for a previous release?

[What's new in 3.7](#)

[What's new in 3.6](#)

[What's new in 3.5](#)

Cloud Manager 3.8.5 (31 May 2020)

- [New subscription required in the Azure Marketplace](#)
- [Backup to Cloud enhancements](#)
- [Cloud Compliance enhancements](#)

New subscription required in the Azure Marketplace

A new subscription is available in the Azure Marketplace. This one-time subscription is required to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 PAYGO (except for your 30-day free trial system). The subscription also enables us to offer add-on features for Cloud Volumes ONTAP PAYGO and BYOL. You'll be charged from this subscription for every Cloud Volumes ONTAP PAYGO system that you create and each add-on feature that you enable.

Cloud Manager will prompt you to subscribe to this offering when you deploy a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP system (9.7 P1 or later).

The screenshot shows the 'Details & Credentials' page for a cloud environment. At the top, it displays 'MyAzureCredentials' under 'Credentials' and 'AzureSubscription1222aaaa' under 'Azure Subscription'. A message 'No subscription is associated' is shown with a yellow warning icon. Below this, there are two sections: 'Details' and 'Credentials'. The 'Details' section contains fields for 'Working Environment Name (Cluster Name)' and 'Resource Group Name', which is set to '[Working Environment Name]-rg' and has a checked 'Use Default' option. The 'Credentials' section contains fields for 'User Name' and 'Password'. A red arrow points from the bottom right towards the 'Edit Credentials' button.

Backup to Cloud enhancements

The following enhancements are now available for Backup to Cloud.

- In Azure, you can now create a new resource group or select an existing resource group instead of having Cloud Manager create one for you. The resource group can't be changed after you enable Backup to Cloud.
- In AWS, you can now back up Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances that reside on a different AWS account than your Cloud Manager AWS account.
- Additional options are now available when selecting the backup schedule for volumes. In addition to daily, weekly, and monthly backup options, you can now select one of the system-defined policies that provide combination policies such as 30 daily, 13 weekly, and 12 monthly backups.
- After deleting all backups for a volume, you can now start creating backups again for that volume. This was a known limitation in the previous release.

Cloud Compliance enhancements

The following enhancements are available for Cloud Compliance.

- You can now scan S3 buckets that are in different AWS accounts than the Cloud Compliance instance. You just need to create a role on that new account so that the existing Cloud Compliance instance can connect to those buckets. [Learn more](#).

If you configured Cloud Compliance before release 3.8.5, you will need to modify the existing [IAM role for the Cloud Compliance instance](#) to use this functionality.

- You can now filter the contents of the investigation page to display only the results you want to see. Filters include working environment, category, private data, file type, last modified date, and whether the S3 object's permissions are open to public access.

Dashboard Investigation		3011 Results Found					
FILTERS:		Clear All	File Name ↓↑	Personal ↓↑	Sensitive Personal ↓↑	Data Subjects ↓↑	File Type ↓↑
Working Environment	+ 	> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	6	3	16	PDF	
Storage Repository	+ 	> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	9	2	11	PDF	
Category	+ 	> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	4	1	7	PDF	
Private Data 6	+ 	> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	9	1	6	PDF	
File Type	+ 	> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	8	6	4	PDF	

- You can now activate and deactivate Cloud Compliance on a working environment directly from the Cloud Compliance tab.

Cloud Manager 3.8.4 update (10 May 2020)

We released an enhancement to Cloud Manager 3.8.4.

Cloud Insights integration

By leveraging NetApp's Cloud Insights service, Cloud Manager gives you insights into the health and performance of your Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances and helps you troubleshoot and optimize the performance of your cloud storage environment. [Learn more](#).

Cloud Manager 3.8.4 (3 May 2020)

Cloud Manager 3.8.4 includes the following improvement.

Backup to Cloud enhancements

The following enhancements are now available for Backup to Cloud (previously called *Backup to S3* for AWS):

- **Backing up to Azure Blob storage**

Backup to Cloud is now available for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure. Backup to Cloud provides backup and restore capabilities for protection, and long-term archive of your cloud data. [Learn more](#).

- **Deleting backups**

You can now delete all backups for a specific volume directly from the Cloud Manager interface. [Learn more](#).

Cloud Manager 3.8.3 (5 Apr 2020)

- [Cloud Tiering integration](#)
- [Data migration to Azure NetApp Files](#)
- [Cloud Compliance enhancements](#)
- [Backup to S3 enhancements](#)
- [iSCSI volumes using APIs](#)

Cloud Tiering integration

NetApp's Cloud Tiering service is now available from within Cloud Manager. Cloud Tiering enables you to tier data from an on-premises ONTAP cluster to lower-cost object storage in the cloud. This frees up high-performance storage space on the cluster for more workloads.

[Learn more.](#)

Data migration to Azure NetApp Files

You can now migrate NFS or SMB data to Azure NetApp Files directly from Cloud Manager. Data syncs are powered by NetApp's Cloud Sync service.

[Learn how to migrate data to Azure NetApp Files.](#)

Cloud Compliance enhancements

The following enhancements are now available for Cloud Compliance.

- **30-day free trial for Amazon S3**

A 30-day free trial is now available to scan Amazon S3 data with Cloud Compliance. If you previously enabled Cloud Compliance on Amazon S3, your 30-day free trial is active starting today (5 Apr 2020).

A subscription to the AWS Marketplace is required to continue scanning Amazon S3 after the free trial ends. [Learn how to subscribe.](#)

[Learn about pricing to scan Amazon S3.](#)

- **New personal data type**

Cloud Compliance can now find a new national identifier in files: Brazilian ID (CPF).

[Learn more about personal data types.](#)

- **Support for additional metadata categories**

Cloud Compliance can now categorize your data into nine additional metadata categories. [See the](#)

[full list of supported metadata categories.](#)

Backup to S3 enhancements

The following enhancements are now available for the Backup to S3 service.

- **S3 lifecycle policy for backups**

Backups start in the *Standard* storage class and transition to the *Standard-Infrequent Access* storage class after 30 days.

- **Deleting backups**

You can now delete backups using a Cloud Manager API. [Learn more.](#)

- **Block public access**

Cloud Manager now enables the [Amazon S3 Block Public Access feature](#) on the S3 bucket where backups are stored.

iSCSI volumes using APIs

The Cloud Manager APIs now enable you to create iSCSI volumes. [View an example here.](#)

Cloud Manager 3.8.2 (1 Mar 2020)

- [Amazon S3 working environments](#)
- [Cloud Compliance enhancements](#)
- [NFS version for volumes](#)
- [Support for Azure US Gov regions](#)

Amazon S3 working environments

Cloud Manager now automatically discovers information about the Amazon S3 buckets that reside in the AWS account where it's installed. This enables you to easily see details about your S3 buckets, including the region, access level, storage class, and whether the bucket is used with Cloud Volumes ONTAP for backups or data tiering. And you can scan the S3 buckets with Cloud Compliance, as described below.

The screenshot shows the Amazon S3 console. At the top left is the 'Amazon S3' logo. Below it, under 'S3 Information', there are two boxes: one showing '242 Total Buckets' with a trash can icon and another showing '15 Regions' with a location pin icon. To the right, under 'Number of buckets with active services', there are two boxes: one for 'Backup Targets' (144) with a cloud icon and another for 'Tiering Target' (23) with a triangle icon. Below these are navigation buttons for '1 - 50 of 242' and 'Next ►'. A search bar is at the top right. The main table lists three buckets: 'appsinstall' (US West (Oregon)), 'automationbucketeran' (US West (Oregon)), and 'aws-athena-query-results-64...'. The columns are 'Bucket Name', 'Region', 'Backup', 'Tiering', 'Access', and 'Storage Class'. The 'Access' column indicates 'Objects can be public' for the first two buckets.

Bucket Name	Region	Backup	Tiering	Access	Storage Class
appsinstall	US West (Oregon)			Objects can be public	normal
automationbucketeran	US West (Oregon)			⚠️ Public	normal
aws-athena-query-results-64...	US West (Oregon)			Objects can be public	normal

Cloud Compliance enhancements

The following enhancements are now available for Cloud Compliance.

- **Support for Amazon S3**

Cloud Compliance can now scan your Amazon S3 buckets to identify the personal and sensitive data that resides in S3 object storage. Cloud Compliance can scan any bucket in the account, regardless if it was created for a NetApp solution.

[Learn how to get started.](#)

- **Investigation page**

A new Investigation page is now available for each type of personal file, sensitive personal file, category, and file type. The page shows details about the affected files and enables you to sort by the files that include the most personal data, sensitive personal data, and names of data subjects. This page replaces the CSV report that was previously available.

Here's a sample:

The screenshot shows the Cloud Compliance Investigation page. At the top left is the 'Cloud Compliance' logo. Below it, a back button and the title 'Dashboard Investigation for 'German Tax Identification Number (Steuerliche Identifikationsnummer)'' are displayed. It shows '1034 results found in 3 Working Environments'. A search bar and a download button are at the top right. The main table has columns: 'File Name ↓↑', 'Personal ↓↑', 'Sensitive Personal ↓↑', 'Data Subjects ↓↑', and 'File Type ↓↑'. Three rows are listed, all corresponding to 'Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388' with counts of 6, 3, 16, and PDF respectively.

File Name ↓↑	Personal ↓↑	Sensitive Personal ↓↑	Data Subjects ↓↑	File Type ↓↑
> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	6	3	16	PDF
> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	9	2	11	PDF
> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	4	1	7	PDF

[Learn more about the Investigation page.](#)

- **PCI DSS Report**

A new Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI DSS) Report is now available. This report can help you identify the distribution of credit card information across your files. You can view how many files contain credit card information, whether the working environments are protected by encryption or ransomware protection, retention details, and more.

[Learn more about the PCI DSS report.](#)

- **New sensitive personal data type**

Cloud Compliance can now find ICD-10-CM Medical Codes, which are used in the medical and health industry.

NFS version for volumes

You can now select the NFS version to enable on a volume when you create or edit a volume for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Volume Details, Protection & Protocol

Details & Protection		Protocol
Volume Name: <input type="text" value="vol1"/>	Size (GB): <input type="text" value="200"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NFS Protocol <input type="radio"/> CIFS Protocol
Snapshot Policy: <input type="text" value="default"/>		Access Control: <input type="text" value="Custom export policy"/>
<small><input type="radio"/> Default Policy</small>		<small><input type="text" value="172.31.0.0/16"/></small>
Advanced options Select NFS Version: <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> NFSv3 <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> NFSv4		

Support for Azure US Gov regions

Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs are now supported in Azure US Gov regions.

[See the list of supported Azure regions.](#)

Cloud Manager 3.8.1 update (16 Feb 2020)

We released a few enhancements to Cloud Manager 3.8.1.

Backup to S3 enhancements

- Backup copies are now stored in an S3 bucket that Cloud Manager creates in your AWS account, with one bucket per Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.
- Backup to S3 is now supported in all AWS regions [where Cloud Volumes ONTAP is supported](#).
- You can set the backup schedule to daily, weekly, or monthly.
- Cloud Manager no longer needs to set up *private links* to the Backup to S3 service.

Additional S3 permissions are required for these enhancements. The IAM role that provides Cloud Manager with permissions must include permissions from the latest [Cloud Manager policy](#).

[Learn more about Backup to S3.](#)

AWS updates

We've introduced support for new EC2 instances and a change in the number of supported data disks for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 and 9.7. Check out the changes in the Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes.

- [Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 Release Notes](#)
- [Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 Release Notes](#)

Cloud Manager 3.8.1 (2 Feb 2020)

- [Cloud Compliance enhancements](#)
- [Enhancements to accounts and subscriptions](#)
- [Timeline enhancements](#)

Cloud Compliance enhancements

The following enhancements are now available for Cloud Compliance.

- **Support for Azure NetApp Files**

We're pleased to announce that Cloud Compliance can now scan Azure NetApp Files to identify personal and sensitive data that resides on volumes.

[Learn how to get started.](#)

- **Scan status**

Cloud Compliance now shows you a scan status for each CIFS and NFS volume, including error messages that you can use to correct any issues.

[Back](#)

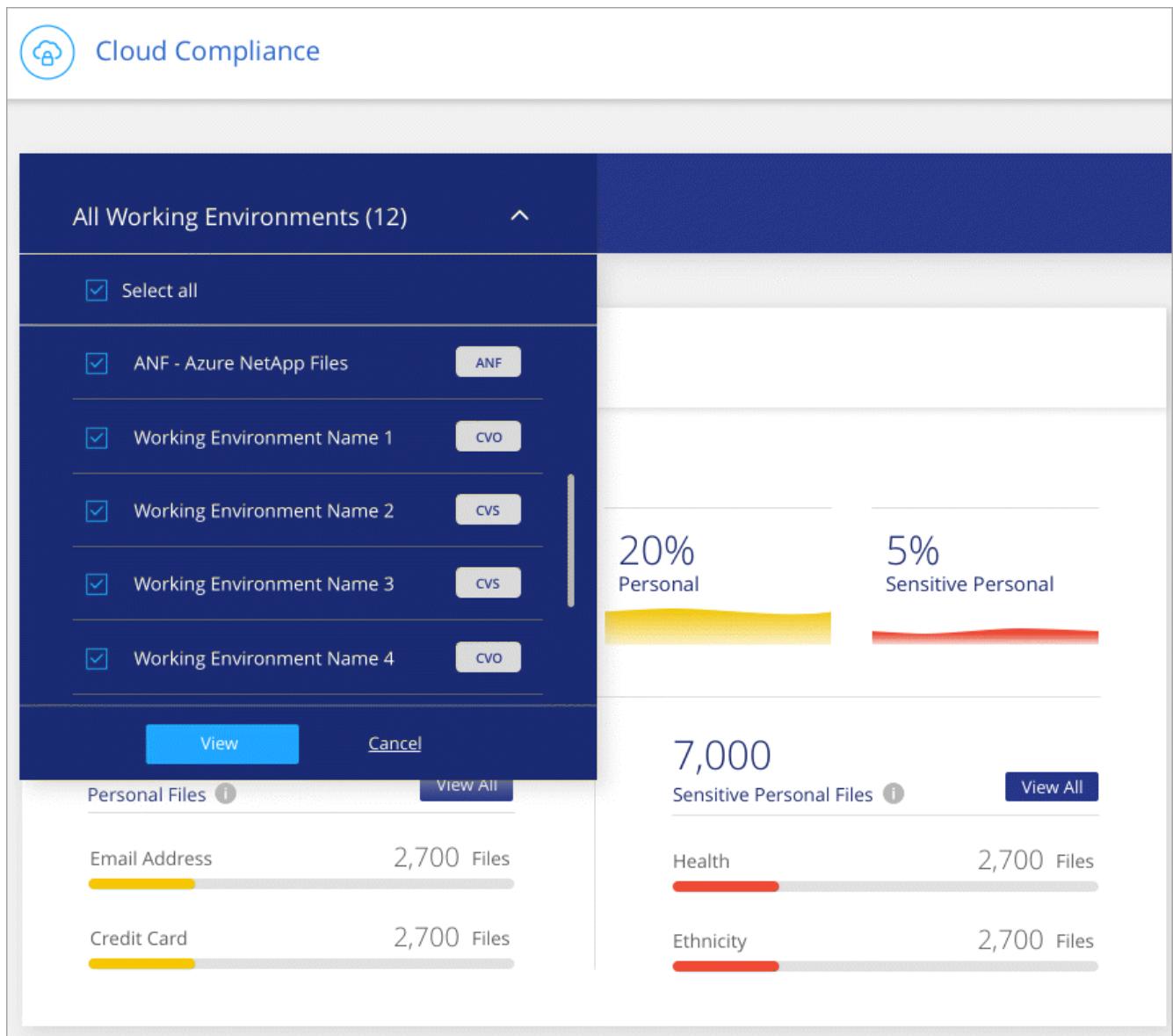
Volumes Scan Status for cognigoWE

2 Volumes found

Name ↓↑	Protocol ↓↑	Status ↓↑	Details ↓↑
\\172.31.134.172\cifs_vol_share	CIFS	● Not Scanning	The CIFS credentials that you provided don't have sufficient per...
172.31.134.172:/parallel_tests	NFS	● Continuously Scanning	

- **Filter dashboard by working environment**

You can now filter the contents of the Cloud Compliance dashboard to see compliance data for specific working environments.



- **New personal data type**

Cloud Compliance can now identify a California Driver's License when scanning data.

- **Support for additional categories**

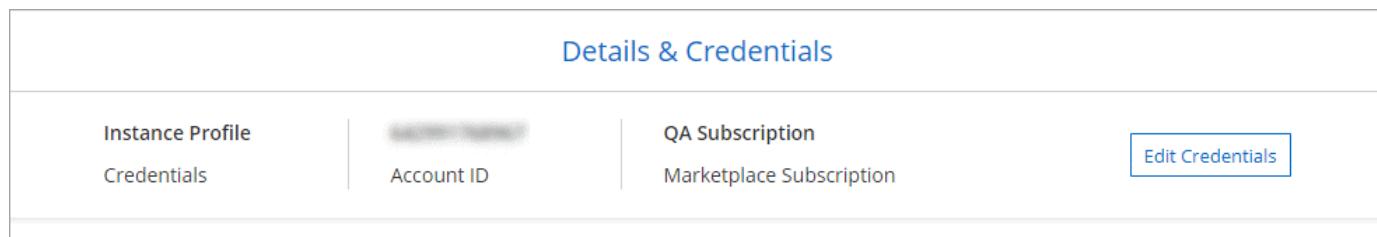
Three additional categories are supported: Application data, logs, and database and index files.

[Learn more about categories.](#)

Enhancements to accounts and subscriptions

We've made it easier to select an AWS account or GCP project and an associated marketplace subscription for a pay-as-you-go Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. These enhancements help to ensure that you're paying from the right account or project.

For example, when you create a system in AWS, click **Edit Credentials** if you don't want to use the default account and subscription:



From there, you can choose the account credentials that you want to use and the associated AWS marketplace subscription. You can even add a marketplace subscription, if you need to.

Edit Account & Add Subscription

Credentials

Instance Profile | Account ID: [REDACTED]

Associated Subscription

QA Subscription

Associate Subscription to Credentials

To create a pay-as-you-go Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, you need to select AWS credentials that are associated with a subscription to Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the AWS Marketplace.

[+ Add Subscription](#)

[Apply](#)

[Cancel](#)

And if you manage multiple AWS subscriptions, you can assign each one of them to different AWS credentials from the Credentials page in the settings:

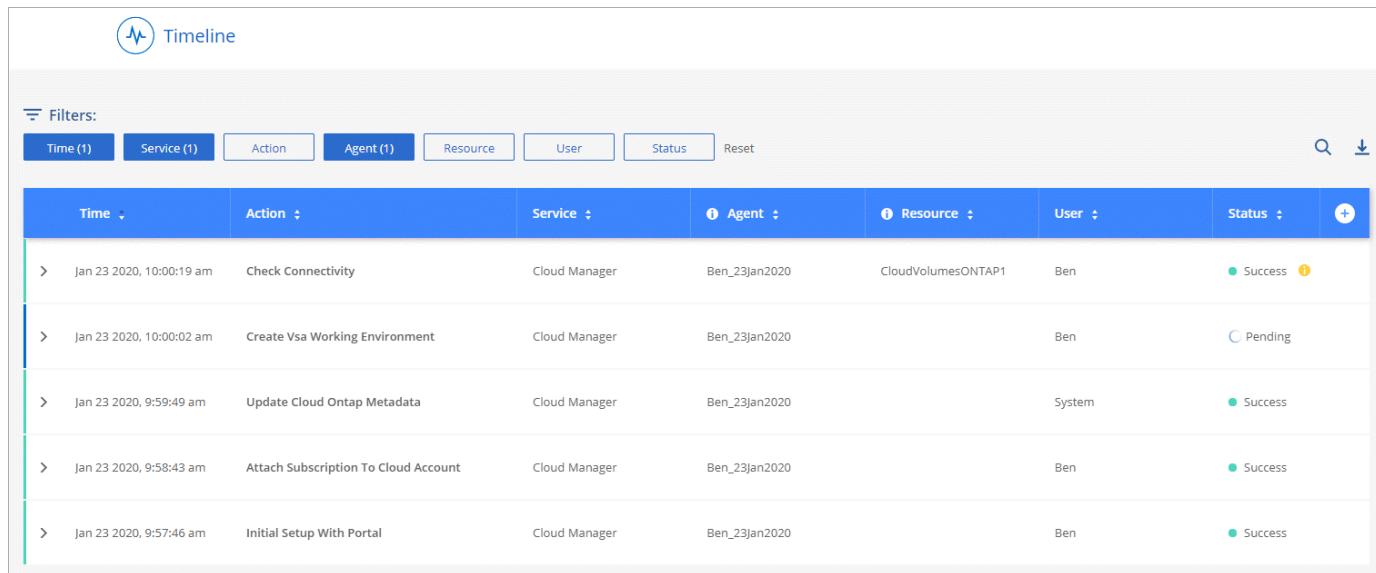
The screenshot shows a modal dialog titled "Edit Account & Add Subscription". At the top left is the AWS logo with the text "aws IT". To the right are buttons for "+ Add Subscription" (with a cursor icon), "Edit", "Delete", and a close button (X). The main area contains two columns of information: "AWS Account ID" and "AWS Access Key", both currently showing "[REDACTED]". Below these are "Subscription" and "Working Environments" counts: "No Subscription" (0) and "0 Working Environments".

Learn how to manage AWS credentials in Cloud Manager.

Timeline enhancements

The Timeline was enhanced to provide you with more information about the NetApp cloud services that you use.

- The Timeline now shows actions for all Cloud Manager systems within the same Cloud Central account
- You can now find information more easily by filtering, searching, and adding and removing columns
- You can now download the timeline data in CSV format
- In the future, the Timeline will show actions for each NetApp cloud service that you use (but you can filter the information down to a single service)



The screenshot shows the Cloud Manager Timeline interface. At the top, there's a header with a circular icon containing a stylized 'A' and the word 'Timeline'. Below the header is a 'Filters' section with several buttons: 'Time (1)', 'Service (1)', 'Action', 'Agent (1)', 'Resource', 'User', and 'Status', followed by a 'Reset' button. To the right of the filters are a magnifying glass icon for search and a downward arrow icon for download. The main area is a table with the following columns: Time, Action, Service, Agent, Resource, User, and Status. The table contains five rows of data:

Time	Action	Service	Agent	Resource	User	Status
Jan 23 2020, 10:00:19 am	Check Connectivity	Cloud Manager	Ben_23Jan2020	CloudVolumesONTAP1	Ben	Success ⓘ
Jan 23 2020, 10:00:02 am	Create Vsa Working Environment	Cloud Manager	Ben_23Jan2020		Ben	Pending
Jan 23 2020, 9:59:49 am	Update Cloud Ontap Metadata	Cloud Manager	Ben_23Jan2020		System	Success
Jan 23 2020, 9:58:43 am	Attach Subscription To Cloud Account	Cloud Manager	Ben_23Jan2020		Ben	Success
Jan 23 2020, 9:57:46 am	Initial Setup With Portal	Cloud Manager	Ben_23Jan2020		Ben	Success

Cloud Manager 3.8 (8 Jan 2020)

- [HA enhancements in Azure](#)
- [Data tiering enhancements in GCP](#)

HA enhancements in Azure

The following enhancements are now available for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs in Azure.

- **Override CIFS locks for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA in Azure**

You can now enable a setting in Cloud Manager that prevents issues with Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage failover during Azure maintenance events. When you enable this setting, Cloud Volumes ONTAP vetoes CIFS locks and resets active CIFS sessions. [Learn more](#).

- **HTTPS connection from Cloud Volumes ONTAP to storage accounts**

You can now enable an HTTPS connection from a Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 HA pair to Azure storage accounts when creating a working environment. Note that enabling this option can impact write performance. You can't change the setting after you create the working environment.

- **Support for Azure general-purpose v2 storage accounts**

The storage accounts that Cloud Manager creates for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 HA pairs are now general-purpose v2 storage accounts.

Data tiering enhancements in GCP

The following enhancements are available for Cloud Volumes ONTAP data tiering in GCP.

- **Google Cloud storage classes for data tiering**

You can now choose a storage class for data that Cloud Volumes ONTAP tiers to Google Cloud Storage:

- Standard Storage (default)
- Nearline Storage
- Coldline Storage

[Learn more about Google Cloud storage classes.](#)

[Learn how to change the storage class for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

- **Data tiering using a service account**

Starting with the 9.7 release, Cloud Manager now sets a service account on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance. This service account provides permissions for data tiering to a Google Cloud Storage bucket. This change provides more security and requires less setup. For step-by-step instructions when deploying a new system, [see step 3 on this page](#).

The following image shows the Working Environment wizard where you can select a storage class and service account:

Data Tiering in Google Cloud Platform

Data tiering can reduce your storage costs by automatically tiering cold data to a Google Cloud Storage bucket.

Tiering data to object storage Data Tiering Edit Storage Class Edit

Tiering Enabled

Select a GCP service account to enable data tiering.
[Learn more about data tiering in GCP.](#)

Service Account
tiering-cloud-volumes-ontap

Cloud Manager requires the following GCP permissions for these enhancements, as shown in the latest [Cloud Manager policy for GCP](#).

- `storage.buckets.update`
- `compute.instances.setServiceAccount`
- `iam.serviceAccounts.getIamPolicy`
- `iam.serviceAccounts.list`

Known issues

Known issues identify problems that might prevent you from using this release of the product successfully.

There are no known issues in this release of Cloud Manager.

You can find known issues for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in the [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#) and for ONTAP software in general in the [ONTAP Release Notes](#).

Known limitations

Known limitations identify platforms, devices, or functions that are not supported by this release of the product, or that do not interoperate correctly with it. Review these limitations carefully.

Cloud Manager should remain running at all times

Cloud Manager is a key component in the health and billing of Cloud Volumes ONTAP. If Cloud Manager is powered down, Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems will shut down after losing communication with Cloud Manager for longer than 4 days.

Shared Linux hosts are not supported

Cloud Manager is not supported on a host that is shared with other applications. The host must be a dedicated host.

Cloud Manager does not support FlexGroup volumes

While Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports FlexGroup volumes, Cloud Manager does not. If you create a FlexGroup volume from System Manager or from the CLI, then you should set Cloud Manager's Capacity Management mode to Manual. Automatic mode might not work properly with FlexGroup volumes.

Active Directory not supported by default with new installations of Cloud Manager

Starting with version 3.4, new installations of Cloud Manager do not support using your organization's Active Directory authentication for user management. If needed, NetApp can help you set up Active Directory with Cloud Manager. Click the chat icon in the lower right of Cloud Manager to get assistance.

Limitations with the AWS GovCloud (US) region

- Cloud Manager must be deployed in the AWS GovCloud (US) region if you want to launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances in the AWS GovCloud (US) region.
- When deployed in the AWS GovCloud (US) region, Cloud Manager cannot discover ONTAP clusters in a NetApp Private Storage for Microsoft Azure configuration or a NetApp Private Storage for SoftLayer configuration.

Cloud Manager does not set up iSCSI volumes

When you create a volume in Cloud Manager using the Storage System View, you can choose the NFS or CIFS protocol. You must use OnCommand System Manager to create a volume for iSCSI.

Storage Virtual Machine (SVM) limitation

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports one data-serving SVM and one or more SVMs used for disaster recovery. The one data-serving SVM spans the entire Cloud Volumes ONTAP system (HA pair or single node).

Cloud Manager does not provide any setup or orchestration support for SVM disaster recovery. It also does not support storage-related tasks on any additional SVMs. You must use System Manager or the CLI for SVM disaster recovery.

Concepts

Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP overview

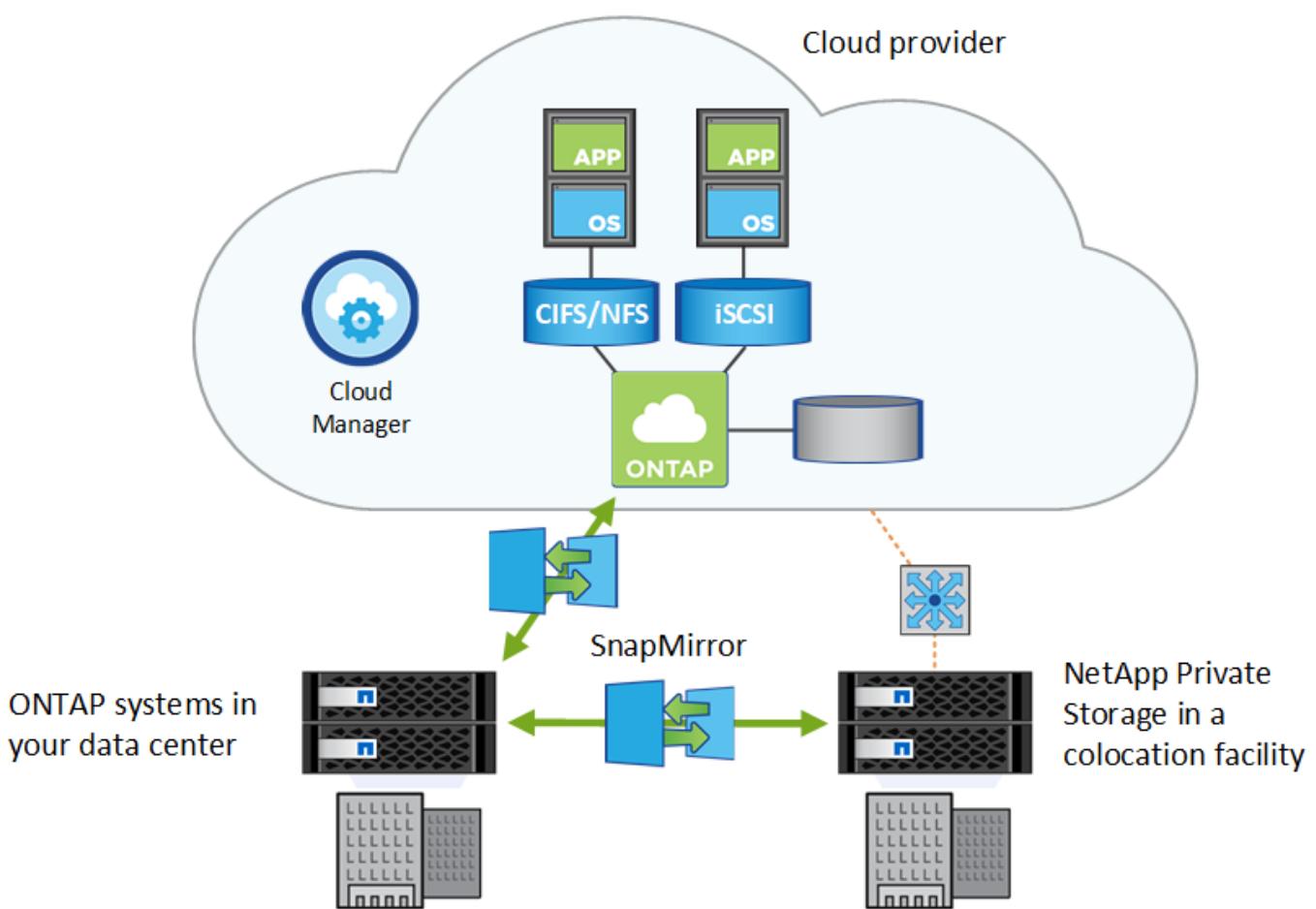
Cloud Manager enables you to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP, which provides enterprise-class features for your cloud storage, and to easily replicate data across hybrid clouds built on NetApp.

Cloud Manager

Cloud Manager was built with simplicity in mind. It guides you through Cloud Volumes ONTAP setup in a few steps, eases data management by offering simplified storage provisioning and automated capacity management, enables drag-and-drop data replication across a hybrid cloud, and more.

Cloud Manager is required to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP, but it can also discover and provision storage for on-premises ONTAP clusters. This provides a central point of control for your cloud and on-premises storage infrastructure.

You can run Cloud Manager in the cloud or in your network—it just needs a connection to the networks in which you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP. The following image shows Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP running in a cloud provider. It also shows data replication across a hybrid cloud.



[Learn more about Cloud Manager](#)

Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Cloud Volumes ONTAP is a software-only storage appliance that runs the ONTAP data management software in the cloud. You can use Cloud Volumes ONTAP for production workloads, disaster recovery, DevOps, file shares, and database management.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP extends enterprise storage to the cloud with the following key features:

- Storage efficiencies
Leverage built-in data deduplication, data compression, thin provisioning, and cloning to minimize storage costs.
- High availability
Ensure enterprise reliability and continuous operations in case of failures in your cloud environment.
- Data replication
Cloud Volumes ONTAP leverages SnapMirror, NetApp's industry-leading replication technology, to replicate on-premises data to the cloud so it's easy to have secondary copies available for multiple use cases.
- Data tiering
Switch between high and low-performance storage pools on-demand without taking applications offline.
- Application consistency
Ensure consistency of NetApp Snapshot copies using NetApp SnapCenter.



Licenses for ONTAP features are included with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

[View supported Cloud Volumes ONTAP configurations](#)

[Learn more about Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)

NetApp Cloud Central

[NetApp Cloud Central](#) provides a centralized location to access and manage NetApp cloud data services. These services enable you to run critical applications in the cloud, create automated DR sites, back up your SaaS data, and effectively migrate and control data across multiple clouds.

Cloud Manager's integration with NetApp Cloud Central provides several benefits, including a simplified deployment experience, a single location to view and manage multiple Cloud Manager systems, and centralized user authentication.

With centralized user authentication, you can use the same set of credentials across Cloud Manager systems and between Cloud Manager and other data services, such as Cloud Sync. It's also easy to reset your password if you forgot it.

The screenshot shows the 'Fabric View' interface of the NetApp Cloud Manager. At the top, there are user profile and notification icons. Below the header, the title 'Fabric View' is centered. The main area features a grid of service cards. The columns represent different cloud providers: Microsoft Azure (with its logo), Amazon Web Services (with its logo), Google Cloud Platform (with its logo), and On-Premises (represented by three horizontal bars). Each card includes a circular icon, the service name, and a 'Go to' link. A blue speech bubble icon is located in the bottom right corner of the grid area.

	Microsoft Azure	Amazon Web Services	Google Cloud Platform	On-Premises
Cloud Sync Go to Cloud Sync				
Cloud Tiering Go to Cloud Tiering				
Cloud Volumes Service Get Started	The industry's leading Network File System (NFS/SMB) service in the cloud			
Cloud Volumes ONTAP Create Cloud Manager	Simple & Fast Enterprise Cloud Storage			
Kubernetes Service Go to	The Universal Control Plane for Managed Kubernetes now available for everyone			
Cloud Insights Go to Cloud Insights	Innovate faster with insights across your application infrastructure stack			
SaaS Backup Go to SaaS Backup	A secure, encrypted cloud-native offering that safeguards your business-critical Microsoft Office 365 and Salesforce data from corruption, malicious or accidental deletion			
Cloud Backup Service Register for Preview	A fully managed Backup and Restore Service for your Cloud Volumes Service data			

Cloud Central accounts

Each Cloud Manager system is associated with a *NetApp Cloud Central account*. A Cloud Central account provides multi-tenancy and enables you to organize users and resources in isolated workspaces.

A Cloud Central account enables multi-tenancy:

- A single Cloud Central account can include multiple Cloud Manager systems that serve different business needs.

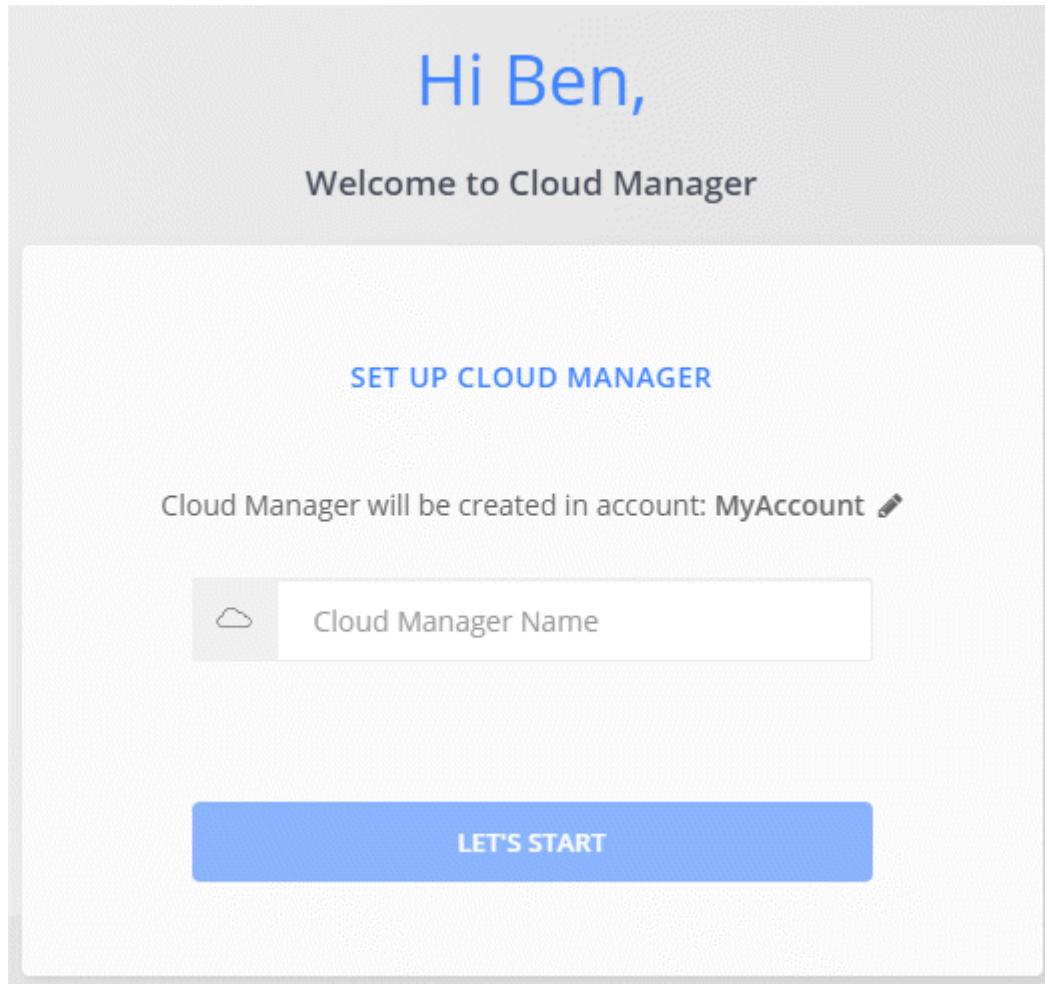
Because users are associated with the Cloud Central account, there's no need to configure users for

each individual Cloud Manager system.

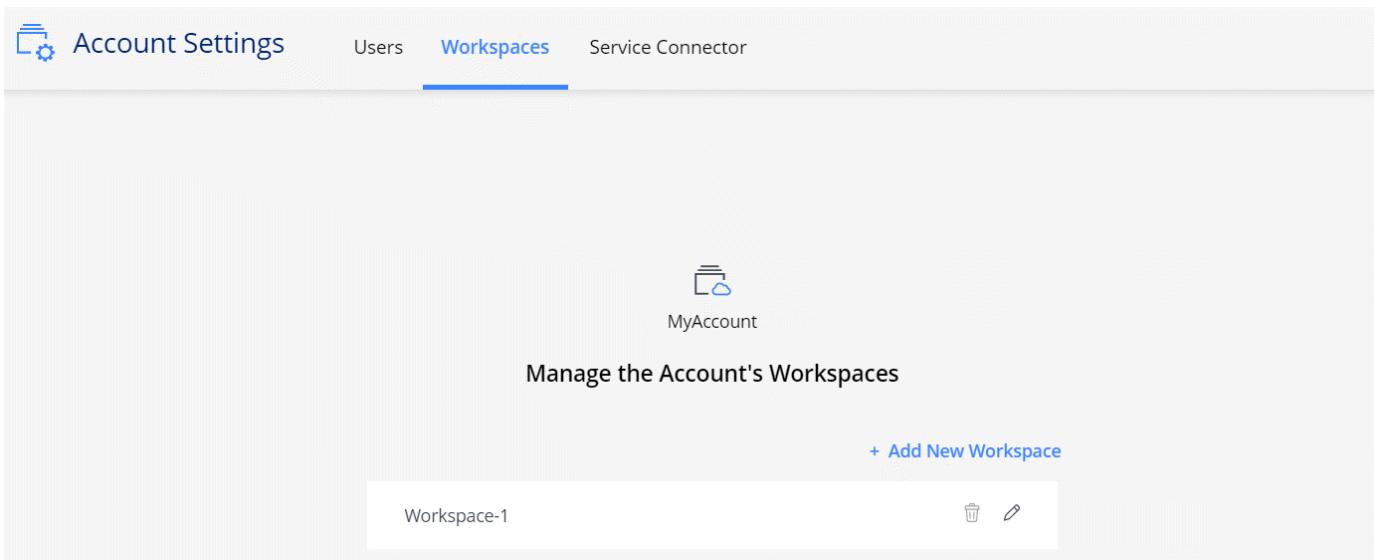
- Within each Cloud Manager system, multiple users can deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in isolated environments called workspaces.

These workspaces are invisible to other users, unless they are shared.

When you deploy Cloud Manager, you select the Cloud Central account to associate with the system:



Account Admins can then modify the settings for this account by managing users, workspaces, and service connectors:



For step-by-step instructions, see [Setting up the Cloud Central account](#).



Cloud Manager needs access to <https://cloudmanager.cloud.netapp.com> in order to connect to the Cloud Central account service. Open this URL on your firewall to ensure that Cloud Manager can contact the service.

Users, workspaces, and service connectors

The Account Settings widget in Cloud Manager enables Account Admins to manage a Cloud Central account. If you just created your account, then you'll start from scratch. But if you've already set up an account, then you'll see *all* the users, workspaces, and service connectors that are associated with the account.

Users

These are NetApp Cloud Central users that you associate with your Cloud Central account. Associating a user with an account and one or more workspaces in that account enables those users to create and manage working environments in Cloud Manager.

When you associate a user, you assign them a role:

- *Account Admin*: Can perform any action in Cloud Manager.
- *Workspace Admin*: Can create and manage resources in the assigned workspace.

Workspaces

In Cloud Manager, a workspace isolates any number of *working environments* from other working environments. Workspace Admins can't access the working environments in a workspace unless the Account Admin associates the admin with that workspace.

A working environment represents a storage system:

- A single-node Cloud Volumes ONTAP system or an HA pair

- An on-premises ONTAP cluster in your network
- An ONTAP cluster in a NetApp Private Storage configuration

Service connectors

A service connector is part of Cloud Manager. It runs much of the Cloud Manager software (like the user interface), except for a few Cloud Central services that it connects to (auth0 and Cloud Central accounts). The service connector runs on the virtual machine instance that was deployed in your cloud provider, or on an on-prem host that you configured.

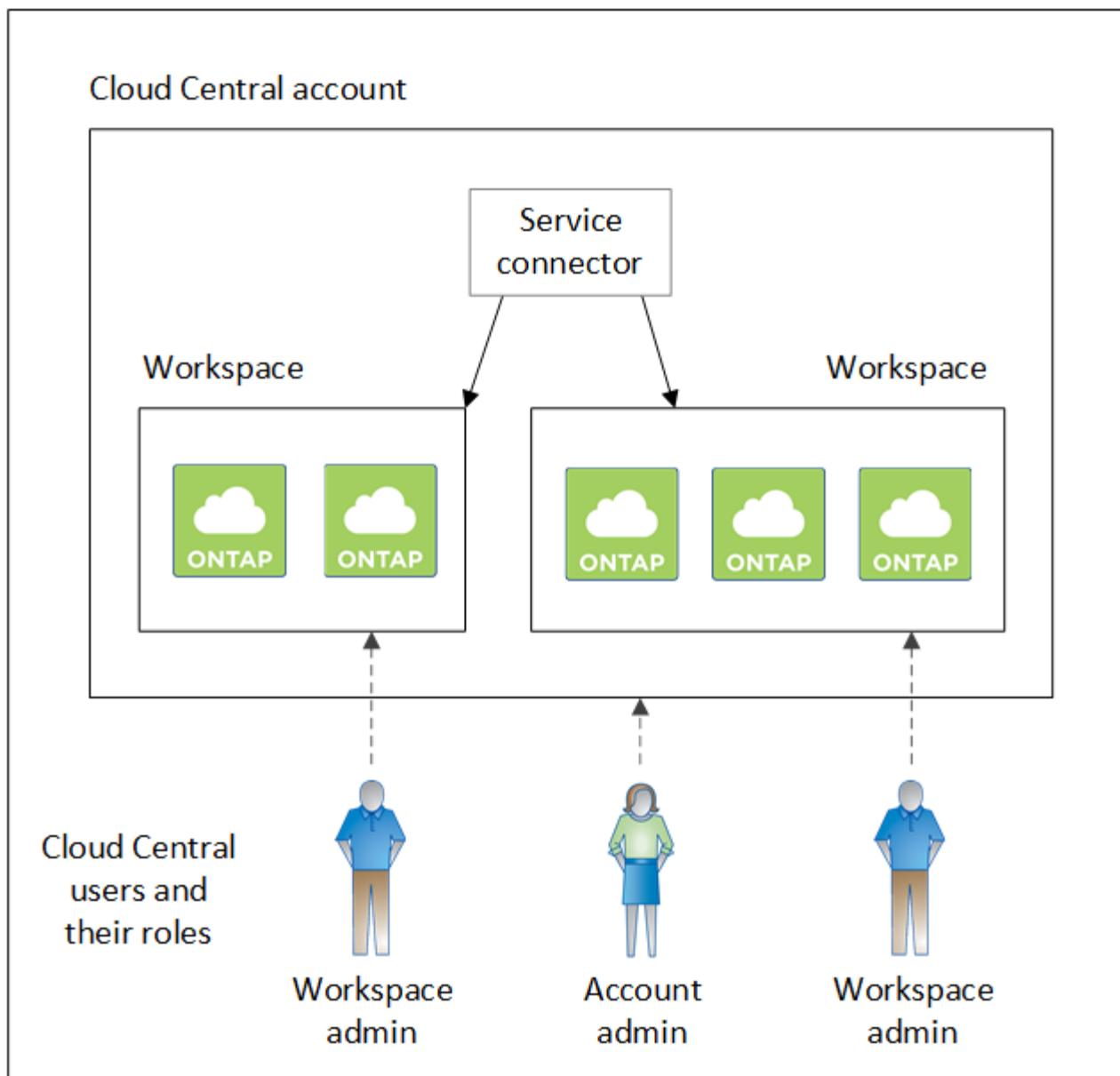
You can use a service connector with more than one NetApp cloud data service. For example, if you already have a service connector for Cloud Manager, you can select it when you set up the Cloud Tiering service.

Examples

The following example shows an account that uses two workspaces to create isolated environments for Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems. For example, one workspace might be for a staging environment, while the other is for a production environment.



Cloud Manager and the Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems don't actually reside *in* the NetApp Cloud Central account—they're running in a cloud provider. This is a conceptual representation of the relationship between each component.

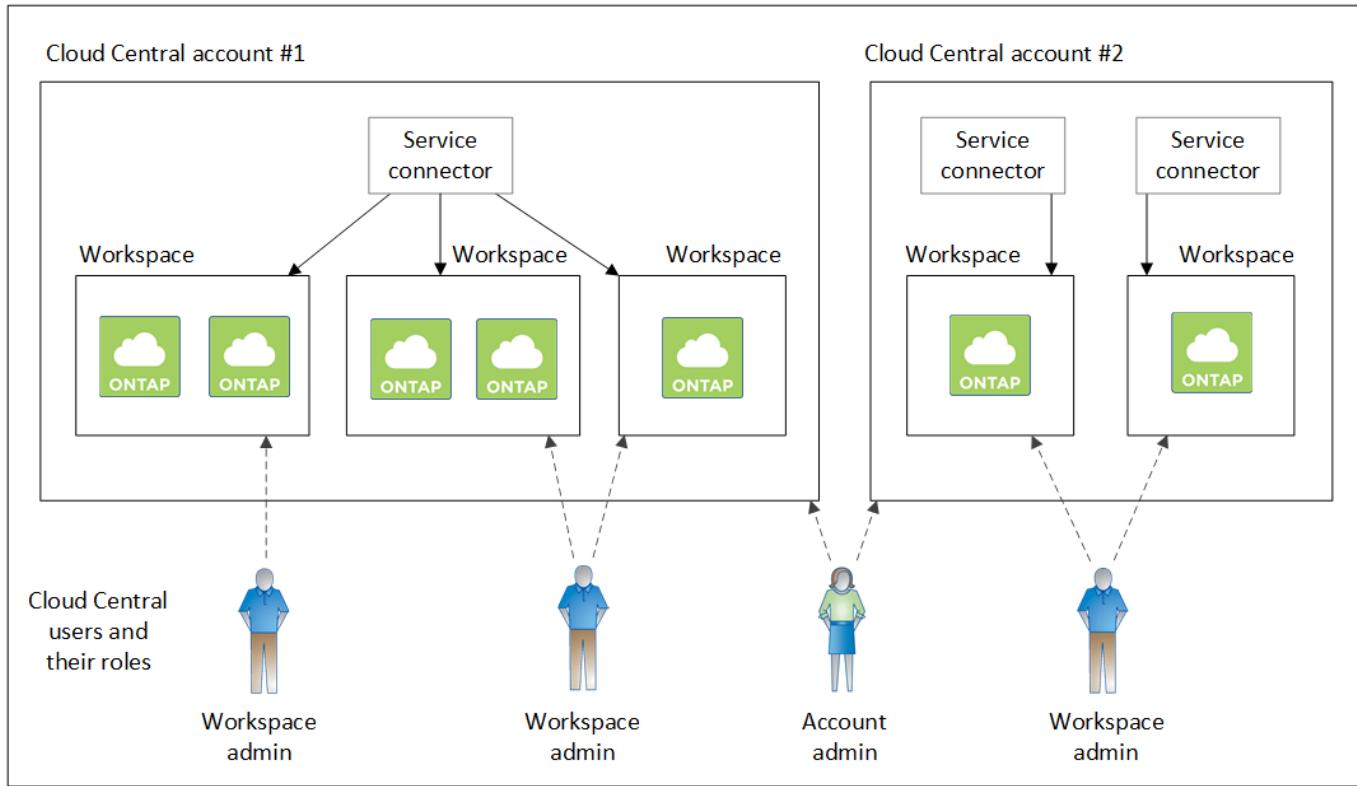


Here's another example that shows the highest level of multi-tenancy by using two separate Cloud Central accounts. For example, a service provider might use Cloud Manager in one Cloud Central account to provide services for their customers, while using another account to provide disaster recovery for one of their business units.

Note that account 2 includes two separate service connectors. This might happen if you have systems in separate regions or in separate cloud providers.



Again, Cloud Manager and the Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems don't actually reside *in* the NetApp Cloud Central account—they're running in a cloud provider. This is a conceptual representation of the relationship between each component.



FAQ for integration with Cloud Central accounts

Some time after you upgrade to Cloud Manager 3.7, NetApp will choose specific Cloud Manager systems to integrate with Cloud Central accounts. This FAQ can answer questions that you might have about the process.

How long does the process take?

Just a few minutes.

Will Cloud Manager be unavailable?

No, you can still access your Cloud Manager system.

What about Cloud Volumes ONTAP?

There's no disruption to your Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

What happens during this process?

NetApp does the following during the integration process:

- Creates a new Cloud Central account and associates it with your Cloud Manager system.
- Assigns new roles to each existing user:
 - Cloud Manager Admins become Account Admins

- Tenant Admins and Working Environment Admins become Workspace Admins
- Creates workspaces that replace existing tenants.
 - Places your working environments in those workspaces.
 - Associates the service connector with all workspaces.

Does it matter where I installed my Cloud Manager system?

No. NetApp will integrate systems with Cloud Central accounts no matter where they reside, whether that's in AWS, Azure, or on your premises.

Cloud provider credentials

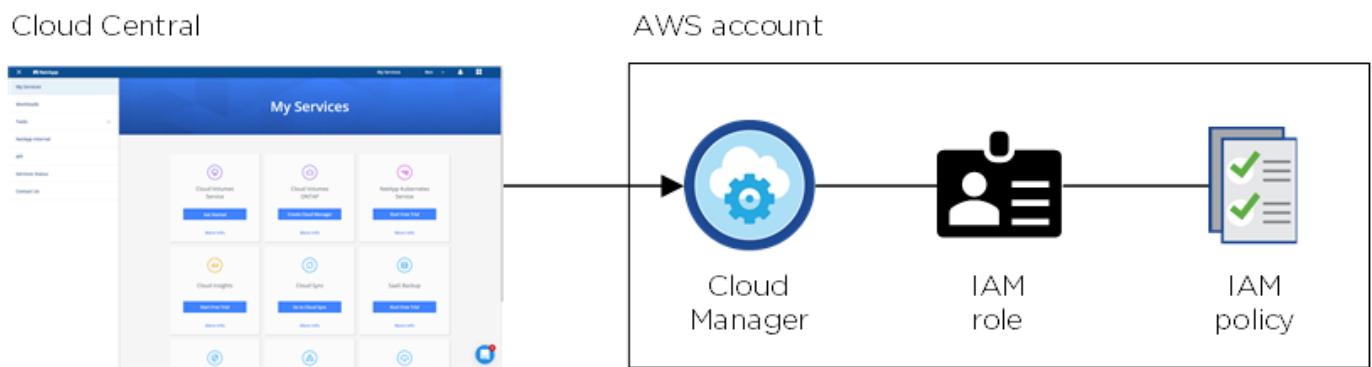
AWS credentials and permissions

Cloud Manager enables you to choose the AWS credentials to use when deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP. You can deploy all of your Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems using the initial AWS credentials, or you can add additional credentials.

Initial AWS credentials

When you deploy Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central, you need to use an AWS account that has permissions to launch the Cloud Manager instance. The required permissions are listed in the [NetApp Cloud Central policy for AWS](#).

When Cloud Central launches the Cloud Manager instance in AWS, it creates an IAM role and an instance profile for the instance. It also attaches a policy that provides Cloud Manager with permissions to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in that AWS account. [Review how Cloud Manager uses the permissions](#).

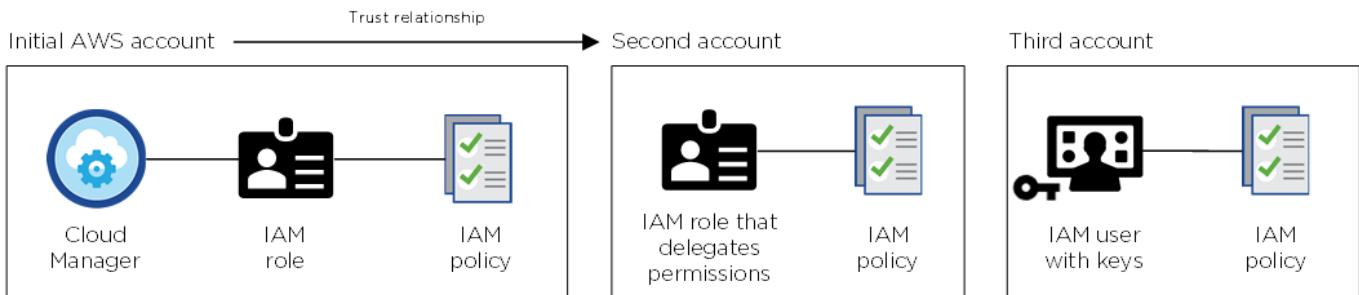


Cloud Manager selects these AWS credentials by default when you create a new working environment:

Details & Credentials			
Instance Profile Credentials		QA Subscription Marketplace Subscription	Edit Credentials

Additional AWS credentials

If you want to launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in different AWS accounts, then you can either [provide AWS keys for an IAM user or the ARN of a role in a trusted account](#). The following image shows two additional accounts, one providing permissions through an IAM role in a trusted account and another through the AWS keys of an IAM user:

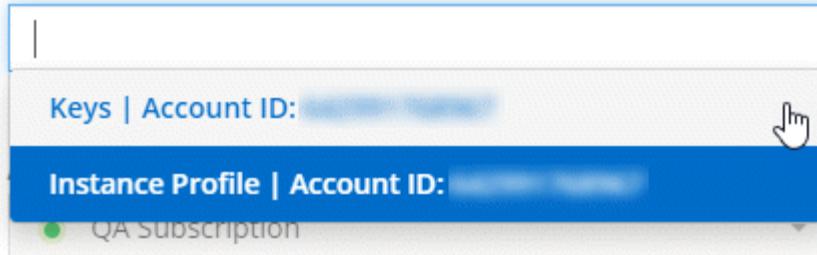


You would then [add the account credentials to Cloud Manager](#) by specifying the Amazon Resource Name (ARN) of the IAM role, or the AWS keys for the IAM user.

After you add another set of credentials, you can switch to them when creating a new working environment:

Edit Account & Add Subscription

Credentials



Associate Subscription to Credentials

To create a pay-as-you-go Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, you need to select AWS credentials that are associated with a subscription to Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the AWS Marketplace.

 [Add Subscription](#)

[Apply](#)

[Cancel](#)

What about Marketplace deployments and on-prem deployments?

The sections above describe the recommended deployment method from NetApp Cloud Central. You can also deploy Cloud Manager in AWS from the [AWS Marketplace](#) and you can [install Cloud Manager on-premises](#).

If you use the Marketplace, permissions are provided in the same way. You just need to manually create and set up the IAM role, and then provide permissions for any additional accounts.

For on-premises deployments, you can't set up an IAM role for the Cloud Manager system, but you can provide permissions just like you would for additional AWS accounts.

Azure credentials and permissions

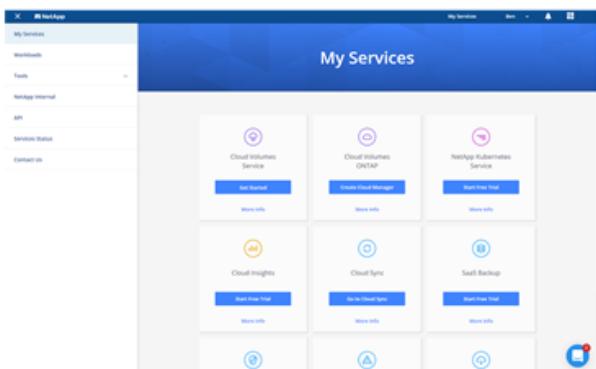
Cloud Manager enables you to choose the Azure credentials to use when deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP. You can deploy all of your Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems using the initial Azure credentials, or you can add additional credentials.

Initial Azure credentials

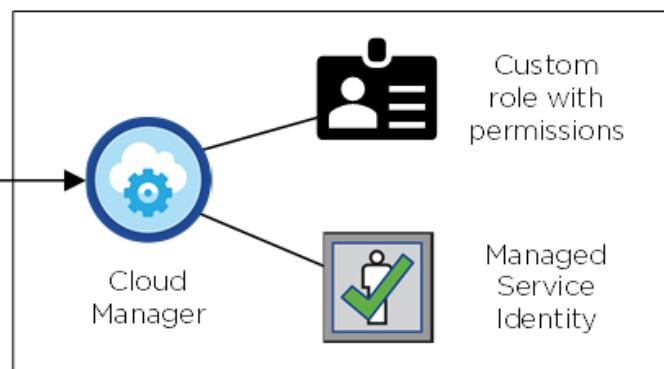
When you deploy Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central, you need to use an Azure account that has permissions to deploy the Cloud Manager virtual machine. The required permissions are listed in the [NetApp Cloud Central policy for Azure](#).

When Cloud Central deploys the Cloud Manager virtual machine in Azure, it enables a [system-assigned managed identity](#) on the Cloud Manager virtual machine, creates a custom role, and assigns it to the virtual machine. The role provides Cloud Manager with permissions to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in that Azure subscription. [Review how Cloud Manager uses the permissions](#).

Cloud Central



Azure account



Cloud Manager selects these Azure credentials by default when you create a new working environment:

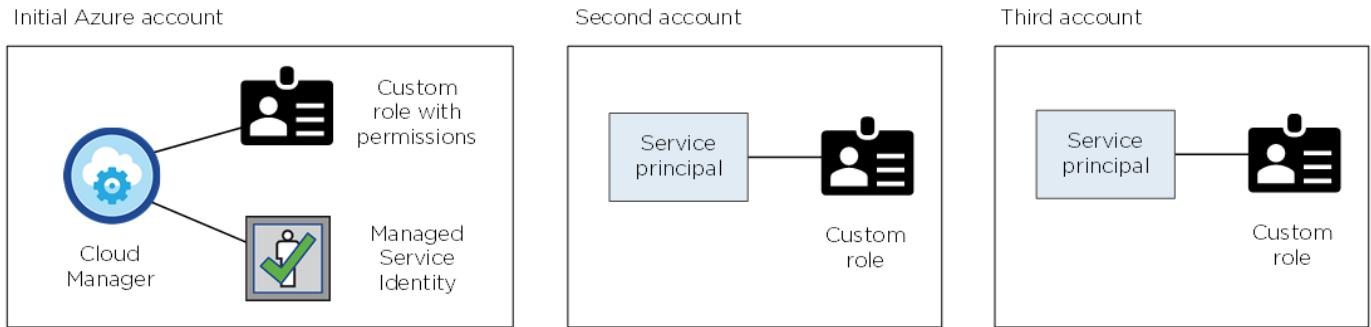
Details & Credentials			
Managed Service Ide...	OCCM QA1	 ⓘ No subscription is associated	Edit Credentials
Credential Name	Azure Subscription	Marketplace Subscription	

Additional Azure subscriptions for managed identity

The managed identity is associated with the subscription in which you launched Cloud Manager. If you want to select a different Azure subscription, then you need to [associate the managed identity with those subscriptions](#).

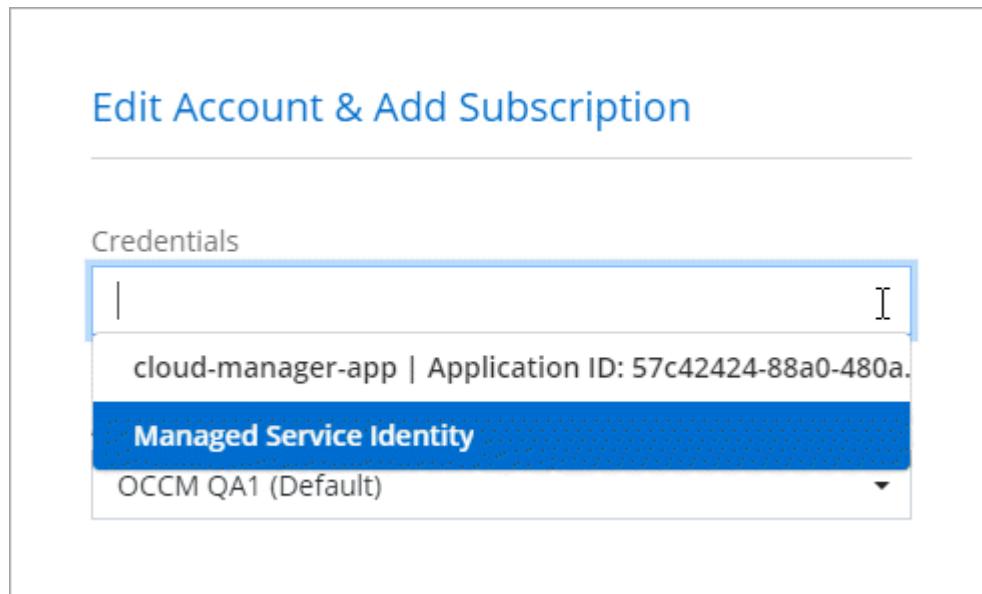
Additional Azure credentials

If you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP using different Azure credentials, then you must grant the required permissions by [creating and setting up a service principal in Azure Active Directory](#) for each Azure account. The following image shows two additional accounts, each set up with a service principal and custom role that provides permissions:



You would then [add the account credentials to Cloud Manager](#) by providing details about the AD service principal.

After you add another set of credentials, you can switch to them when creating a new working environment:



What about Marketplace deployments and on-prem deployments?

The sections above describe the recommended deployment method from NetApp Cloud Central. You can also deploy Cloud Manager in Azure from the [Azure Marketplace](#), and you can [install Cloud Manager on-premises](#).

If you use the Marketplace, permissions are provided in the same way. You just need to manually create and set up the managed identity for Cloud Manager, and then provide permissions for any additional accounts.

For on-premises deployments, you can't set up a managed identity for the Cloud Manager system, but you can provide permissions just like you would for additional accounts.

Google Cloud projects, permissions, and accounts

A service account provides Cloud Manager with permissions to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in the same project as Cloud Manager, or in different projects. Google Cloud accounts that you add to Cloud Manager are used to enable data tiering.

Project and permissions for Cloud Manager

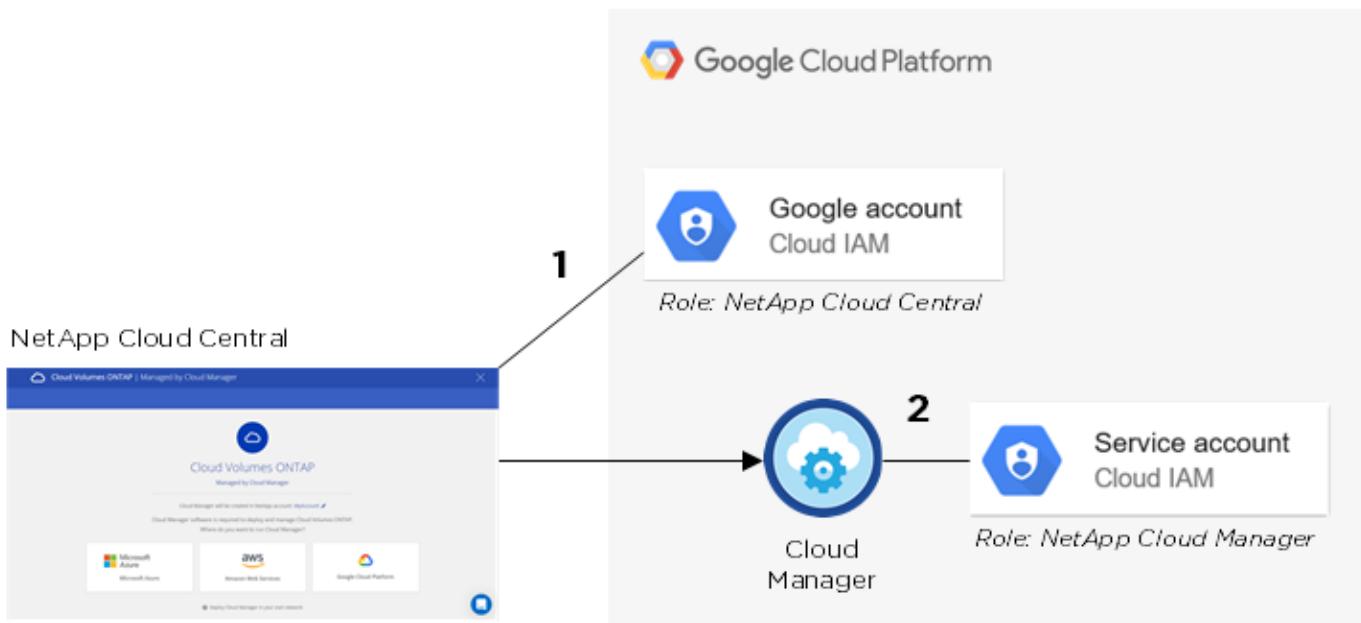
Before you can deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud, you must first deploy Cloud Manager in a Google Cloud project. Cloud Manager can't be running on your premises, or in a different cloud provider.

Two sets of permissions must be in place before you deploy Cloud Manager from [NetApp Cloud Central](#):

1. You need to deploy Cloud Manager using a Google account that has permissions to launch the Cloud Manager VM instance from Cloud Central.
2. When deploying Cloud Manager, you are prompted to select a [service account](#) for the VM instance. Cloud Manager gets permissions from the service account to create and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems on your behalf. Permissions are provided by attaching a custom role to the service account.

We have set up two YAML files that include the required permissions for the user and the service account. [Learn how to use the YAML files to set up permissions](#).

The following image depicts the permission requirements described in numbers 1 and 2 above:



Project for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Cloud Volumes ONTAP can reside in the same project as Cloud Manager, or in a different project. To deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in a different project, you need to first add the Cloud Manager service account and role to that project.

- [Learn how to set up the Cloud Manager service account \(see step 2\).](#)
- [Learn how to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP and select a project.](#)

Account for data tiering



Cloud Manager requires a GCP account for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6, but not for 9.7 and later. If you want to use data tiering with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7, then follow step 3 in [Getting started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud Platform](#).

Adding a Google Cloud account to Cloud Manager is required to enable data tiering on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 system. Data tiering automatically tiers cold data to low-cost object storage, enabling you to reclaim space on your primary storage and shrink secondary storage.

When you add the account, you need to provide Cloud Manager with a storage access key for a service account that has Storage Admin permissions. Cloud Manager uses the access keys to set up and manage a Cloud Storage bucket for data tiering.

After you add a Google Cloud account, you can then enable data tiering on individual volumes when you create, modify, or replicate them.

- [Learn how to set up and add GCP accounts to Cloud Manager.](#)
- [Learn how to tier inactive data to low-cost object storage.](#)

Storage

Disks and aggregates

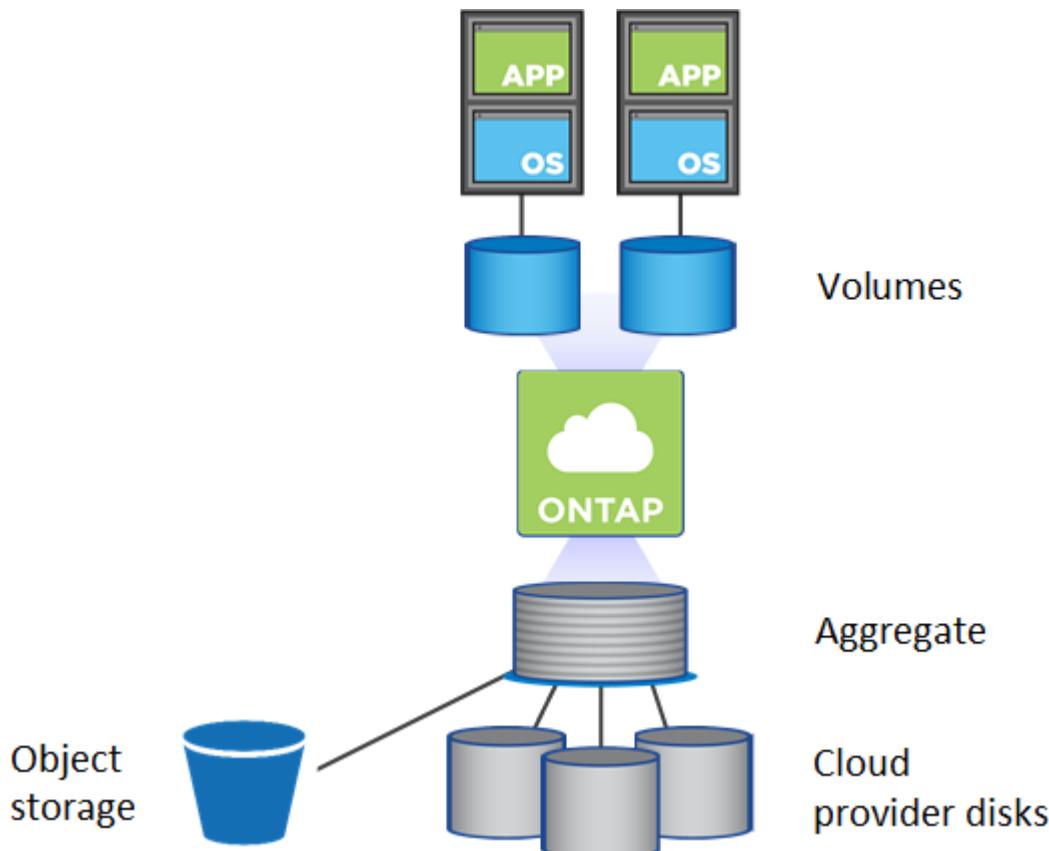
Understanding how Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses cloud storage can help you understand your storage costs.



All disks and aggregates must be created and deleted directly from Cloud Manager. You should not perform these actions from another management tool. Doing so can impact system stability, hamper the ability to add disks in the future, and potentially generate redundant cloud provider fees.

Overview

Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses cloud provider storage as disks and groups them into one or more aggregates. Aggregates provide storage to one or more volumes.



Several types of cloud disks are supported. You choose the disk type when you create a volume and the default disk size when you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP.



The total amount of storage purchased from a cloud provider is the *raw capacity*. The *usable capacity* is less because approximately 12 to 14 percent is overhead that is reserved for Cloud Volumes ONTAP use. For example, if Cloud Manager creates a 500 GB aggregate, the usable capacity is 442.94 GB.

AWS storage

In AWS, Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses EBS storage for user data and local NVMe storage as Flash Cache on some EC2 instance types.

EBS storage

In AWS, an aggregate can contain up to 6 disks that are all the same size. The maximum disk size is 16 TB.

The underlying EBS disk type can be either General Purpose SSD, Provisioned IOPS SSD, Throughput Optimized HDD, or Cold HDD. You can pair an EBS disk with Amazon S3 to [tier inactive data to low-cost object storage](#).

At a high level, the differences between EBS disk types are as follows:

- *General Purpose SSD* disks balance cost and performance for a broad range of workloads. Performance is defined in terms of IOPS.
- *Provisioned IOPS SSD* disks are for critical applications that require the highest performance at a higher cost.
- *Throughput Optimized HDD* disks are for frequently accessed workloads that require fast and consistent throughput at a lower price.
- *Cold HDD* disks are meant for backups, or infrequently accessed data, because the performance is very low. Like Throughput Optimized HDD disks, performance is defined in terms of throughput.



Cold HDD disks are not supported with HA configurations and with data tiering.

Local NVMe storage

Some EC2 instance types include local NVMe storage, which Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses as [Flash Cache](#).

Related links

- [AWS documentation: EBS Volume Types](#)
- [Learn how to choose disk types and disk sizes for your systems in AWS](#)
- [Review storage limits for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)
- [Review supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)

Azure storage

In Azure, an aggregate can contain up to 12 disks that are all the same size. The disk type and maximum disk size depends on whether you use a single node system or an HA pair:

Single node systems

Single node systems can use three types of Azure Managed Disks:

- *Premium SSD Managed Disks* provide high performance for I/O-intensive workloads at a higher cost.
- *Standard SSD Managed Disks* provide consistent performance for workloads that require low IOPS.
- *Standard HDD Managed Disks* are a good choice if you don't need high IOPS and want to reduce your costs.

Each managed disk type has a maximum disk size of 32 TB.

You can pair a managed disk with Azure Blob storage to [tier inactive data to low-cost object storage](#).

HA pairs

HA pairs use Premium page blobs, which have a maximum disk size of 8 TB.

Related links

- [Microsoft Azure documentation: Introduction to Microsoft Azure Storage](#)
- [Learn how to choose disk types and disk sizes for your systems in Azure](#)
- [Review storage limits for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure](#)

GCP storage

In GCP, an aggregate can contain up to 6 disks that are all the same size. The maximum disk size is 16 TB.

The disk type can be either *Zonal SSD persistent disks* or *Zonal standard persistent disks*. You can pair persistent disks with a Google Storage bucket to [tier inactive data to low-cost object storage](#).

Related links

- [Google Cloud Platform documentation: Storage Options](#)
- [Review storage limits for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP](#)

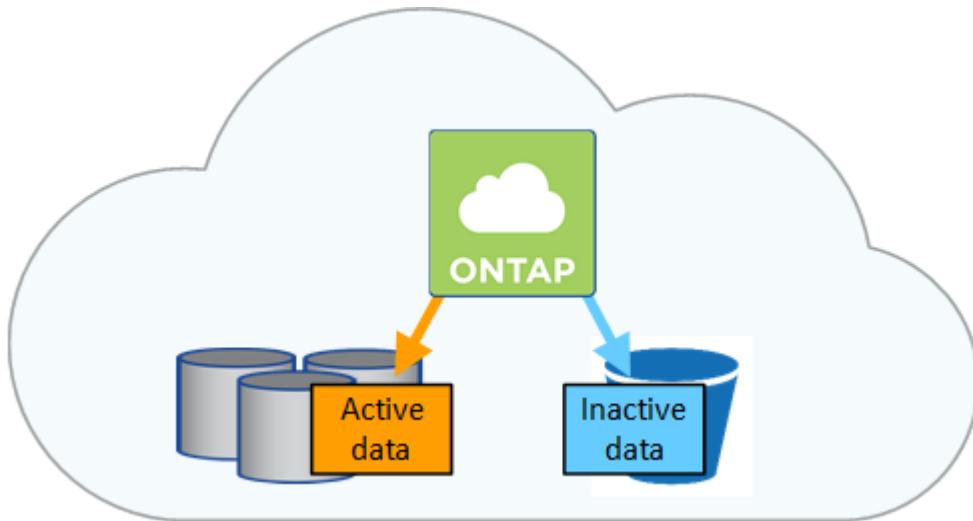
RAID type

The RAID type for each Cloud Volumes ONTAP aggregate is RAID0 (striping). No other RAID types are

supported. Cloud Volumes ONTAP relies on the cloud provider for disk availability and durability.

Data tiering overview

Reduce your storage costs by enabling automated tiering of inactive data to low-cost object storage. Active data remains in high-performance SSDs or HDDs, while inactive data is tiered to low-cost object storage. This enables you to reclaim space on your primary storage and shrink secondary storage.



Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports data tiering in AWS, Azure, and Google Cloud Platform. Data tiering is powered by FabricPool technology.



You don't need to install a feature license to enable data tiering (FabricPool).

Data tiering in AWS

When you enable data tiering in AWS, Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses EBS as a performance tier for hot data and AWS S3 as a capacity tier for inactive data.

Performance tier

The performance tier can be General Purpose SSDs, Provisioned IOPS SSDs, or Throughput Optimized HDDs.

Capacity tier

A Cloud Volumes ONTAP system tiers inactive data to a single S3 bucket using the *Standard* storage class. Standard is ideal for frequently accessed data stored across multiple Availability Zones.



Cloud Manager creates a single S3 bucket for each working environment and names it *fabric-pool-cluster unique identifier*. A different S3 bucket is not created for each volume.

Storage classes

The default storage class for tiered data in AWS is *Standard*. If you don't plan to access the inactive data, you can reduce your storage costs by changing the storage class to one of the following: *Intelligent Tiering*, *One-Zone Infrequent Access*, or *Standard-Infrequent Access*. When you change the storage class, inactive data starts in the Standard storage class and transitions to the storage class that you selected, if the data is not accessed after 30 days.

The access costs are higher if you do access the data, so take that into consideration before you change the storage class. [Learn more about Amazon S3 storage classes](#).

You can select a storage class when you create the working environment and you can change it any time after. For details about changing the storage class, see [Tiering inactive data to low-cost object storage](#).

The storage class for data tiering is system wide—it's not per volume.

Data tiering in Azure

When you enable data tiering in Azure, Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses Azure managed disks as a performance tier for hot data and Azure Blob storage as a capacity tier for inactive data.

Performance tier

The performance tier can be either SSDs or HDDs.

Capacity tier

A Cloud Volumes ONTAP system tiers inactive data to a single Blob container using the Azure *hot* storage tier. The hot tier is ideal for frequently accessed data.



Cloud Manager creates a new storage account with a single container for each Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment. The name of the storage account is random. A different container is not created for each volume.

Storage access tiers

The default storage access tier for tiered data in Azure is the *hot* tier. If you don't plan to access the inactive data, you can reduce your storage costs by changing to the *cool* storage tier. When you change the storage tier, inactive data starts in the hot storage tier and transitions to the cool storage tier, if the data is not accessed after 30 days.

The access costs are higher if you do access the data, so take that into consideration before you change the storage tier. [Learn more about Azure Blob storage access tiers](#).

You can select a storage tier when you create the working environment and you can change it any time after. For details about changing the storage tier, see [Tiering inactive data to low-cost object storage](#).

The storage access tier for data tiering is system wide—it's not per volume.

Data tiering in GCP

When you enable data tiering in GCP, Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses persistent disks as a performance tier for hot data and a Google Cloud Storage bucket as a capacity tier for inactive data.

Performance tier

The performance tier can be either SSDs or HDDs (standard disks).

Capacity tier

A Cloud Volumes ONTAP system tiers inactive data to a single Google Cloud Storage bucket using the *Regional* storage class.



Cloud Manager creates a single bucket for each working environment and names it *fabric-pool-cluster unique identifier*. A different bucket is not created for each volume.

Storage classes

The default storage class for tiered data is the *Standard Storage* class. If the data is infrequently accessed, you can reduce your storage costs by changing to *Nearline Storage* or *Coldline Storage*. When you change the storage class, inactive data starts in the Standard Storage class and transitions to the storage class that you selected, if the data is not accessed after 30 days.

The access costs are higher if you do access the data, so take that into consideration before you change the storage class. [Learn more about storage classes for Google Cloud Storage](#).

You can select a storage tier when you create the working environment and you can change it any time after. For details about changing the storage class, see [Tiering inactive data to low-cost object storage](#).

The storage class for data tiering is system wide—it's not per volume.

Data tiering and capacity limits

If you enable data tiering, a system's capacity limit stays the same. The limit is spread across the performance tier and the capacity tier.

Volume tiering policies

To enable data tiering, you must select a volume tiering policy when you create, modify, or replicate a volume. You can select a different policy for each volume.

Some tiering policies have an associated minimum cooling period, which sets the time that user data in a volume must remain inactive for the data to be considered "cold" and moved to the capacity tier.

Cloud Manager enables you to choose from the following volume tiering policies when you create or modify a volume:

Snapshot Only

After an aggregate has reached 50% capacity, Cloud Volumes ONTAP tiers cold user data of Snapshot copies that are not associated with the active file system to the capacity tier. The cooling period is approximately 2 days.

If read, cold data blocks on the capacity tier become hot and are moved to the performance tier.

Auto

After an aggregate has reached 50% capacity, Cloud Volumes ONTAP tiers cold data blocks in a volume to a capacity tier. The cold data includes not just Snapshot copies but also cold user data from the active file system. The cooling period is approximately 31 days.

This policy is supported starting with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.4.

If read by random reads, the cold data blocks in the capacity tier become hot and move to the performance tier. If read by sequential reads, such as those associated with index and antivirus scans, the cold data blocks stay cold and do not move to the performance tier.

None

Keeps data of a volume in the performance tier, preventing it from being moved to the capacity tier.

When you replicate a volume, you can choose whether to tier the data to object storage. If you do, Cloud Manager applies the **Backup** policy to the data protection volume. Starting with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6, the **All** tiering policy replaces the backup policy.

Turning off Cloud Volumes ONTAP impacts the cooling period

Data blocks are cooled by cooling scans. During this process, blocks that haven't been used have their block temperature moved (cooled) to the next lower value. The default cooling time depends on the volume tiering policy:

- Auto: 31 days
- Snapshot Only: 2 days

Cloud Volumes ONTAP must be running for the cooling scan to work. If Cloud Volumes ONTAP is turned off, cooling will stop, as well. As a result, you might experience longer cooling times.

Setting up data tiering

For instructions and a list of supported configurations, see [Tiering inactive data to low-cost object storage](#).

Storage management

Cloud Manager provides simplified and advanced management of Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage.

 All disks and aggregates must be created and deleted directly from Cloud Manager. You should not perform these actions from another management tool. Doing so can impact system stability, hamper the ability to add disks in the future, and potentially generate redundant cloud provider fees.

Storage provisioning

Cloud Manager makes storage provisioning for Cloud Volumes ONTAP easy by purchasing disks and managing aggregates for you. You simply need to create volumes. You can use an advanced allocation option to provision aggregates yourself, if desired.

Simplified provisioning

Aggregates provide cloud storage to volumes. Cloud Manager creates aggregates for you when you launch an instance, and when you provision additional volumes.

When you create a volume, Cloud Manager does one of three things:

- It places the volume on an existing aggregate that has sufficient free space.
- It places the volume on an existing aggregate by purchasing more disks for that aggregate.
- It purchases disks for a new aggregate and places the volume on that aggregate.

Cloud Manager determines where to place a new volume by looking at several factors: an aggregate's maximum size, whether thin provisioning is enabled, and free space thresholds for aggregates.



The Account Admin can modify free space thresholds from the **Settings** page.

Disk size selection for aggregates in AWS

When Cloud Manager creates new aggregates for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, it gradually increases the disk size in an aggregate, as the number of aggregates in the system increases. Cloud Manager does this to ensure that you can utilize the system's maximum capacity before it reaches the maximum number of data disks allowed by AWS.

For example, Cloud Manager might choose the following disk sizes for aggregates in a Cloud Volumes ONTAP Premium or BYOL system:

Aggregate number	Disk size	Max aggregate capacity
1	500 MB	3 TB
4	1 TB	6 TB
6	2 TB	12 TB

You can choose the disk size yourself by using the advanced allocation option.

Advanced allocation

Rather than let Cloud Manager manage aggregates for you, you can do it yourself. [From the Advanced allocation page](#), you can create new aggregates that include a specific number of disks, add disks to an existing aggregate, and create volumes in specific aggregates.

Capacity management

The Account Admin can choose whether Cloud Manager notifies you of storage capacity decisions or whether Cloud Manager automatically manages capacity requirements for you. It might help for you to understand how these modes work.

Automatic capacity management

The Capacity Management Mode is set to automatic by default. In this mode, Cloud Manager automatically purchases new disks for Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances when more capacity is needed, deletes unused collections of disks (aggregates), moves volumes between aggregates when needed, and attempts to unfail disks.

The following examples illustrate how this mode works:

- If an aggregate with 5 or fewer EBS disks reaches the capacity threshold, Cloud Manager automatically purchases new disks for that aggregate so volumes can continue to grow.
- If an aggregate with 12 Azure disks reaches the capacity threshold, Cloud Manager automatically moves a volume from that aggregate to an aggregate with available capacity or to a new aggregate.

If Cloud Manager creates a new aggregate for the volume, it chooses a disk size that accommodates the size of that volume.

Note that free space is now available on the original aggregate. Existing volumes or new volumes can use that space. The space can't be returned to AWS, Azure, or GCP in this scenario.

- If an aggregate contains no volumes for more than 12 hours, Cloud Manager deletes it.

Management of inodes with automatic capacity management

Cloud Manager monitors inode usage on a volume. When 85% of the inodes are used, Cloud Manager increases the size of the volume to increase the number of available inodes. The number of files a volume can contain is determined by how many inodes it has.

Manual capacity management

If the Account Admin set the Capacity Management Mode to manual, Cloud Manager displays Action Required messages when capacity decisions must be made. The same examples described in the automatic mode apply to the manual mode, but it is up to you to accept the actions.

WORM storage

You can activate write once, read many (WORM) storage on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system to retain files in unmodified form for a specified retention period. WORM storage is powered by SnapLock technology in Enterprise mode, which means WORM files are protected at the file level.

Once a file has been committed to WORM storage, it cannot be modified, even after the retention period has expired. A tamper-proof clock determines when the retention period for a WORM file has elapsed.

After the retention period has elapsed, you are responsible for deleting any files that you no longer need.

Activating WORM storage

You can activate WORM storage on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system when you create a new working environment. This includes specifying an activation code and setting the default retention period for files. You can obtain an activation code by using the chat icon in the lower right of the Cloud Manager interface.



You cannot activate WORM storage on individual volumes—WORM must be activated at the system level.

The following image shows how to activate WORM storage when creating a working environment:

WORM | [Preview](#)

You can use write once, read many (WORM) storage to retain critical files in unmodified form for regulatory and governance purposes and to protect from malware attacks. WORM files are protected at the file level.

[Learn More](#)

Disable WORM Activate WORM

Notice: If you enable WORM storage, you cannot enable data tiering to object storage.

WORM Activation Code



Worm-1111122222aaaaa

Retention Period

15	years	▼
----	-------	---

Committing files to WORM

You can use an application to commit files to WORM over NFS or CIFS, or use the ONTAP CLI to autocommit files to WORM automatically. You can also use a WORM appendable file to retain data that is written incrementally, like log information.

After you activate WORM storage on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, you must use the ONTAP CLI for all management of WORM storage. For instructions, refer to [ONTAP documentation](#).



Cloud Volumes ONTAP support for WORM storage is equivalent to SnapLock Enterprise mode.

Limitations

- If you delete or move a disk directly from AWS or Azure, then a volume can be deleted before its expiry date.
- When WORM storage is activated, data tiering to object storage cannot be enabled.

High-availability pairs

High-availability pairs in AWS

A Cloud Volumes ONTAP high availability (HA) configuration provides

nondisruptive operations and fault tolerance. In AWS, data is synchronously mirrored between the two nodes.

Overview

In AWS, Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configurations include the following components:

- Two Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes whose data is synchronously mirrored between each other.
- A mediator instance that provides a communication channel between the nodes to assist in storage takeover and giveback processes.



The mediator instance runs the Linux operating system on a t2.micro instance and uses one EBS magnetic disk that is approximately 8 GB.

Storage takeover and giveback

If a node goes down, the other node can serve data for its partner to provide continued data service. Clients can access the same data from the partner node because the data was synchronously mirrored to the partner.

After the node reboots, the partner must resync data before it can return the storage. The time that it takes to resync data depends on how much data was changed while the node was down.

RPO and RTO

An HA configuration maintains high availability of your data as follows:

- The recovery point objective (RPO) is 0 seconds.
Your data is transactionally consistent with no data loss.
- The recovery time objective (RTO) is 60 seconds.
In the event of an outage, data should be available in 60 seconds or less.

HA deployment models

You can ensure the high availability of your data by deploying an HA configuration across multiple Availability Zones (AZs) or in a single AZ. You should review more details about each configuration to choose which best fits your needs.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA in multiple Availability Zones

Deploying an HA configuration in multiple Availability Zones (AZs) ensures high availability of your data if a failure occurs with an AZ or an instance that runs a Cloud Volumes ONTAP node. You should understand how NAS IP addresses impact data access and storage failover.

NFS and CIFS data access

When an HA configuration is spread across multiple Availability Zones, *floating IP addresses* enable NAS client access. The floating IP addresses, which must be outside of the CIDR blocks for all VPCs in the region, can migrate between nodes when failures occur. They aren't natively accessible to clients that are outside of the VPC, unless you [set up an AWS transit gateway](#).

If you can't set up a transit gateway, private IP addresses are available for NAS clients that are outside the VPC. However, these IP addresses are static—they can't failover between nodes.

You should review requirements for floating IP addresses and route tables before you deploy an HA configuration across multiple Availability Zones. You must specify the floating IP addresses when you deploy the configuration. The private IP addresses are automatically created by Cloud Manager.

For details, see [AWS networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA in multiple AZs](#).

iSCSI data access

Cross-VPC data communication is not an issue since iSCSI does not use floating IP addresses.

Storage takeover and giveback for iSCSI

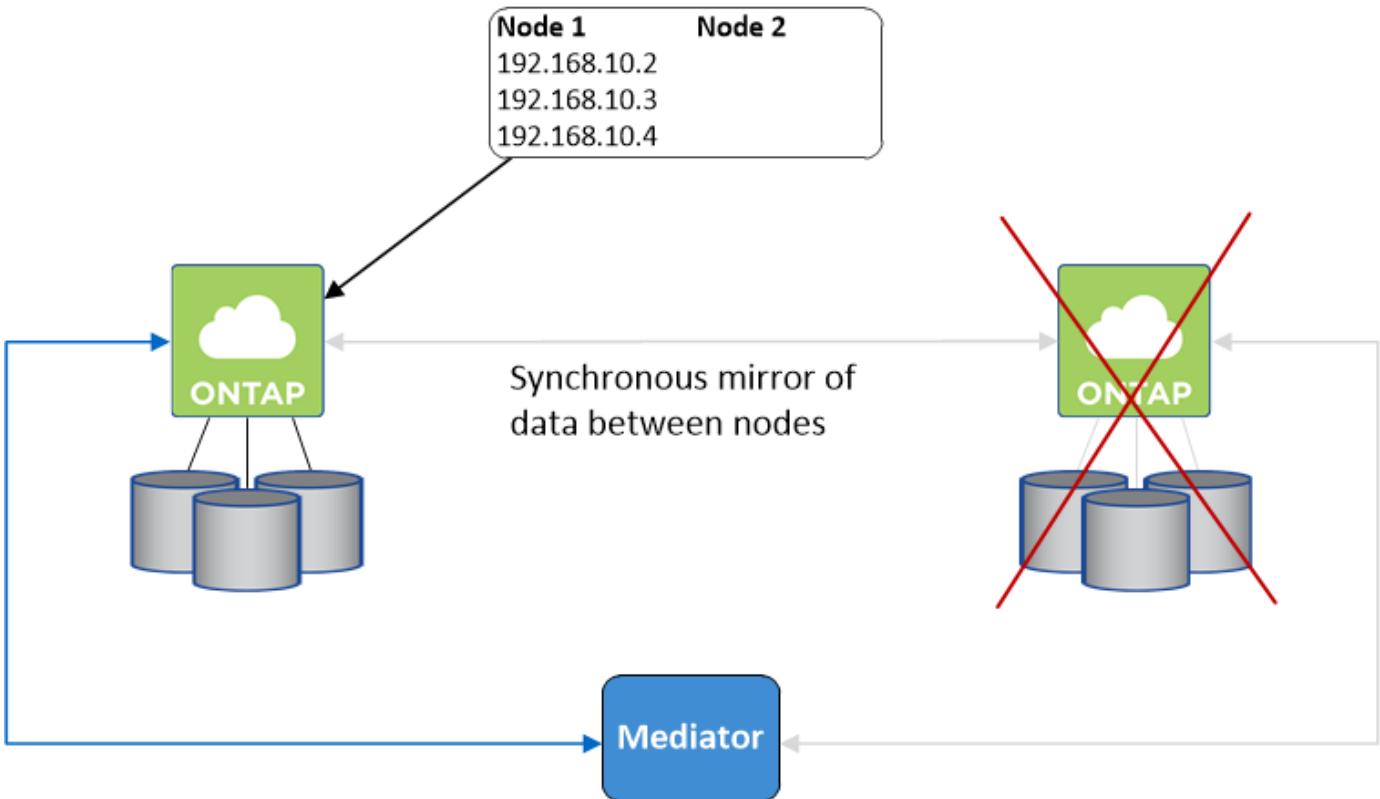
For iSCSI, Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses multipath I/O (MPIO) and Asymmetric Logical Unit Access (ALUA) to manage path failover between the active-optimized and non-optimized paths.



For information about which specific host configurations support ALUA, see the [NetApp Interoperability Matrix Tool](#) and the Host Utilities Installation and Setup Guide for your host operating system.

Storage takeover and giveback for NAS

When takeover occurs in a NAS configuration using floating IPs, the node's floating IP address that clients use to access data moves to the other node. The following image depicts storage takeover in a NAS configuration using floating IPs. If node 2 goes down, the floating IP address for node 2 moves to node 1.



NAS data IPs used for external VPC access cannot migrate between nodes if failures occur. If a node goes offline, you must manually remount volumes to clients outside the VPC by using the IP address on the other node.

After the failed node comes back online, remount clients to volumes using the original IP address. This step is needed to avoid transferring unnecessary data between two HA nodes, which can cause significant performance and stability impact.

You can easily identify the correct IP address from Cloud Manager by selecting the volume and clicking **Mount Command**.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA in a single Availability Zone

Deploying an HA configuration in a single Availability Zone (AZ) can ensure high availability of your data if an instance that runs a Cloud Volumes ONTAP node fails. All data is natively accessible from outside of the VPC.



Cloud Manager creates an [AWS spread placement group](#) and launches the two HA nodes in that placement group. The placement group reduces the risk of simultaneous failures by spreading the instances across distinct underlying hardware. This feature improves redundancy from a compute perspective and not from disk failure perspective.

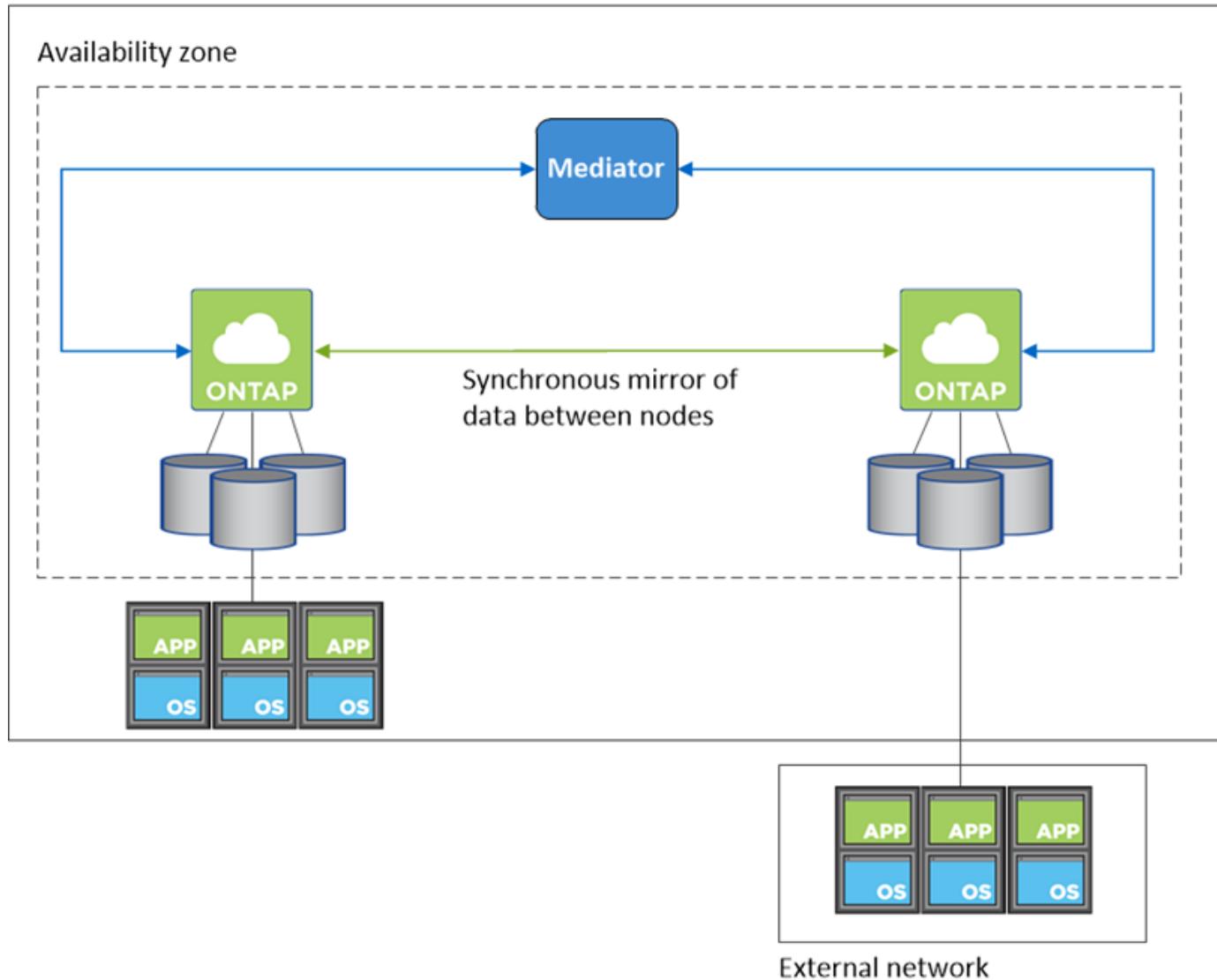
Data access

Because this configuration is in a single AZ, it does not require floating IP addresses. You can use the

same IP address for data access from within the VPC and from outside the VPC.

The following image shows an HA configuration in a single AZ. Data is accessible from within the VPC and from outside the VPC.

VPC in AWS



Storage takeover and giveback

For iSCSI, Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses multipath I/O (MPIO) and Asymmetric Logical Unit Access (ALUA) to manage path failover between the active-optimized and non-optimized paths.



For information about which specific host configurations support ALUA, see the [NetApp Interoperability Matrix Tool](#) and the Host Utilities Installation and Setup Guide for your host operating system.

For NAS configurations, the data IP addresses can migrate between HA nodes if failures occur. This ensures client access to storage.

How storage works in an HA pair

Unlike an ONTAP cluster, storage in a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair is not shared between nodes. Instead, data is synchronously mirrored between the nodes so that the data is available in the event of failure.

Storage allocation

When you create a new volume and additional disks are required, Cloud Manager allocates the same number of disks to both nodes, creates a mirrored aggregate, and then creates the new volume. For example, if two disks are required for the volume, Cloud Manager allocates two disks per node for a total of four disks.

Storage configurations

You can use an HA pair as an active-active configuration, in which both nodes serve data to clients, or as an active-passive configuration, in which the passive node responds to data requests only if it has taken over storage for the active node.



You can set up an active-active configuration only when using Cloud Manager in the Storage System View.

Performance expectations for an HA configuration

A Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configuration synchronously replicates data between nodes, which consumes network bandwidth. As a result, you can expect the following performance in comparison to a single-node Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration:

- For HA configurations that serve data from only one node, read performance is comparable to the read performance of a single-node configuration, whereas write performance is lower.
- For HA configurations that serve data from both nodes, read performance is higher than the read performance of a single-node configuration, and write performance is the same or higher.

For more details about Cloud Volumes ONTAP performance, see [Performance](#).

Client access to storage

Clients should access NFS and CIFS volumes by using the data IP address of the node on which the volume resides. If NAS clients access a volume by using the IP address of the partner node, traffic goes between both nodes, which reduces performance.

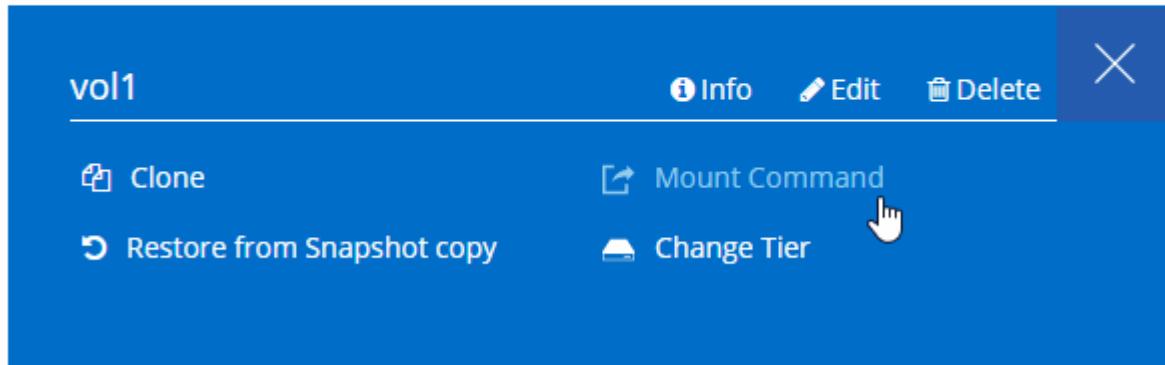


If you move a volume between nodes in an HA pair, you should remount the volume by using the IP address of the other node. Otherwise, you can experience reduced performance. If clients support NFSv4 referrals or folder redirection for CIFS, you can enable those features on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems to avoid remounting the volume. For details, see ONTAP documentation.

You can easily identify the correct IP address from Cloud Manager:

Volumes

2 Volumes | 0.22 TB Allocated | < 0.01 TB Used (0 TB in S3)

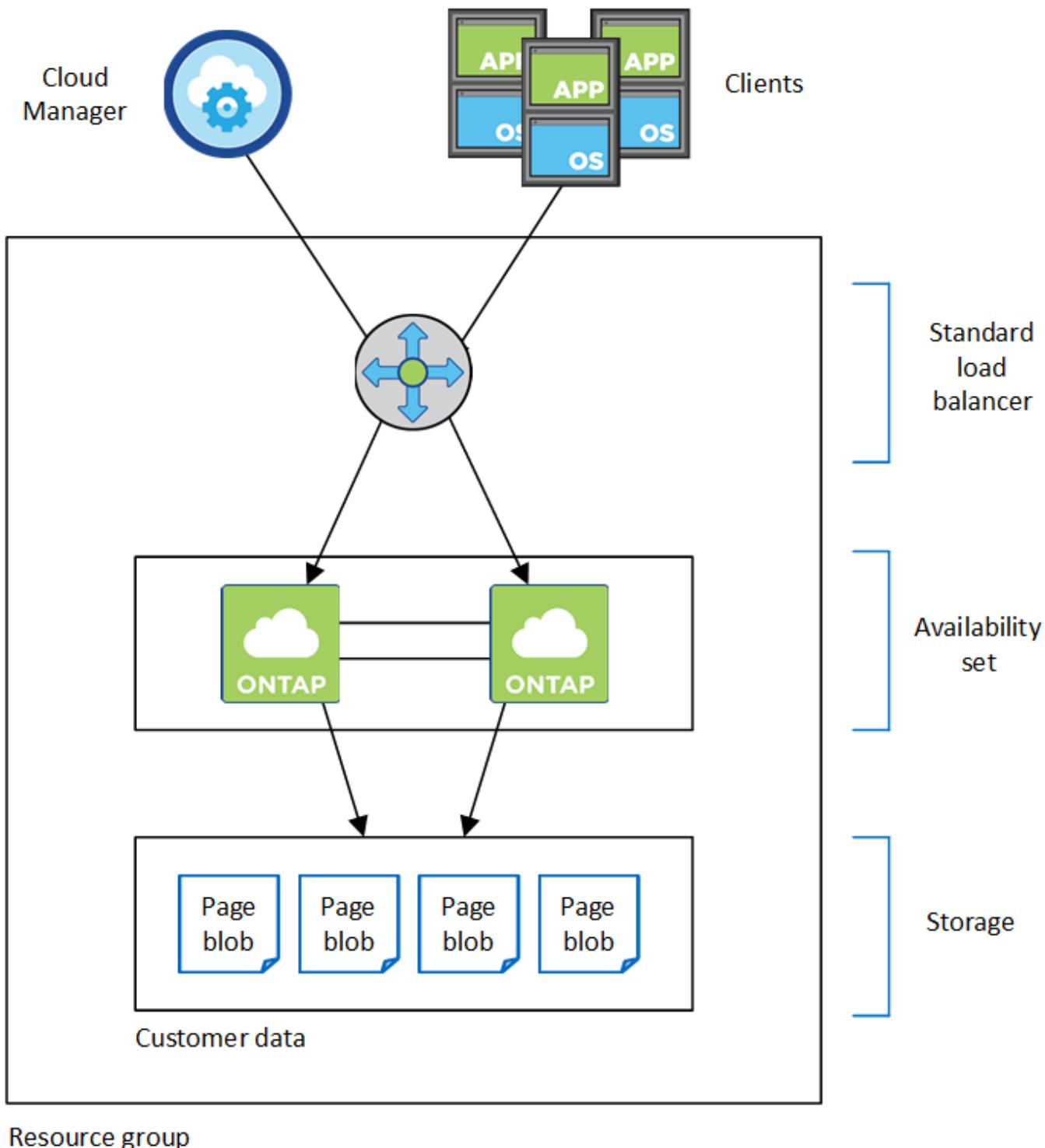


High-availability pairs in Azure

A Cloud Volumes ONTAP high availability (HA) pair provides enterprise reliability and continuous operations in case of failures in your cloud environment. In Azure, storage is shared between the two nodes.

HA components

A Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configuration in Azure includes the following components:



Resource group

Note the following about the Azure components that Cloud Manager deploys for you:

Azure Standard Load Balancer

The load balancer manages incoming traffic to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair.

Availability Set

The Availability Set ensures that the nodes are in different fault and update domains.

Disks

Customer data resides on Premium Storage page blobs. Each node has access to the other node's storage.

Additional storage is also required for boot, root, and core data:

- Two 90 GB Premium SSD disks for the boot volume (one per node)
- Two 140 GB Premium Storage page blobs for the root volume (one per node)
- Two 128 GB Standard HDD disks for saving cores (one per node)

Storage accounts

- One storage account is required for managed disks.
- One or more storage accounts are required for the Premium Storage page blobs, as the disk capacity limit per storage account is reached.

[Azure documentation: Azure Storage scalability and performance targets for storage accounts.](#)

- One storage account is required for data tiering to Azure Blob storage.
- Starting with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7, the storage accounts that Cloud Manager creates for HA pairs are general-purpose v2 storage accounts.
- You can enable an HTTPS connection from a Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 HA pair to Azure storage accounts when creating a working environment. Note that enabling this option can impact write performance. You can't change the setting after you create the working environment.

RPO and RTO

An HA configuration maintains high availability of your data as follows:

- The recovery point objective (RPO) is 0 seconds.
Your data is transactionally consistent with no data loss.
- The recovery time objective (RTO) is 60 seconds.
In the event of an outage, data should be available in 60 seconds or less.

Storage takeover and giveback

Similar to a physical ONTAP cluster, storage in an Azure HA pair is shared between nodes. Connections to the partner's storage allows each node to access the other's storage in the event of a *takeover*. Network path failover mechanisms ensure that clients and hosts continue to communicate with the surviving node. The partner *gives back* storage when the node is brought back on line.

For NAS configurations, data IP addresses automatically migrate between HA nodes if failures occur.

For iSCSI, Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses multipath I/O (MPIO) and Asymmetric Logical Unit Access (ALUA) to manage path failover between the active-optimized and non-optimized paths.



For information about which specific host configurations support ALUA, see the [NetApp Interoperability Matrix Tool](#) and the Host Utilities Installation and Setup Guide for your host operating system.

Storage configurations

You can use an HA pair as an active-active configuration, in which both nodes serve data to clients, or as an active-passive configuration, in which the passive node responds to data requests only if it has taken over storage for the active node.

HA limitations

The following limitations affect Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pairs in Azure:

- HA pairs are supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP Standard, Premium, and BYOL. Explore is not supported.
- NFSv4 is not supported. NFSv3 is supported.
- HA pairs are not supported in some regions.

[See the list of supported Azure regions.](#)

[Learn how to deploy an HA system in Azure.](#)

Evaluating

You can evaluate Cloud Volumes ONTAP before you pay for the software.

A 30-day free trial of Cloud Volumes ONTAP is available from [NetApp Cloud Central](#). There are no hourly software charges, but infrastructure charges still apply. A free trial automatically converts to a paid hourly subscription when it expires.

If you need assistance with your proof of concept, contact [the Sales team](#) or reach out through the chat option available from [NetApp Cloud Central](#) and from within Cloud Manager.

Licensing

Each Cloud Volumes ONTAP BYOL system must have a license installed with an active subscription. Cloud Manager simplifies the process by managing licenses for you and by notifying you before they expire.

License management for a new system

When you create a BYOL system, Cloud Manager prompts you for a NetApp Support Site account. Cloud

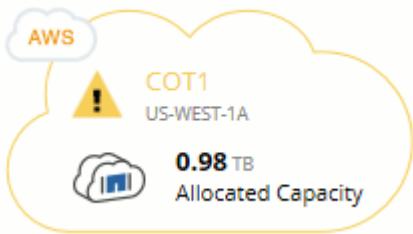
Manager uses the account to download the license file from NetApp and to install it on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

[Learn how to add NetApp Support Site accounts to Cloud Manager.](#)

If Cloud Manager can't access the license file over the secure internet connection, you can obtain the file yourself and then manually upload the file to Cloud Manager. For instructions, see [Installing license files on Cloud Volumes ONTAP BYOL systems](#).

License expiration warning

Cloud Manager warns you 30 days before a license is due to expire and again when the license expires. The following image shows a 30-day expiration warning:



You can select the working environment to review the message.

If you don't renew the license in time, the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system shuts itself down. If you restart it, it shuts itself down again.



Cloud Volumes ONTAP can also notify you through email, an SNMP traphost, or syslog server using EMS (Event Management System) event notifications. For instructions, see the [ONTAP 9 EMS Configuration Express Guide](#).

License renewal

When you renew a BYOL subscription by contacting a NetApp representative, Cloud Manager automatically obtains the new license from NetApp and installs it on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

If Cloud Manager can't access the license file over the secure internet connection, you can obtain the file yourself and then manually upload the file to Cloud Manager. For instructions, see [Installing license files on Cloud Volumes ONTAP BYOL systems](#).

Security

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports data encryption and provides protection against viruses and ransomware.

Encryption of data at rest

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports the following encryption technologies:

- NetApp encryption solutions (NVE and NAE)
- AWS Key Management Service
- Azure Storage Service Encryption
- Google Cloud Platform default encryption

You can use NetApp encryption solutions with native encryption from AWS, Azure, or GCP, which encrypt data at the hypervisor level. Doing so would provide double encryption, which might be desired for very sensitive data. When the encrypted data is accessed, it's unencrypted twice—once at the hypervisor-level (using keys from the cloud provider) and then again using NetApp encryption solutions (using keys from an external key manager).

NetApp encryption solutions (NVE and NAE)

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports both NetApp Volume Encryption (NVE) and NetApp Aggregate Encryption (NAE) with an external key manager. NVE and NAE are software-based solutions that enable (FIPS) 140-2-compliant data-at-rest encryption of volumes.

- NVE encrypts data at rest one volume at a time. Each data volume has its own unique encryption key.
- NAE is an extension of NVE—it encrypts data for each volume, and the volumes share a key across the aggregate. NAE also allows common blocks across all volumes in the aggregate to be deduplicated.

Both NVE and NAE use AES 256-bit encryption.

[Learn more about NetApp Volume Encryption and NetApp Aggregate Encryption.](#)

Starting with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7, new aggregates will have NetApp Aggregate Encryption (NAE) enabled by default after you set up an external key manager. New volumes that aren't part of an NAE aggregate will have NetApp Volume Encryption (NVE) enabled by default (for example, if you have existing aggregates that were created before setting up an external key manager).

Setting up a supported key manager is the only required step. For set up instructions, see [Encrypting volumes with NetApp encryption solutions](#).

AWS Key Management Service

When you launch a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in AWS, you can enable data encryption using the [AWS Key Management Service \(KMS\)](#). Cloud Manager requests data keys using a customer master key (CMK).



You can't change the AWS data encryption method after you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

If you want to use this encryption option, then you must ensure that the AWS KMS is set up appropriately. For details, see [Setting up the AWS KMS](#).

Azure Storage Service Encryption

[Azure Storage Service Encryption](#) for data at rest is enabled by default for Cloud Volumes ONTAP data in Azure. No setup is required.



Customer-managed keys are not supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Google Cloud Platform default encryption

[Google Cloud Platform data-at-rest encryption](#) is enabled by default for Cloud Volumes ONTAP. No setup is required.

While Google Cloud Storage always encrypts your data before it's written to disk, you can use Cloud Manager APIs to create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that uses *customer-managed encryption keys*. These are keys that you generate and manage in GCP using the Cloud Key Management Service.

Refer to the [API Developer Guide](#) for details about using the "GcpEncryption" parameters.

ONTAP virus scanning

You can use integrated antivirus functionality on ONTAP systems to protect data from being compromised by viruses or other malicious code.

ONTAP virus scanning, called *Vscan*, combines best-in-class third-party antivirus software with ONTAP features that give you the flexibility you need to control which files get scanned and when.

For information about the vendors, software, and versions supported by Vscan, see the [NetApp Interoperability Matrix](#).

For information about how to configure and manage the antivirus functionality on ONTAP systems, see the [ONTAP 9 Antivirus Configuration Guide](#).

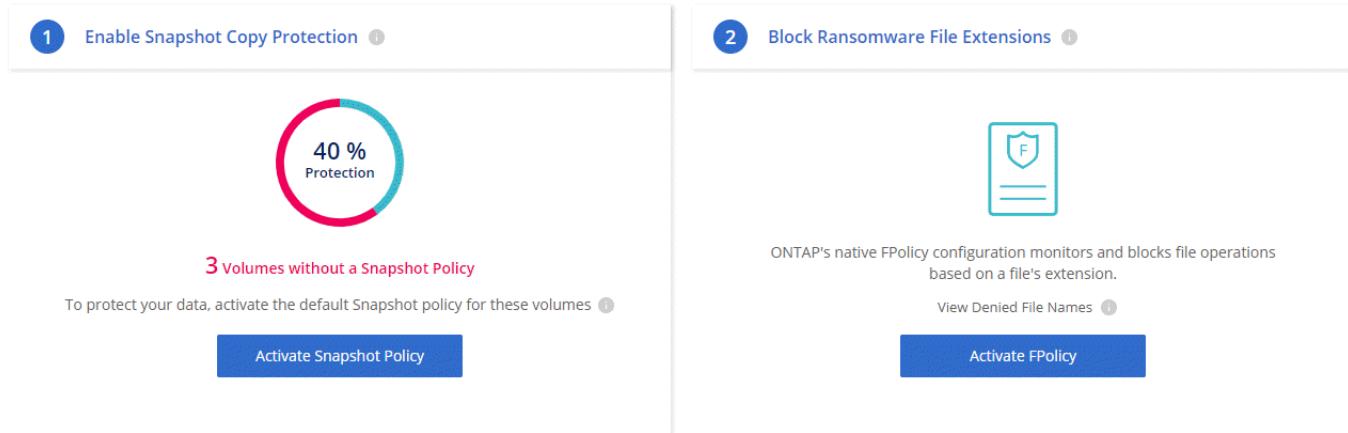
Ransomware protection

Ransomware attacks can cost a business time, resources, and reputation. Cloud Manager enables you to implement the NetApp solution for ransomware, which provides effective tools for visibility, detection, and remediation.

- Cloud Manager identifies volumes that are not protected by a Snapshot policy and enables you to activate the default Snapshot policy on those volumes.

Snapshot copies are read-only, which prevents ransomware corruption. They can also provide the granularity to create images of a single file copy or a complete disaster recovery solution.

- Cloud Manager also enables you to block common ransomware file extensions by enabling ONTAP's FPolicy solution.



[Learn how to implement the NetApp solution for ransomware.](#)

Performance

You can review performance results to help you decide which workloads are appropriate for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

For Cloud Volumes ONTAP for AWS, refer to [NetApp Technical Report 4383: Performance Characterization of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Amazon Web Services with Application Workloads](#).

For Cloud Volumes ONTAP for Microsoft Azure, refer to [NetApp Technical Report 4671: Performance Characterization of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure with Application Workloads](#).

For Cloud Volumes ONTAP for Google Cloud, refer to [NetApp Technical Report 4816: Performance Characterization of Cloud Volumes ONTAP for Google Cloud](#).

Get started

Deployment overview

Before you get started, you might want to better understand your options for deploying Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Cloud Manager installation

Cloud Manager software is required to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP. You can deploy Cloud Manager in any of the following locations:

- Amazon Web Services (AWS)
- Microsoft Azure
- Google Cloud Platform

Cloud Manager must be in Google Cloud Platform when deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP.

- IBM Cloud
- In your own network



Cloud Manager should remain running at all times.

How you deploy Cloud Manager depends on which location you choose:

Location for Cloud Manager	How to deploy Cloud Manager
AWS	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Deploy Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central (recommended)2. Deploy from the AWS Marketplace3. Download and install the software on a Linux host
AWS C2S	Deploy Cloud Manager from the AWS Intelligence Community Marketplace
Azure generally available region	<ol style="list-style-type: none">1. Deploy Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central (recommended)2. Deploy from the Azure Marketplace3. Download and install the software on a Linux host
Azure Government	Deploy Cloud Manager from the Azure US Government Marketplace

Location for Cloud Manager	How to deploy Cloud Manager
Azure Germany	Download and install the software on a Linux host
Google Cloud Platform	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Deploy Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central (recommended) <li>2. Download and install the software on a Linux host <p></p> <p>You can't deploy Cloud Manager in Google Cloud from the GCP Marketplace</p>
IBM Cloud	Download and install the software on a Linux host
On-premises network	Download and install the software on a Linux host

Cloud Manager setup

You might want to perform additional setup after you install Cloud Manager, such as adding additional cloud provider accounts, installing an HTTPS certificate, and more.

- [Setting up your Cloud Central account](#)
- [Adding AWS accounts to Cloud Manager](#)
- [Adding Azure accounts to Cloud Manager](#)
- [Installing an HTTPS certificate](#)
- [Setting up the AWS KMS](#)

Cloud Volumes ONTAP deployment

After you get Cloud Manager up and running, you can start deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP in your cloud provider.

[Getting started in AWS](#), [Getting started in Azure](#), and [Getting started in GCP](#) provide instructions for getting Cloud Volumes ONTAP up and running quickly. For additional help, refer to the following:

- [Supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 in AWS](#)
- [Supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 in Azure](#)
- [Supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 in GCP](#)
- [Planning your configuration](#)
- [Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)
- [Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure](#)
- [Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP](#)

Getting started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS

Get started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP by setting up AWS and then launching Cloud Manager software from NetApp Cloud Central. A 30-day free trial is available for the first Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that you launch in AWS.

1

Set up your networking

- a. Enable outbound internet access from the target VPC so Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP can contact several endpoints.

This step is important because Cloud Manager can't deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP without outbound internet access. If you need to limit outbound connectivity, refer to the list of endpoints for [Cloud Manager](#) and [Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

- b. Set up a VPC endpoint to the S3 service.

A VPC endpoint is required if you want to tier cold data from Cloud Volumes ONTAP to low-cost object storage.

2

Provide the required AWS permissions

When you deploy Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central, you need to use an AWS account that has permissions to deploy the instance.

- a. Go to the AWS IAM console and create a policy by copying and pasting the contents of the [NetApp Cloud Central policy for AWS](#).
- b. Attach the policy to the IAM user.

3

Launch Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central

Cloud Manager software is required to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP. It takes just a few minutes to launch a Cloud Manager instance from [Cloud Central](#).

4

Launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP using Cloud Manager

Once Cloud Manager is ready, just click Create, select the type of system that you would like to launch, and complete the steps in the wizard. After 25 minutes, your first Cloud Volumes ONTAP system should be up and running.

Watch the following video for a walk through of these steps:

► https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/occm/media/video_getting_started_aws.mp4 (video)

Related links

- [Evaluating](#)
- [Networking requirements for Cloud Manager](#)
- [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)
- [Security group rules for AWS](#)
- [Adding AWS accounts to Cloud Manager](#)
- [What Cloud Manager does with AWS permissions](#)
- [Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)
- [Launching Cloud Manager from the AWS Marketplace](#)
- [Downloading and installing the Cloud Manager software on a Linux host](#)

Getting started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure

Get started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP by setting up Azure and then deploying Cloud Manager software from NetApp Cloud Central. Separate instructions are available to deploy Cloud Manager in [Azure US Government regions](#) and in [Azure Germany regions](#).

1

Set up your networking

Enable outbound internet access from the target VNet so Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP can contact several endpoints.

This step is important because Cloud Manager cannot deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP without outbound internet access. If you need to limit outbound connectivity, refer to the list of endpoints for [Cloud Manager](#) and [Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

2

Provide the required Azure permissions

When you deploy Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central, you need to use an Azure account that has permissions to deploy the Cloud Manager virtual machine.

- a. Download the [NetApp Cloud Central policy for Azure](#).
- b. Modify the JSON file by adding your Azure subscription ID to the "AssignableScopes" field.
- c. Use the JSON file to create a custom role in Azure named *Azure SetupAsService*.

Example: `az role definition create --role-definition C:\Policy_for_Setup_As_Service_Azure.json`

- d. From the Azure portal, assign the custom role to the user who will deploy Cloud Manager from Cloud Central.

3

Launch Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central

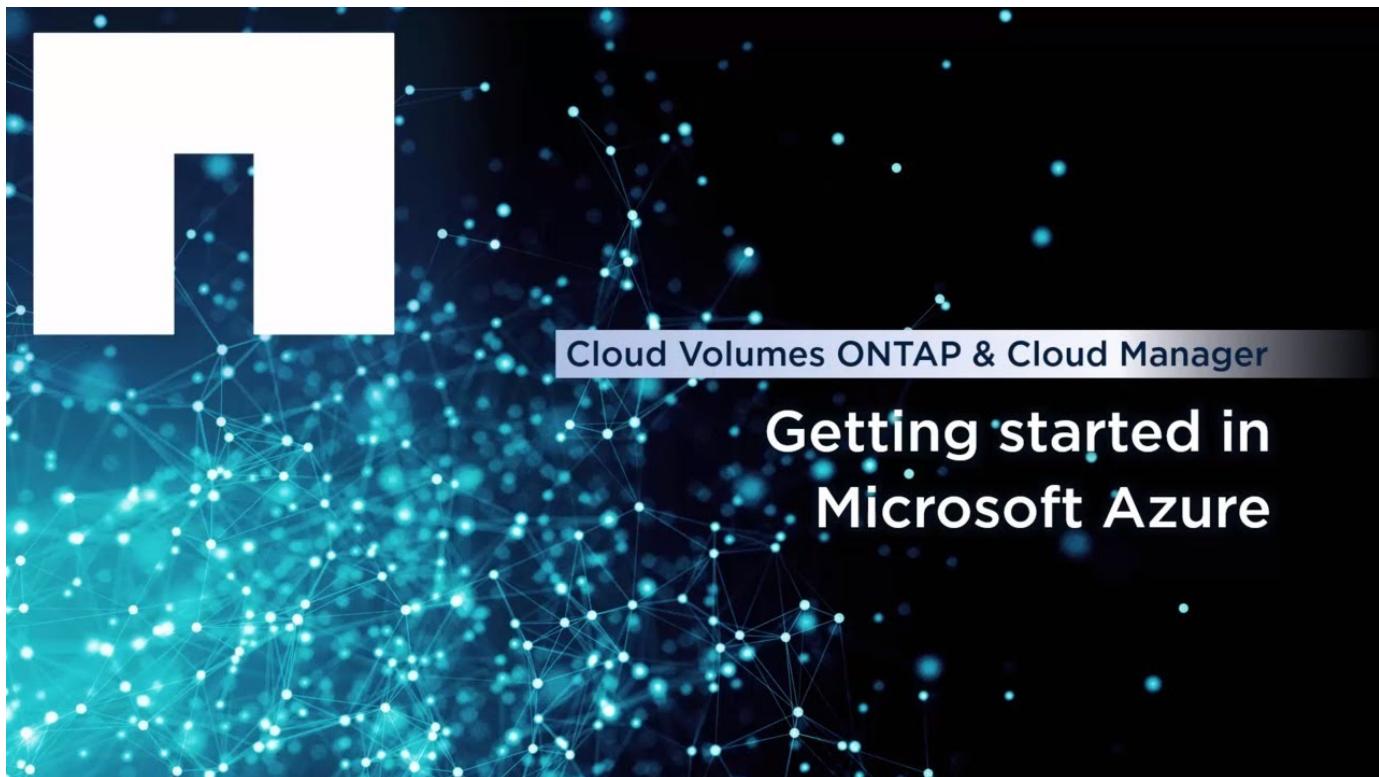
Cloud Manager software is required to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP. It takes just a few minutes to launch a Cloud Manager instance from [Cloud Central](#).

4

Launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP using Cloud Manager

Once Cloud Manager is ready, just click Create, select the type of system that you would like to deploy, and complete the steps in the wizard. After 25 minutes, your first Cloud Volumes ONTAP system should be up and running.

Watch the following video for a walk through of these steps:



Related links

- [Evaluating](#)
- [Networking requirements for Cloud Manager](#)
- [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure](#)
- [Security group rules for Azure](#)
- [Adding Azure accounts to Cloud Manager](#)

- [What Cloud Manager does with Azure permissions](#)
- [Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure](#)
- [Launching Cloud Manager from the Azure Marketplace](#)
- [Downloading and installing the Cloud Manager software on a Linux host](#)

Getting started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud Platform

Get started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP by setting up GCP and then deploying Cloud Manager software from NetApp Cloud Central.

Cloud Manager must be installed in Google Cloud Platform in order to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP.

1

Set up your networking

Enable outbound internet access from the target VPC so Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP can contact several endpoints.

This step is important because Cloud Manager can't deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP without outbound internet access. If you need to limit outbound connectivity, refer to the list of endpoints for [Cloud Manager](#) and [Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

2

Set up GCP permissions and projects

Make sure that two sets of permissions are in place:

- a. Ensure that the GCP user who deploys Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central has the permissions in the [Cloud Central policy for GCP](#).

[You can create a custom role using the YAML file](#) and then attach it to the user. You'll need to use the gcloud command line to create the role.

- b. Set up a service account that has the permissions that Cloud Manager needs to create and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in projects.

You'll associate this service account with the Cloud Manager VM in step 5.

- [Create a role in GCP](#) that includes the permissions defined in the [Cloud Manager policy for GCP](#). Again, you'll need to use the gcloud command line.

The permissions contained in this YAML file are different than the permissions in step 2a.

- Create a GCP service account and apply the custom role that you just created.
- If you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in other projects, grant access by adding the service account with the Cloud Manager role to that project. You'll need to repeat this step for each project.

3

Set up GCP for data tiering

Two requirements must be met to tier cold data from Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 to low-cost object storage (a Google Cloud Storage bucket):

a. Set up a service account for data tiering.

- Assign the predefined *Storage Admin* role to the tiering service account.
- Add the Cloud Manager service account as a *Service Account User* to the tiering service account.

You can provide the user role [in step 3 of the wizard when you create the tiering service account](#), or [grant the role after the service account was created](#).

You'll need to select the tiering service account later when you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment. This tiering service account is different from the Cloud Manager service account that you created in step 2.

b. Configure the Cloud Volumes ONTAP subnet for Private Google Access.

If you want to use data tiering with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6, [then follow these steps](#).

4

Enable Google Cloud APIs

[Enable the following Google Cloud APIs](#) in your project. These APIs are required to deploy Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

- Cloud Deployment Manager V2 API
- Cloud Logging API
- Cloud Resource Manager API
- Compute Engine API
- Identity and Access Management (IAM) API

5

Launch Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central

Cloud Manager software is required to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP. It takes just a few minutes to launch a Cloud Manager instance in GCP from [Cloud Central](#).

When you choose GCP as the cloud provider, you're prompted by Google to log in to your account and to grant permissions. Clicking "Allow" grants access to the compute APIs needed to deploy Cloud Manager.



6 Launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP using Cloud Manager

Once Cloud Manager is ready, just click Create, select the type of system that you would like to deploy, and complete the steps in the wizard. After 25 minutes, your first Cloud Volumes ONTAP system should be up and running.

Watch the following video for a walk through of these steps:

► https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/occm/media/video_getting_started_gcp.mp4 (video)

Related links

- [Evaluating](#)
- [Networking requirements for Cloud Manager](#)
- [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP](#)
- [Firewall rules for GCP](#)
- [What Cloud Manager does with GCP permissions](#)
- [Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP](#)
- [Downloading and installing the Cloud Manager software on a Linux host](#)

Set up Cloud Manager

Setting up workspaces and users in the Cloud Central account

Each Cloud Manager system is associated with a *NetApp Cloud Central account*. Set up the Cloud Central account associated with your Cloud Manager system so a user can access Cloud Manager and deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in workspaces. Just add a user or add multiple users and workspaces.

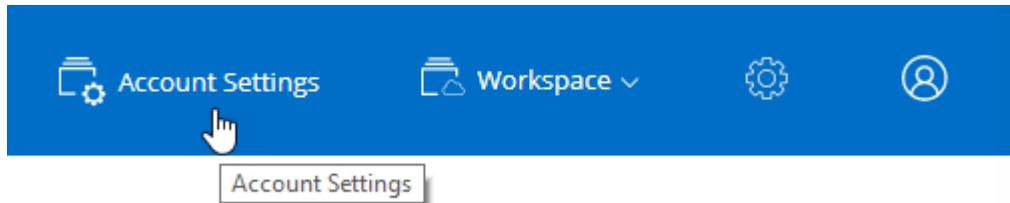
The account is maintained in Cloud Central, so any changes that you make are available to other Cloud Manager systems and to other NetApp cloud data services. [Learn more about how Cloud Central accounts work](#).

Adding workspaces

In Cloud Manager, workspaces enable you to isolate a set of working environments from other working environments and from other users. For example, you can create two workspaces and associate separate users with the workspaces.

Steps

1. Click **Account Settings**.



2. Click **Workspaces**.

3. Click **Add New Workspace**.

4. Enter a name for the workspace and click **Add**.

After you finish

You can now associate users and service connectors with the workspace.

Adding users

Associate Cloud Central users with the Cloud Central account so those users can create and manage working environments in Cloud Manager.

Steps

1. If the user has not already done so, ask the user to go to [NetApp Cloud Central](#) and create an account.

2. In Cloud Manager, click **Account Settings**.

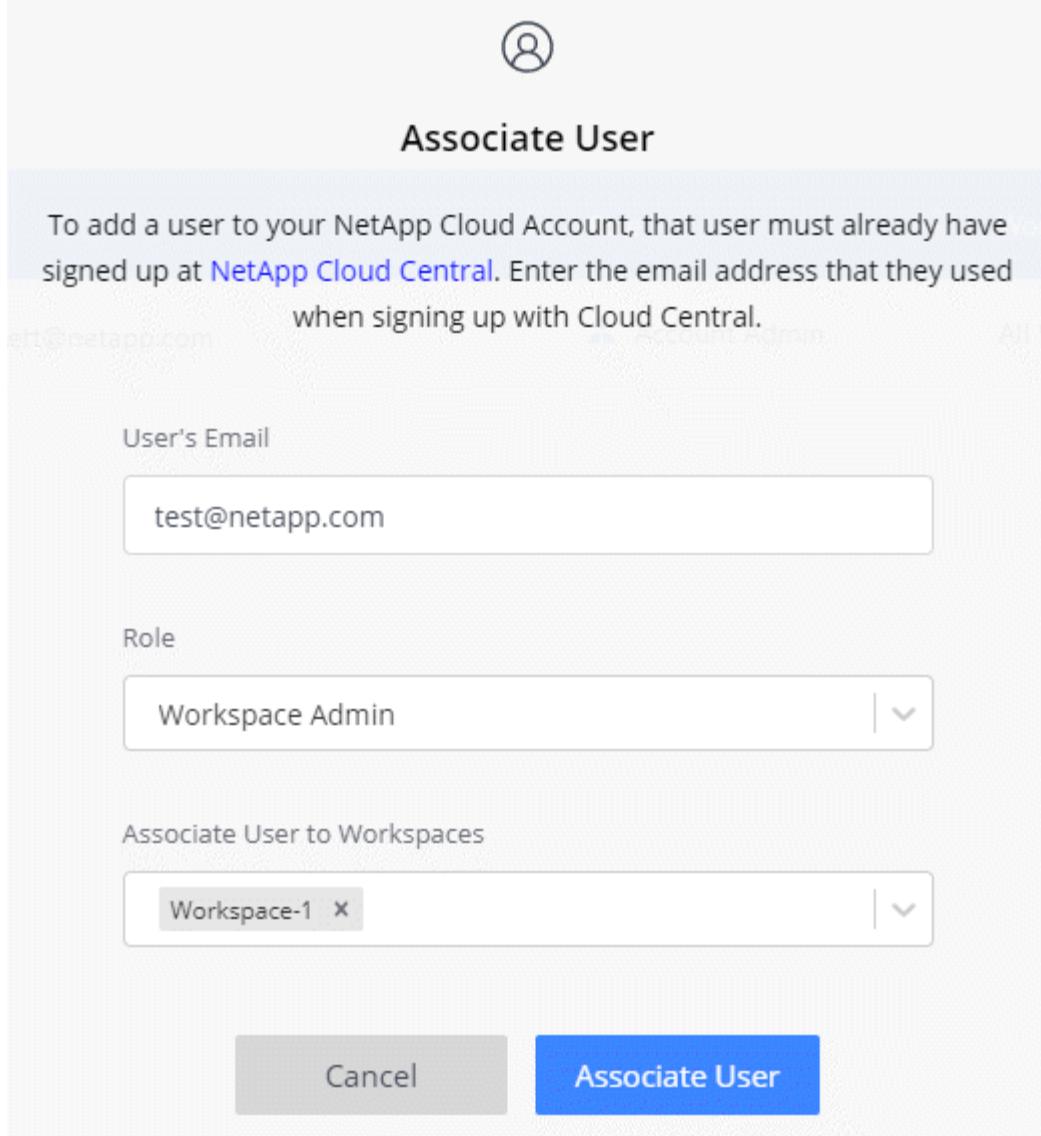
3. In the Users tab, click **Associate User**.

4. Enter the user's email address and select a role for the user:

- **Account Admin:** Can perform any action in Cloud Manager.

- **Workspace Admin:** Can create and manage resources in assigned workspaces.

5. If you selected Workspace Admin, select one or more workspaces to associate with that user.



The screenshot shows a "Associate User" dialog box. At the top is a user icon and the title "Associate User". Below the title is a descriptive text: "To add a user to your NetApp Cloud Account, that user must already have signed up at [NetApp Cloud Central](#). Enter the email address that they used when signing up with Cloud Central." A placeholder "User's Email" is followed by a text input field containing "test@netapp.com". A "Role" section shows "Workspace Admin" selected in a dropdown menu. An "Associate User to Workspaces" section shows "Workspace-1" selected in another dropdown menu. At the bottom are "Cancel" and "Associate User" buttons.

User's Email

test@netapp.com

Role

Workspace Admin

Associate User to Workspaces

Workspace-1

Cancel Associate User

6. Click **Associate User**.

Result

The user should receive an email from NetApp Cloud Central titled "Account Association." The email includes the information needed to access Cloud Manager.

Associating Workspace Admins with workspaces

You can associate Workspace Admins with additional workspaces at any time. Associating the user enables them to create and view the working environments in that workspace.

Steps

1. Click **Account Settings**.
2. Click the action menu in the row that corresponds to the user.

2 Users				Search
Name	Email	Role	Workspaces	
Ben	[REDACTED]	Account Admin	All Workspaces	
test	test@netapp.com	Workspace Admin	None	

3. Click **Manage Workspaces**.
4. Select one or more workspaces and click **Apply**.

Result

The user can now access those workspaces from Cloud Manager, as long as the service connector was also associated with the workspaces.

Associating service connectors with workspaces

A service connector is part of the Cloud Manager system. It runs on the virtual machine instance that was deployed in your cloud provider, or on an on-prem host that you configured. You need to associate this service connector with workspaces so Workspace Admins can access those workspaces from Cloud Manager.

If you only have Account Admins, then associating the service connector with workspaces isn't required. Account Admins have the ability to access all workspaces in Cloud Manager by default.

[Learn more about users, workspaces, and service connectors.](#)

Steps

1. Click **Account Settings**.
2. Click **Service Connector**.
3. Click **Manage Workspaces** for the service connector that you want to associate.
4. Select one or more workspaces and click **Apply**.

Result

Workspace Admins can now access the associated workspaces, as long as the user was also associated with the workspace.

Adding AWS credentials and subscriptions in Cloud Manager

When you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, you need to select the AWS credentials and subscription to use with that system. If you manage multiple AWS subscriptions, you can assign each one of them to different AWS credentials from the Credentials page.

Before you add AWS credentials to Cloud Manager, you need to provide the required permissions to that account. The permissions enable Cloud Manager to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in that AWS account. How you provide the permissions depends on whether you want to provide Cloud Manager with AWS keys or the ARN of a role in a trusted account.



When you deployed Cloud Manager from Cloud Central, Cloud Manager automatically added AWS credentials for the account in which you deployed Cloud Manager. This initial account is not added if you manually installed the Cloud Manager software on an existing system. [Learn about AWS accounts and permissions](#).

Choices

- [Granting permissions by providing AWS keys](#)
- [Granting permissions by assuming IAM roles in other accounts](#)

Granting permissions by providing AWS keys

If you want to provide Cloud Manager with AWS keys for an IAM user, then you need to grant the required permissions to that user. The Cloud Manager IAM policy defines the AWS actions and resources that Cloud Manager is allowed to use.

Steps

1. Download the Cloud Manager IAM policy from the [Cloud Manager Policies page](#).
2. From the IAM console, create your own policy by copying and pasting the text from the Cloud Manager IAM policy.

[AWS Documentation: Creating IAM Policies](#)

3. Attach the policy to an IAM role or an IAM user.
 - [AWS Documentation: Creating IAM Roles](#)
 - [AWS Documentation: Adding and Removing IAM Policies](#)

Result

The account now has the required permissions. [You can now add it to Cloud Manager](#).

Granting permissions by assuming IAM roles in other accounts

You can set up a trust relationship between the source AWS account in which you deployed the Cloud Manager instance and other AWS accounts by using IAM roles. You would then provide Cloud Manager with the ARN of the IAM roles from the trusted accounts.

Steps

1. Go to the target account where you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP and create an IAM role by selecting **Another AWS account**.

Be sure to do the following:

- Enter the ID of the account where the Cloud Manager instance resides.
 - Attach the Cloud Manager IAM policy, which is available from the [Cloud Manager Policies page](#).
2. Go to the source account where the Cloud Manager instance resides and select the IAM role that is attached to the instance.
- a. Click **Attach policies** and then click **Create policy**.
 - b. Create a policy that includes the "sts:AssumeRole" action and the ARN of the role that you created in the target account.

Example

```
{  
  "Version": "2012-10-17",  
  "Statement": [  
    {  
      "Effect": "Allow",  
      "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",  
      "Resource": "arn:aws:iam::ACCOUNT-B-ID:role/ACCOUNT-B-ROLENAME"  
    }  
  ]  
}
```

Result

The account now has the required permissions. [You can now add it to Cloud Manager](#).

Adding AWS credentials to Cloud Manager

After you provide an AWS account with the required permissions, you can add the credentials for that account to Cloud Manager. This enables you to launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in that account.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **Credentials**.



2. Click **Add Credentials** and select **AWS**.
3. Provide AWS keys or the ARN of a trusted IAM role.
4. Confirm that the policy requirements have been met and click **Continue**.
5. Choose the pay-as-you-go subscription that you want to associate with the credentials, or click **Add**

Subscription if you don't have one yet.

To create a pay-as-you-go Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, AWS credentials must be associated with a subscription to Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the AWS Marketplace.

6. Click **Go**.

Result

You can now switch to a different set of credentials from the Details and Credentials page when creating a new working environment:

The screenshot shows a user interface for managing AWS credentials and subscriptions. At the top, a title bar reads "Edit Account & Add Subscription". Below it, a section titled "Credentials" contains two options: "Keys | Account ID: [REDACTED]" and "Instance Profile | Account ID: [REDACTED]". A hand cursor is hovering over the "Instance Profile" option. Below this, a blue bar indicates a "QA Subscription" is selected. A callout box titled "Associate Subscription to Credentials" provides instructions: "To create a pay-as-you-go Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, you need to select AWS credentials that are associated with a subscription to Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the AWS Marketplace." It includes a blue "Add Subscription" button with a plus sign. At the bottom, there are "Apply" and "Cancel" buttons.

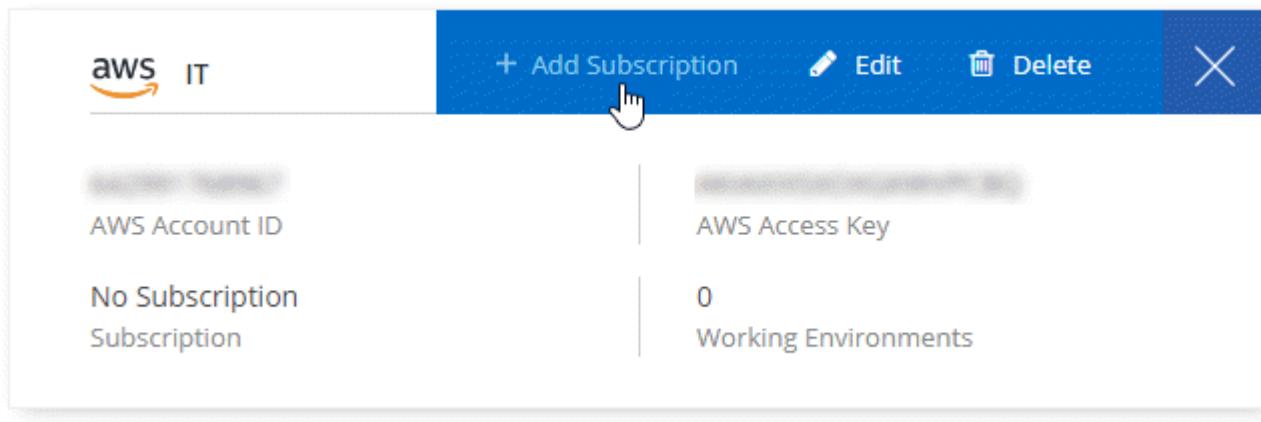
Assigning an AWS subscription to credentials

If you haven't yet added an AWS subscription to a set of AWS credentials, you can do so any time from

the Credentials page. To create a pay-as-you-go Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, AWS credentials must be associated with a subscription to Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the AWS Marketplace.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **Credentials**.
2. Hover over a set of credentials and click the action menu.
3. From the menu, click **Add Subscription**.



4. Click **Add Subscription**, click **Continue**, and follow the steps.

► https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/occm/media/video_subscribing_aws.mp4 (video)

Setting up and adding Azure credentials to Cloud Manager

There are two ways to manage Azure credentials in Cloud Manager. First, if you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in different Azure accounts, then you need to provide the required permissions and add the credentials to Cloud Manager. The second way is to associate additional subscriptions with the Azure managed identity.



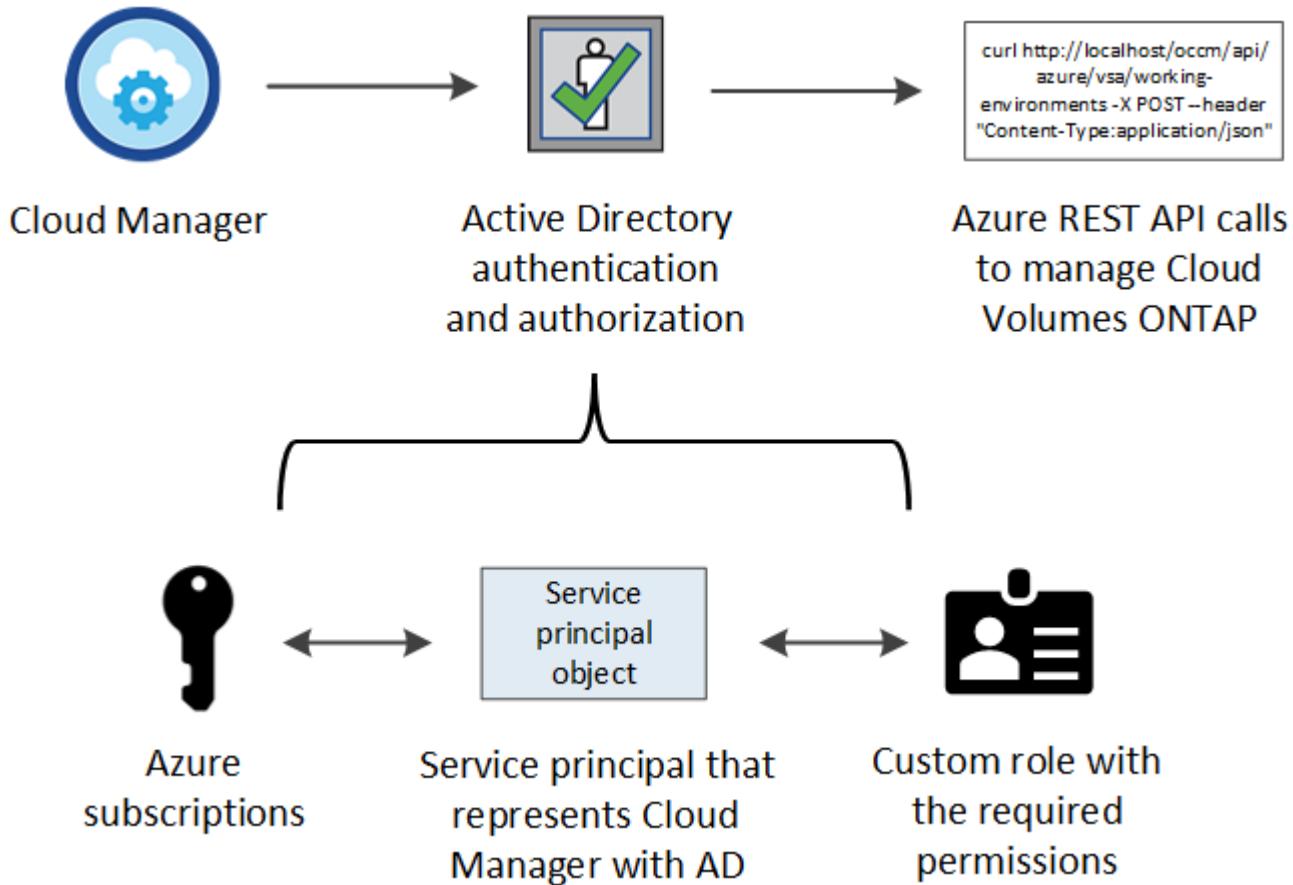
When you deploy Cloud Manager from Cloud Central, Cloud Manager automatically adds the Azure account in which you deployed Cloud Manager. An initial account is not added if you manually installed the Cloud Manager software on an existing system. [Learn about Azure accounts and permissions](#).

Granting Azure permissions using a service principal

Cloud Manager needs permissions to perform actions in Azure. You can grant the required permissions to an Azure account by creating and setting up a service principal in Azure Active Directory and by obtaining the Azure credentials that Cloud Manager needs.

About this task

The following image depicts how Cloud Manager obtains permissions to perform operations in Azure. A service principal object, which is tied to one or more Azure subscriptions, represents Cloud Manager in Azure Active Directory and is assigned to a custom role that allows the required permissions.



Steps

1. [Create an Azure Active Directory application.](#)
2. [Assign the application to a role.](#)
3. [Add Windows Azure Service Management API permissions.](#)
4. [Get the application ID and directory ID.](#)
5. [Create a client secret.](#)

Creating an Azure Active Directory application

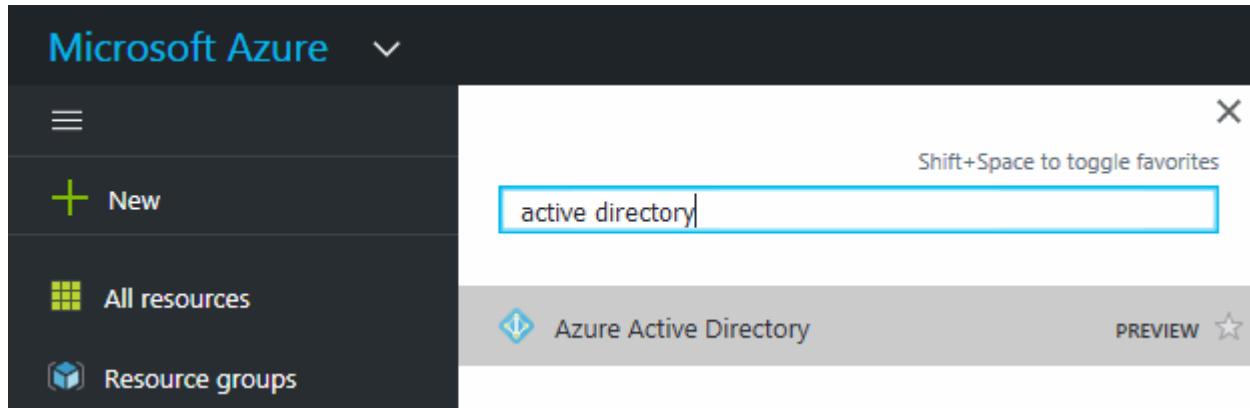
Create an Azure Active Directory (AD) application and service principal that Cloud Manager can use for role-based access control.

Before you begin

You must have the right permissions in Azure to create an Active Directory application and to assign the application to a role. For details, refer to [Microsoft Azure Documentation: Required permissions](#).

Steps

1. From the Azure portal, open the **Azure Active Directory** service.



2. In the menu, click **App registrations**.
3. Click **New registration**.
4. Specify details about the application:
 - **Name:** Enter a name for the application.
 - **Account type:** Select an account type (any will work with Cloud Manager).
 - **Redirect URI:** Select **Web** and then enter any URL—for example, <https://url>
5. Click **Register**.

Result

You've created the AD application and service principal.

Assigning the application to a role

You must bind the service principal to one or more Azure subscriptions and assign it the custom "OnCommand Cloud Manager Operator" role so Cloud Manager has permissions in Azure.

Steps

1. Create a custom role:
 - a. Download the [Cloud Manager Azure policy](#).
 - b. Modify the JSON file by adding Azure subscription IDs to the assignable scope.

You should add the ID for each Azure subscription from which users will create Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

Example

```
"AssignableScopes": [  
    "/subscriptions/d333af45-0d07-4154-943d-c25fbzzzzzz",  
    "/subscriptions/54b91999-b3e6-4599-908e-416e0zzzzzz",  
    "/subscriptions/398e471c-3b42-4ae7-9b59-ce5bbzzzzzz"
```

- c. Use the JSON file to create a custom role in Azure.

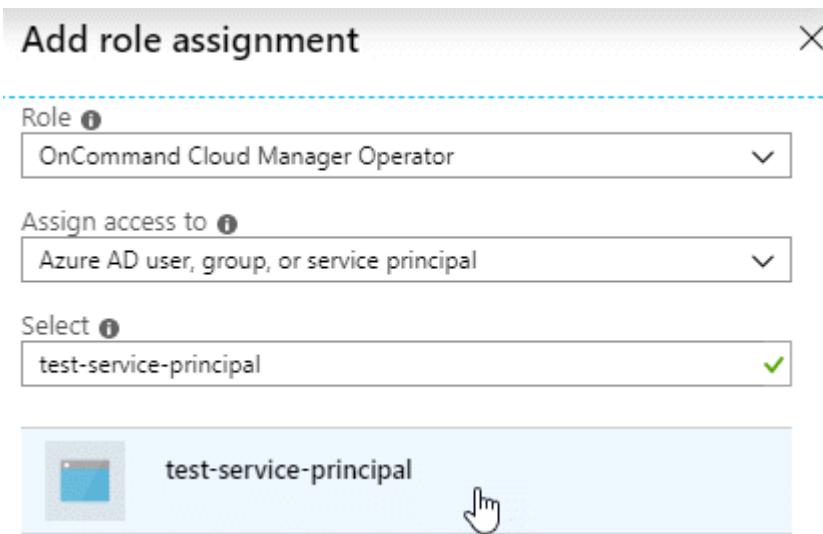
The following example shows how to create a custom role using the Azure CLI 2.0:

```
az role definition create --role-definition C:\Policy_for_cloud_Manager_Azure_3.8.5.json
```

You should now have a custom role called *Cloud Manager Operator*.

2. Assign the application to the role:

- a. From the Azure portal, open the **Subscriptions** service.
- b. Select the subscription.
- c. Click **Access control (IAM)** > **Add** > **Add role assignment**.
- d. Select the **Cloud Manager Operator** role.
- e. Keep **Azure AD user, group, or service principal** selected.
- f. Search for the name of the application (you can't find it in the list by scrolling).



- g. Select the application and click **Save**.

The service principal for Cloud Manager now has the required Azure permissions for that subscription.

If you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP from multiple Azure subscriptions, then you must bind the service principal to each of those subscriptions. Cloud Manager enables you to select the subscription that you want to use when deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Adding Windows Azure Service Management API permissions

The service principal must have "Windows Azure Service Management API" permissions.

Steps

1. In the **Azure Active Directory** service, click **App registrations** and select the application.
2. Click **API permissions > Add a permission**.
3. Under **Microsoft APIs**, select **Azure Service Management**.

Request API permissions

Select an API

Microsoft APIs APIs my organization uses My APIs

Commonly used Microsoft APIs

Microsoft Graph

Take advantage of the tremendous amount of data in Office 365, Enterprise Mobility + Security, and Windows 10. Access Azure AD, Excel, Intune, Outlook/Exchange, OneDrive, OneNote, SharePoint, Planner, and more through a single endpoint.



Azure Batch

Schedule large-scale parallel and HPC applications in the cloud

Azure Data Catalog

Programmatic access to Data Catalog resources to register, annotate and search data assets

Azure Data Explorer

Perform ad-hoc queries on terabytes of data to build near real-time and complex analytics solutions

Azure Data Lake

Access to storage and compute for big data analytic scenarios

Azure DevOps

Integrate with Azure DevOps and Azure DevOps server

Azure Import/Export

Programmatic control of import/export jobs

Azure Key Vault

Manage your key vaults as well as the keys, secrets, and certificates within your Key Vaults

Azure Rights Management Services

Allow validated users to read and write protected content

Azure Service Management

Programmatic access to much of the functionality available through the Azure portal

Azure Storage

Secure, massively scalable object and data lake storage for unstructured and semi-structured data

Customer Insights

Create profile and interaction models for your products

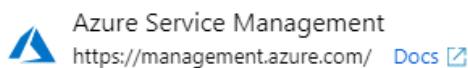
Data Export Service for Microsoft Dynamics 365

Export data from Microsoft Dynamics CRM organization to an external destination

4. Click **Access Azure Service Management as organization users** and then click **Add permissions**.

Request API permissions

[All APIs](#)



What type of permissions does your application require?

Delegated permissions

Your application needs to access the API as the signed-in user.

Application permissions

Your application runs as a background service or daemon without a signed-in user.

Select permissions

[expand all](#)

Type to search

PERMISSION

ADMIN CONSENT REQUIRED

user_impersonation

Access Azure Service Management as organization users (preview) [?](#)

Getting the application ID and directory ID

When you add the Azure account to Cloud Manager, you need to provide the application (client) ID and the directory (tenant) ID for the application. Cloud Manager uses the IDs to programmatically sign in.

Steps

1. In the **Azure Active Directory** service, click **App registrations** and select the application.
2. Copy the **Application (client) ID** and the **Directory (tenant) ID**.

The screenshot shows the Azure App registrations page. It includes a 'Delete' button, an 'Endpoints' link, and a welcome message: 'Welcome to the new and improved App registrations. Looking to learn'. Below this, there's a table with columns for 'Display name' and other identifiers. The 'Display name' row has a value of 'test-service-principal'. The 'Application (client) ID' row has a value of '73de25f9-99be-4ae0-8b24-538ca787a6b3', which is highlighted with a red box. The 'Directory (tenant) ID' row has a value of '4b0911a0-929b-4715-944b-c03745165b3a', also highlighted with a red box. The 'Object ID' row has a value of 'b37489a9-379f-49c2-b27c-e630514106a5'.

Display name	: test-service-principal
Application (client) ID	: 73de25f9-99be-4ae0-8b24-538ca787a6b3
Directory (tenant) ID	: 4b0911a0-929b-4715-944b-c03745165b3a
Object ID	: b37489a9-379f-49c2-b27c-e630514106a5

Creating a client secret

You need to create a client secret and then provide Cloud Manager with the value of the secret so Cloud Manager can use it to authenticate with Azure AD.



When you add the account to Cloud Manager, Cloud Manager refers to the client secret as the Application Key.

Steps

1. Open the **Azure Active Directory** service.
2. Click **App registrations** and select your application.
3. Click **Certificates & secrets > New client secret**.
4. Provide a description of the secret and a duration.
5. Click **Add**.
6. Copy the value of the client secret.

Client secrets

A secret string that the application uses to prove its identity when requesting a token. Also can be referred to as application password.

Client secrets			Copy to clipboard
DESCRIPTION	EXPIRES	VALUE	
test secret	8/16/2020	*sZ1jSe2By:D*-ZRov4NLfdAcY7:+0vA	

Result

Your service principal is now setup and you should have copied the application (client) ID, the directory (tenant) ID, and the value of the client secret. You need to enter this information in Cloud Manager when you add an Azure account.

Adding Azure credentials to Cloud Manager

After you provide an Azure account with the required permissions, you can add the credentials for that account to Cloud Manager. This enables you to launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in that account.

Steps

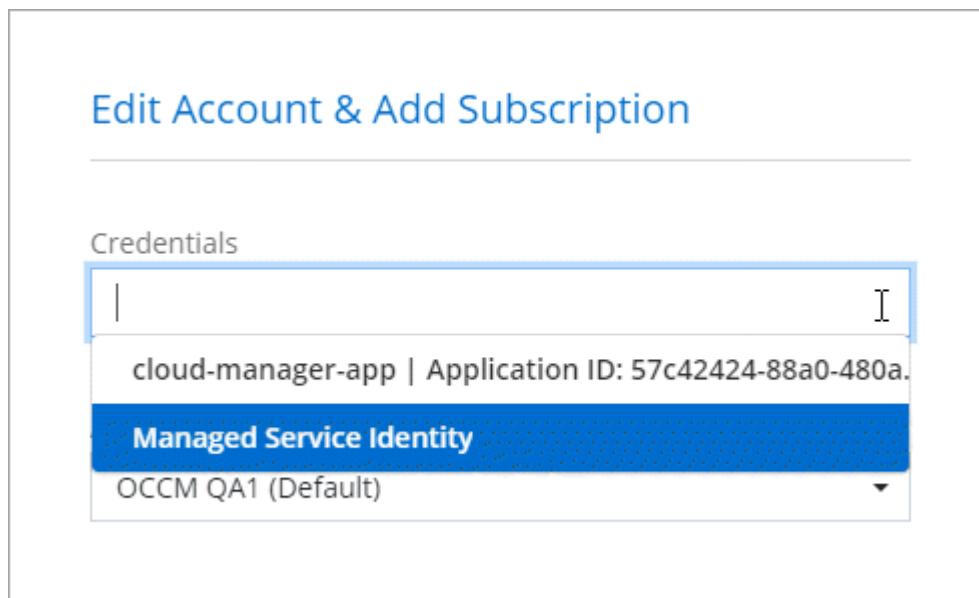
1. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **Credentials**.



2. Click **Add Credentials** and select **Microsoft Azure**.
3. Enter information about the Azure Active Directory service principal that grants the required permissions:
 - Application (client) ID: See [Getting the application ID and directory ID](#).
 - Directory (tenant) ID: See [Getting the application ID and directory ID](#).
 - Client Secret: See [Creating a client secret](#).
4. Confirm that the policy requirements have been met and then click **Create Account**.

Result

You can now switch to different set of credentials from the Details and Credentials page [when creating a new working environment](#):



Associating additional Azure subscriptions with a managed identity

Cloud Manager enables you to choose the Azure credentials and Azure subscription in which you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP. You can't select a different Azure subscription for the managed identity profile unless you associate the [managed identity](#) with those subscriptions.

About this task

A managed identity is [the initial Azure account](#) when you deploy Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central. When you deployed Cloud Manager, Cloud Central created the Cloud Manager Operator role and assigned it to the Cloud Manager virtual machine.

Steps

1. Log in to the Azure portal.
2. Open the **Subscriptions** service and then select the subscription in which you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
3. Click **Access control (IAM)**.
 - a. Click **Add > Add role assignment** and then add the permissions:
 - Select the **Cloud Manager Operator** role.



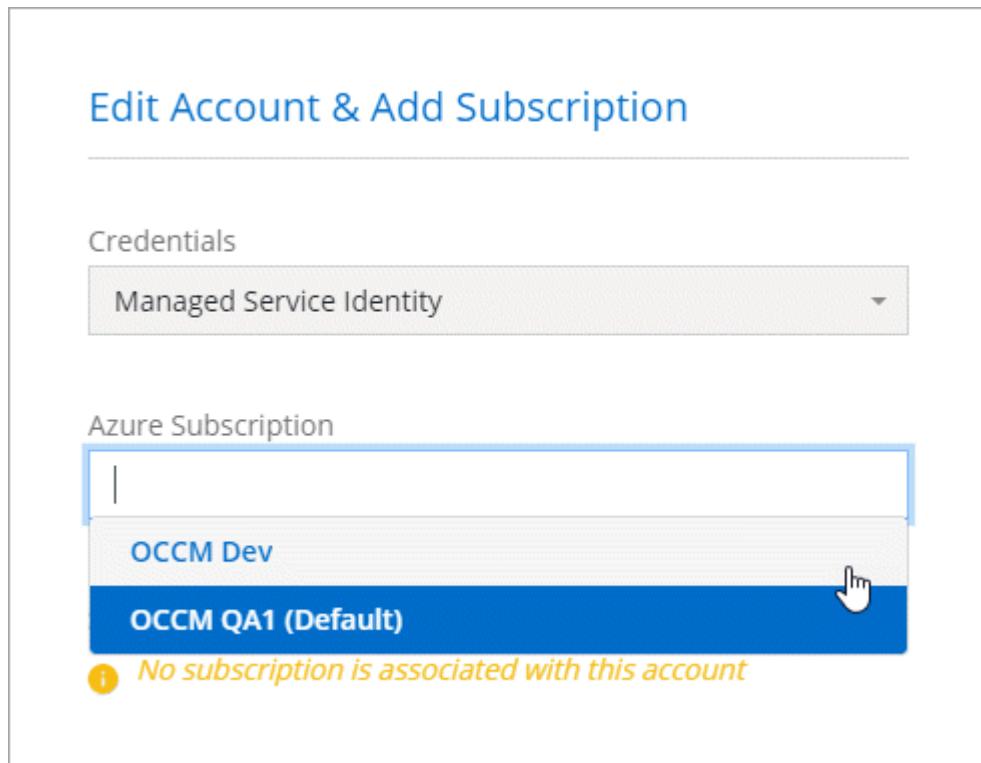
Cloud Manager Operator is the default name provided in the [Cloud Manager policy](#). If you chose a different name for the role, then select that name instead.

- Assign access to a **Virtual Machine**.

- Select the subscription in which the Cloud Manager virtual machine was created.
 - Select the Cloud Manager virtual machine.
 - Click **Save**.
4. Repeat these steps for additional subscriptions.

Result

When you create a new working environment, you should now have the ability to select from multiple Azure subscriptions for the managed identity profile.



Setting up and adding GCP accounts for data tiering with 9.6

If you want to enable [data tiering](#) on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 system, you need to provide Cloud Manager with a storage access key for a service account that has Storage Admin permissions. Cloud Manager uses the access keys to set up and manage a Cloud Storage bucket for data tiering.



If you want to use data tiering with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7, then follow step 3 in [Getting started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud Platform](#).

Setting up a service account and access keys for Google Cloud Storage

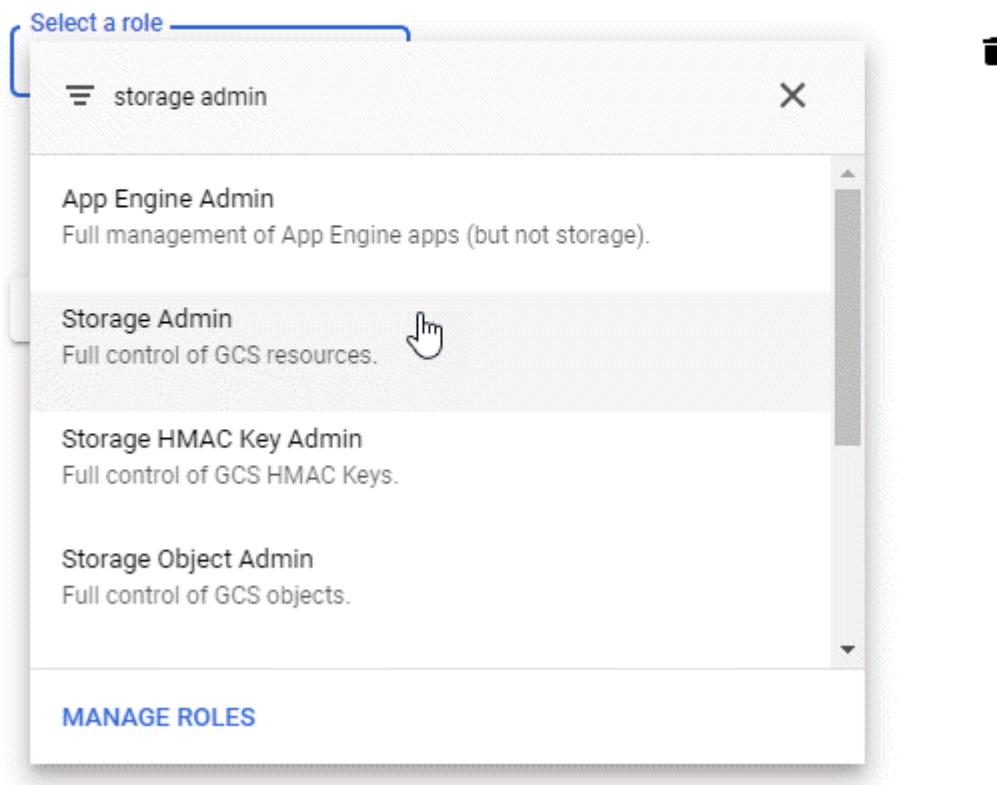
A service account enables Cloud Manager to authenticate and access Cloud Storage buckets used for data tiering. The keys are required so that Google Cloud Storage knows who is making the request.

Steps

1. Open the GCP IAM console and [create a service account that has the Storage Admin role.](#)

Service account permissions (optional)

Grant this service account access to My Project 99247 so that it has permission to complete specific actions on the resources in your project. [Learn more](#)



2. Go to [GCP Storage Settings](#).
3. If you're prompted, select a project.
4. Click the **Interoperability** tab.
5. If you haven't already done so, click **Enable interoperability access**.
6. Under **Access keys for service accounts**, click **Create a key for a service account**.
7. Select the service account that you created in step 1.

Select a service account

Search by prefix...		
Email	Name	Keys
<input checked="" type="radio"/> data-tiering-for-netapp@top-monitor-250116.iam.gserviceaccount.com	data tiering for netapp	-

[CANCEL](#) [CREATE KEY](#) | [CREATE NEW ACCOUNT](#)

8. Click **Create Key**.
9. Copy the access key and secret.

You'll need to enter this information in Cloud Manager when you add the GCP account for data tiering.

Adding a GCP account to Cloud Manager

Now that you have an access key for a service account, you can add it to Cloud Manager.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **Credentials**.



2. Click **Add Credentials** and select **Google Cloud**.
3. Enter the access key and secret for the service account.

The keys enable Cloud Manager to set up a Cloud Storage bucket for data tiering.

4. Confirm that the policy requirements have been met and then click **Create Account**.

What's next?

You can now enable data tiering on individual volumes on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 system when you create, modify, or replicate them. For details, see [Tiering inactive data to low-cost object storage](#).

But before you do, be sure that the subnet in which Cloud Volumes ONTAP resides is configured for Private Google Access. For instructions, refer to [Google Cloud Documentation: Configuring Private Google Access](#).

Adding NetApp Support Site accounts to Cloud Manager

Adding your NetApp Support Site account to Cloud Manager is required to deploy a BYOL system. It's also required to register pay-as-you-go systems and to upgrade ONTAP software.

Watch the following video to learn how to add NetApp Support Site accounts to Cloud Manager. Or scroll down to read the steps.



Steps

1. If you don't have a NetApp Support Site account yet, [register for one](#).
2. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **Credentials**.



3. Click **Add Credentials** and select **NetApp Support Site**.
4. Specify a name for the account and then enter the user name and password.
 - The account must be a customer-level account (not a guest or temp account).
 - If you plan to deploy BYOL systems:
 - The account must be authorized to access the serial numbers of the BYOL systems.
 - If you purchased a secure BYOL subscription, then a secure NSS account is required.

5. Click **Create Account**.

What's next?

Users can now select the account when creating new Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems and when registering existing systems.

- [Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)
- [Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure](#)
- [Registering pay-as-you-go systems](#)
- [Learn how Cloud Manager manages license files](#)

Installing an HTTPS certificate for secure access

By default, Cloud Manager uses a self-signed certificate for HTTPS access to the web console. You can install a certificate signed by a certificate authority (CA), which provides better security protection than a self-signed certificate.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **HTTPS Setup**.



2. In the HTTPS Setup page, install a certificate by generating a certificate signing request (CSR) or by installing your own CA-signed certificate:

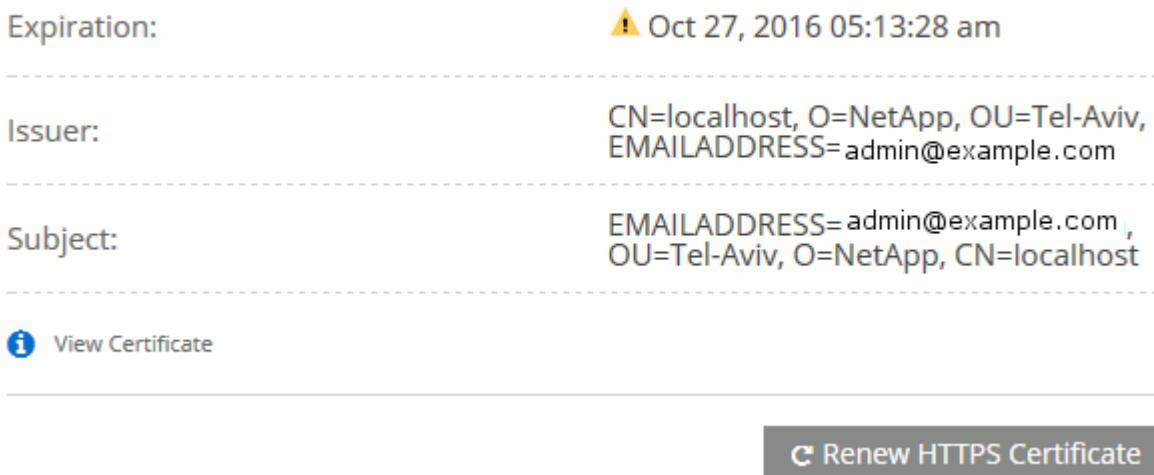
Option	Description
Generate a CSR	<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Enter the host name or DNS of the Cloud Manager host (its Common Name), and then click Generate CSR. Cloud Manager displays a certificate signing request.b. Use the CSR to submit an SSL certificate request to a CA. The certificate must use the Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) Base-64 encoded X.509 format.c. Copy the contents of the signed certificate, paste it in the Certificate field, and then click Install.

Option	Description
Install your own CA-signed certificate	<p>a. Select Install CA-signed certificate.</p> <p>b. Load both the certificate file and the private key and then click Install.</p> <p>The certificate must use the Privacy Enhanced Mail (PEM) Base-64 encoded X.509 format.</p>

Result

Cloud Manager now uses the CA-signed certificate to provide secure HTTPS access. The following image shows a Cloud Manager system that is configured for secure access:

Cloud Manager HTTPS certificate



Setting up the AWS KMS

If you want to use Amazon encryption with Cloud Volumes ONTAP, then you need to set up the AWS Key Management Service (KMS).

Steps

1. Ensure that an active Customer Master Key (CMK) exists.

The CMK can be an AWS-managed CMK or a customer-managed CMK. It can be in the same AWS account as Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP or in a different AWS account.

[AWS Documentation: Customer Master Keys \(CMKs\)](#)

2. Modify the key policy for each CMK by adding the IAM role that provides permissions to Cloud Manager as a *key user*.

Adding the IAM role as a key user gives Cloud Manager permissions to use the CMK with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

AWS Documentation: Editing Keys

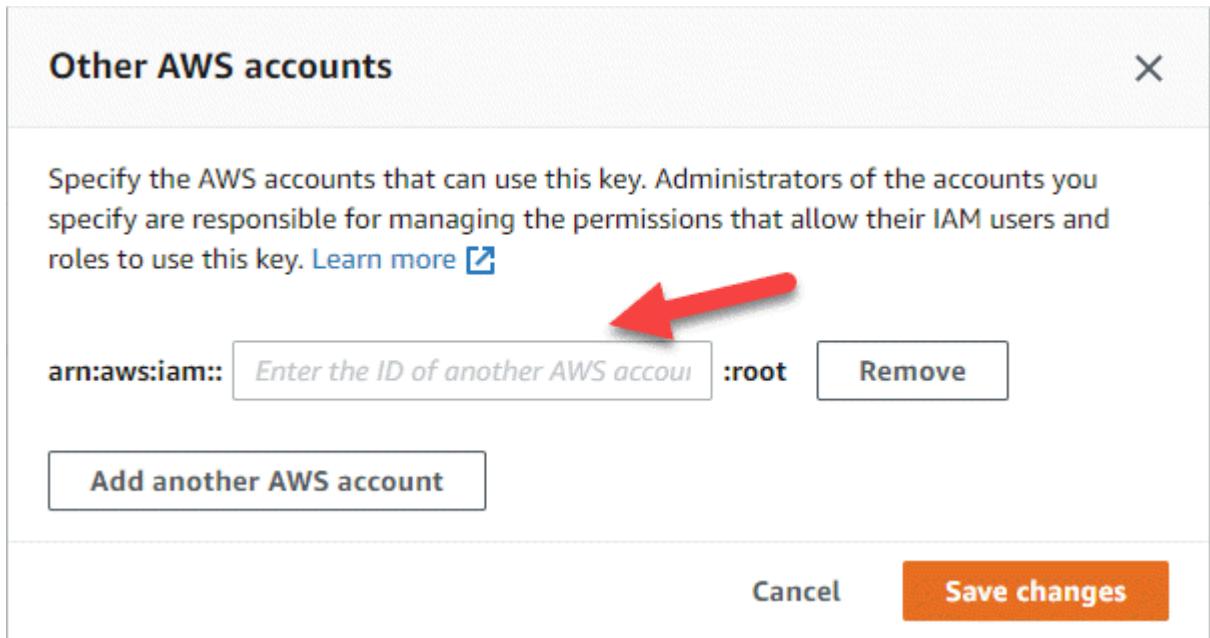
3. If the CMK is in a different AWS account, complete the following steps:

- a. Go to the KMS console from the account where the CMK resides.
- b. Select the key.
- c. In the **General configuration** pane, copy the ARN of the key.

You'll need to provide the ARN to Cloud Manager when you create the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

- d. In the **Other AWS accounts** pane, add the AWS account that provides Cloud Manager with permissions.

In most cases, this is the account where Cloud Manager resides. If Cloud Manager wasn't installed in AWS, it would be the account for which you provided AWS access keys to Cloud Manager.



- e. Now switch to the AWS account that provides Cloud Manager with permissions and open the

IAM console.

- f. Create an IAM policy that includes the permissions listed below.
- g. Attach the policy to the IAM role or IAM user that provides permissions to Cloud Manager.

The following policy provides the permissions that Cloud Manager needs to use the CMK from the external AWS account. Be sure to modify the region and account ID in the "Resource" sections.

```
{  
    "Version": "2012-10-17",  
    "Statement": [  
        {  
            "Sid": "AllowUseOfTheKey",  
            "Effect": "Allow",  
            "Action": [  
                "kms:Encrypt",  
                "kms:Decrypt",  
                "kms:ReEncrypt*",  
                "kms:GenerateDataKey*",  
                "kms:DescribeKey"  
            ],  
            "Resource": [  
                "arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:externalaccountid:key/externalkeyid"  
            ]  
        },  
        {  
            "Sid": "AllowAttachmentOfPersistentResources",  
            "Effect": "Allow",  
            "Action": [  
                "kms>CreateGrant",  
                "kms>ListGrants",  
                "kms:RevokeGrant"  
            ],  
            "Resource": [  
                "arn:aws:kms:us-east-1:externalaccountid:key/externalaccountid"  
            ],  
            "Condition": {  
                "Bool": {  
                    "kms:GrantIsForAWSResource": true  
                }  
            }  
        }  
    ]  
}
```

For additional details about this process, see [AWS Documentation: Allowing External AWS Accounts to Access a CMK](#).

Network requirements

Networking requirements for Cloud Manager

Set up your networking so that Cloud Manager can deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in AWS, Microsoft Azure, or Google Cloud Platform. The most important step is ensuring outbound internet access to various endpoints.



If your network uses a proxy server for all communication to the internet, Cloud Manager prompts you to specify the proxy during setup. You can also specify the proxy server from the Settings page. Refer to [Configuring Cloud Manager to use a proxy server](#).

Connection to target networks

Cloud Manager requires a network connection to the VPCs and VNets in which you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

For example, if you install Cloud Manager in your corporate network, then you must set up a VPN connection to the VPC or VNet in which you launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Outbound internet access

Cloud Manager requires outbound internet access to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Outbound internet access is also required when accessing Cloud Manager from your web browser and when running the Cloud Manager installer on a Linux host.

The following sections identify the specific endpoints.

Endpoints to manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS

Cloud Manager requires outbound internet access to contact the following endpoints when deploying and managing Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS:

Endpoints	Purpose
AWS services (amazonaws.com): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CloudFormation • Elastic Compute Cloud (EC2) • Key Management Service (KMS) • Security Token Service (STS) • Simple Storage Service (S3) <p>The exact endpoint depends on the region in which you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Refer to AWS documentation for details.</p>	Enables Cloud Manager to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS.
https://api.services.cloud.netapp.com:443	API requests to NetApp Cloud Central.
https://cloud.support.netapp.com.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com	Provides access to software images, manifests, and templates.
https://repo.cloud.support.netapp.com	Used to download Cloud Manager dependencies.
http://repo.mysql.com/	Used to download MySQL.
https://cognito-idp.us-east-1.amazonaws.com https://cognito-identity.us-east-1.amazonaws.com https://sts.amazonaws.com https://cloud-support-netapp-com-accelerated.s3.amazonaws.com	Enables Cloud Manager to access and download manifests, templates, and Cloud Volumes ONTAP upgrade images.
https://cloudmanagerinfraprod.azurecr.io	Access to software images of container components for an infrastructure that's running Docker and provides a solution for service integrations with Cloud Manager.
https://kinesis.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	Enables NetApp to stream data from audit records.
https://cloudmanager.cloud.netapp.com	Communication with the Cloud Manager service, which includes Cloud Central accounts.
https://netapp-cloud-account.auth0.com	Communication with NetApp Cloud Central for centralized user authentication.
https://w86yt021u5.execute-api.us-east-1.amazonaws.com/production/whitelist	Used to add your AWS account ID to the list of allowed users for Backup to S3.

Endpoints	Purpose
https://support.netapp.com/aods/asupmessage https://support.netapp.com/asupprod/post/1.0/postAsup	Communication with NetApp AutoSupport.
https://support.netapp.com/svcgw https://support.netapp.com/ServiceGW/entitlement https://eval.lic.netapp.com.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com https://cloud-support-netapp-com.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com	Communication with NetApp for system licensing and support registration.
https://ipa-signer.cloudmanager.netapp.com	Enables Cloud Manager to generate licenses (for example, a FlexCache license for Cloud Volumes ONTAP)
https://packages.cloud.google.com/yum https://github.com/NetApp/trident/releases/download/	Required to connect Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems with a Kubernetes cluster. The endpoints enable installation of NetApp Trident.
Various third-party locations, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • https://repo1.maven.org/maven2 • https://oss.sonatype.org/content/repositories • https://repo.typesafe.org 	During upgrades, Cloud Manager downloads the latest packages for third-party dependencies.
Third-party locations are subject to change.	

Endpoints to manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure

Cloud Manager requires outbound internet access to contact the following endpoints when deploying and managing Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Microsoft Azure:

Endpoints	Purpose
https://management.azure.com https://login.microsoftonline.com	Enables Cloud Manager to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in most Azure regions.
https://management.microsoftazure.de https://login.microsoftonline.de	Enables Cloud Manager to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in the Azure Germany regions.
https://management.usgovcloudapi.net https://login.microsoftonline.com	Enables Cloud Manager to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in the Azure US Gov regions.

Endpoints	Purpose
https://api.services.cloud.netapp.com:443	API requests to NetApp Cloud Central.
https://cloud.support.netapp.com.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com	Provides access to software images, manifests, and templates.
https://repo.cloud.support.netapp.com	Used to download Cloud Manager dependencies.
http://repo.mysql.com/	Used to download MySQL.
https://cognito-idp.us-east-1.amazonaws.com https://cognito-identity.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	Enables Cloud Manager to access and download manifests, templates, and Cloud Volumes ONTAP upgrade images.
https://sts.amazonaws.com https://cloud-support-netapp-com-accelerated.s3.amazonaws.com	
https://cloudmanagerinfraprod.azurecr.io	Access to software images of container components for an infrastructure that's running Docker and provides a solution for service integrations with Cloud Manager.
https://kinesis.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	Enables NetApp to stream data from audit records.
https://cloudmanager.cloud.netapp.com	Communication with the Cloud Manager service, which includes Cloud Central accounts.
https://netapp-cloud-account.auth0.com	Communication with NetApp Cloud Central for centralized user authentication.
https://mysupport.netapp.com	Communication with NetApp AutoSupport.
https://support.netapp.com/svcgw https://support.netapp.com/ServiceGW/entitlement	Communication with NetApp for system licensing and support registration.
https://eval.lic.netapp.com.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com	
https://cloud-support-netapp-com.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com	
https://ipa-signer.cloudmanager.netapp.com	Enables Cloud Manager to generate licenses (for example, a FlexCache license for Cloud Volumes ONTAP)
https://packages.cloud.google.com/yum https://github.com/NetApp/trident/releases/download/	Required to connect Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems with a Kubernetes cluster. The endpoints enable installation of NetApp Trident.
*.blob.core.windows.net	Required for HA pairs when using a proxy.

Endpoints	Purpose
<p>Various third-party locations, for example:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • https://repo1.maven.org/maven2 • https://oss.sonatype.org/content/repositories • https://repo.typesafe.org <p>Third-party locations are subject to change.</p>	<p>During upgrades, Cloud Manager downloads the latest packages for third-party dependencies.</p>

Endpoints to manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP

Cloud Manager requires outbound internet access to contact the following endpoints when deploying and managing Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP:

Endpoints	Purpose
https://www.googleapis.com	Enables Cloud Manager to contact Google APIs for deploying and managing Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP.
https://api.services.cloud.netapp.com:443	API requests to NetApp Cloud Central.
https://cloud.support.netapp.com.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com	Provides access to software images, manifests, and templates.
https://repo.cloud.support.netapp.com	Used to download Cloud Manager dependencies.
http://repo.mysql.com/	Used to download MySQL.
https://cognito-idp.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	Enables Cloud Manager to access and download manifests, templates, and Cloud Volumes ONTAP upgrade images.
https://cognito-identity.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	
https://sts.amazonaws.com	
https://cloud-support-netapp-com-accelerated.s3.amazonaws.com	
https://cloudmanagerinfraprod.azurecr.io	Access to software images of container components for an infrastructure that's running Docker and provides a solution for service integrations with Cloud Manager.
https://kinesis.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	Enables NetApp to stream data from audit records.
https://cloudmanager.cloud.netapp.com	Communication with the Cloud Manager service, which includes Cloud Central accounts.

Endpoints	Purpose
https://netapp-cloud-account.auth0.com	Communication with NetApp Cloud Central for centralized user authentication.
https://mysupport.netapp.com	Communication with NetApp AutoSupport.
https://support.netapp.com/svcgw https://support.netapp.com/ServiceGW/entitlement	Communication with NetApp for system licensing and support registration.
https://eval.lic.netapp.com.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com https://cloud-support-netapp-com.s3.us-west-1.amazonaws.com	
https://ipa-signer.cloudmanager.netapp.com	Enables Cloud Manager to generate licenses (for example, a FlexCache license for Cloud Volumes ONTAP)
https://packages.cloud.google.com/yum https://github.com/NetApp/trident/releases/download/	Required to connect Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems with a Kubernetes cluster. The endpoints enable installation of NetApp Trident.
Various third-party locations, for example: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • https://repo1.maven.org/maven2 • https://oss.sonatype.org/content/repositories • https://repo.typesafe.org Third-party locations are subject to change.	During upgrades, Cloud Manager downloads the latest packages for third-party dependencies.

Endpoints accessed from your web browser

Users must access Cloud Manager from a web browser. The machine running the web browser must have connections to the following endpoints:

Endpoints	Purpose
The Cloud Manager host	<p>You must enter the host's IP address from a web browser to load the Cloud Manager console.</p> <p>Depending on your connectivity to your cloud provider, you can use the private IP or a public IP assigned to the host:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • A private IP works if you have a VPN and direct connect access to your virtual network • A public IP works in any networking scenario <p>In any case, you should secure network access by ensuring that security group rules allow access from only authorized IPs or subnets.</p>
https://auth0.com https://cdn.auth0.com https://netapp-cloud-account.auth0.com https://services.cloud.netapp.com	Your web browser connects to these endpoints for centralized user authentication through NetApp Cloud Central.
https://widget.intercom.io	For in-product chat that enables you to talk to NetApp cloud experts.

Endpoints to install Cloud Manager on a Linux host

The Cloud Manager installer must access the following URLs during the installation process:

- <http://dev.mysql.com/get/mysql-community-release-el7-5.noarch.rpm>
- <https://dl.fedoraproject.org/pub/epel/epel-release-latest-7.noarch.rpm>
- <https://s3.amazonaws.com/aws-cli/awscli-bundle.zip>

Ports and security groups

- If you deploy Cloud Manager from Cloud Central or from the marketplace images, refer to the following:
 - [Security group rules for Cloud Manager in AWS](#)
 - [Security group rules for Cloud Manager in Azure](#)
 - [Firewall rules for Cloud Manager in GCP](#)
- If you install Cloud Manager on an existing Linux host, see [Cloud Manager host requirements](#).

Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS

Set up your AWS networking so Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems can operate properly.

General AWS networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

The following requirements must be met in AWS.

Outbound internet access for Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes

Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes require outbound internet access to send messages to NetApp AutoSupport, which proactively monitors the health of your storage.

Routing and firewall policies must allow AWS HTTP/HTTPS traffic to the following endpoints so Cloud Volumes ONTAP can send AutoSupport messages:

- <https://support.netapp.com/aods/asupmessage>
- <https://support.netapp.com/asupprod/post/1.0/postAsup>

If you have a NAT instance, you must define an inbound security group rule that allows HTTPS traffic from the private subnet to the internet.

[Learn how to configure AutoSupport.](#)

Outbound internet access for the HA mediator

The HA mediator instance must have an outbound connection to the AWS EC2 service so it can assist with storage failover. To provide the connection, you can add a public IP address, specify a proxy server, or use a manual option.

The manual option can be a NAT gateway or an interface VPC endpoint from the target subnet to the AWS EC2 service. For details about VPC endpoints, refer to [AWS Documentation: Interface VPC Endpoints \(AWS PrivateLink\)](#).

Number of IP addresses

Cloud Manager allocates the following number of IP addresses to Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS:

- Single node: 6 IP addresses
- HA pairs in single AZs: 15 addresses
- HA pairs in multiple AZs: 15 or 16 IP addresses

Note that Cloud Manager creates an SVM management LIF on single node systems, but not on HA pairs in a single AZ. You can choose whether to create an SVM management LIF on HA pairs in multiple AZs.



A LIF is an IP address associated with a physical port. An SVM management LIF is required for management tools like SnapCenter.

Security groups

You do not need to create security groups because Cloud Manager does that for you. If you need to use your own, refer to [Security group rules](#).

Connection from Cloud Volumes ONTAP to AWS S3 for data tiering

If you want to use EBS as a performance tier and AWS S3 as a capacity tier, you must ensure that Cloud Volumes ONTAP has a connection to S3. The best way to provide that connection is by creating a VPC Endpoint to the S3 service. For instructions, see [AWS Documentation: Creating a Gateway Endpoint](#).

When you create the VPC Endpoint, be sure to select the region, VPC, and route table that corresponds to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance. You must also modify the security group to add an outbound HTTPS rule that enables traffic to the S3 endpoint. Otherwise, Cloud Volumes ONTAP cannot connect to the S3 service.

If you experience any issues, see [AWS Support Knowledge Center: Why can't I connect to an S3 bucket using a gateway VPC endpoint?](#)

Connections to ONTAP systems in other networks

To replicate data between a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in AWS and ONTAP systems in other networks, you must have a VPN connection between the AWS VPC and the other network—for example, an Azure VNet or your corporate network. For instructions, see [AWS Documentation: Setting Up an AWS VPN Connection](#).

DNS and Active Directory for CIFS

If you want to provision CIFS storage, you must set up DNS and Active Directory in AWS or extend your on-premises setup to AWS.

The DNS server must provide name resolution services for the Active Directory environment. You can configure DHCP option sets to use the default EC2 DNS server, which must not be the DNS server used by the Active Directory environment.

For instructions, refer to [AWS Documentation: Active Directory Domain Services on the AWS Cloud: Quick Start Reference Deployment](#).

AWS networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA in multiple AZs

Additional AWS networking requirements apply to Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configurations that use multiple Availability Zones (AZs). You should review these requirements before you launch an HA pair because you must enter the networking details in Cloud Manager.

To understand how HA pairs work, see [High-availability pairs](#).

Availability Zones

This HA deployment model uses multiple AZs to ensure high availability of your data. You should use a dedicated AZ for each Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance and the mediator instance, which provides a communication channel between the HA pair.

Floating IP addresses for NAS data and cluster/SVM management

HA configurations in multiple AZs use floating IP addresses that migrate between nodes if failures occur. They are not natively accessible from outside the VPC, unless you [set up an AWS transit gateway](#).

One floating IP address is for cluster management, one is for NFS/CIFS data on node 1, and one is for NFS/CIFS data on node 2. A fourth floating IP address for SVM management is optional.



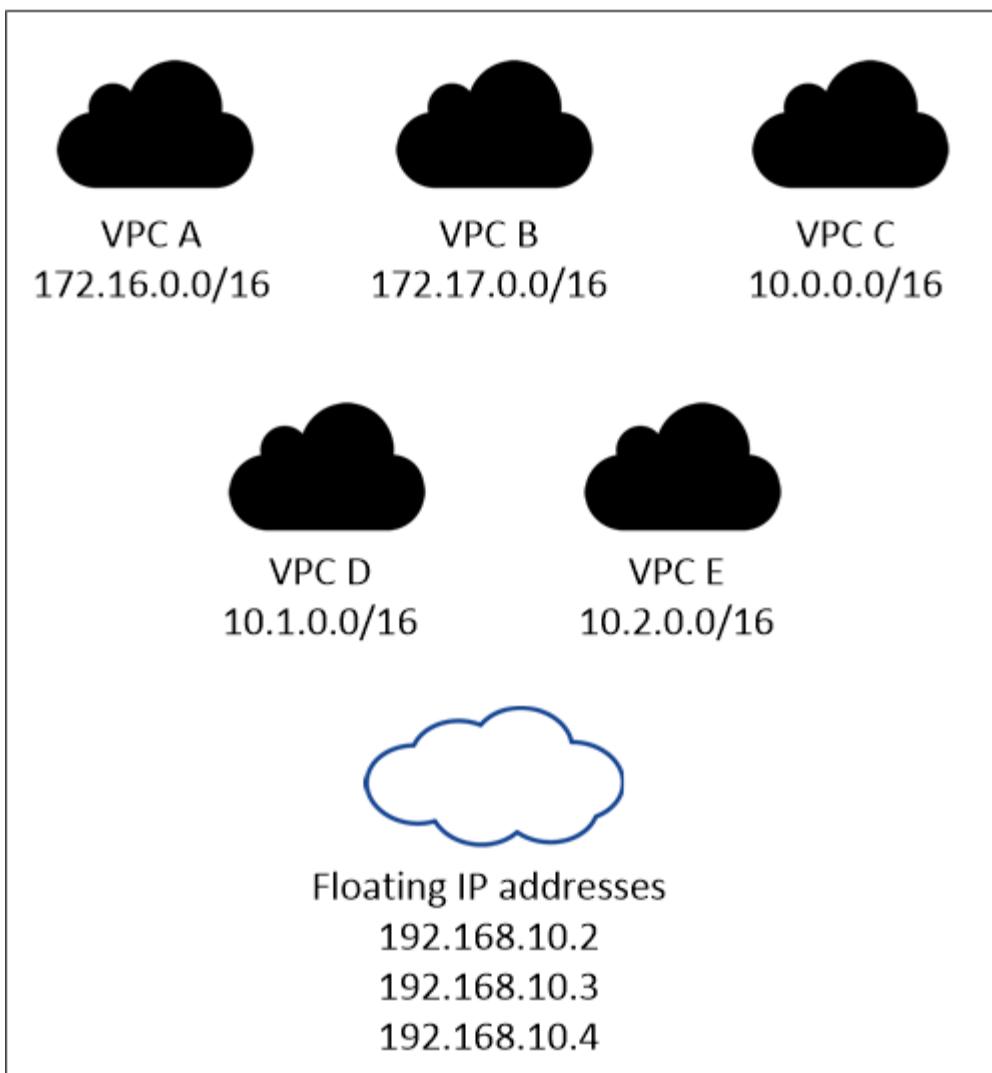
A floating IP address is required for the SVM management LIF if you use SnapDrive for Windows or SnapCenter with the HA pair. If you don't specify the IP address when you deploy the system, you can create the LIF later. For details, see [Setting up Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#).

You need to enter the floating IP addresses in Cloud Manager when you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA working environment. Cloud Manager allocates the IP addresses to the HA pair when it launches the system.

The floating IP addresses must be outside of the CIDR blocks for all VPCs in the AWS region in which you deploy the HA configuration. Think of the floating IP addresses as a logical subnet that's outside of the VPCs in your region.

The following example shows the relationship between floating IP addresses and the VPCs in an AWS region. While the floating IP addresses are outside the CIDR blocks for all VPCs, they're routable to subnets through route tables.

AWS region



Cloud Manager automatically creates static IP addresses for iSCSI access and for NAS access from clients outside the VPC. You don't need to meet any requirements for these types of IP addresses.

Transit gateway to enable floating IP access from outside the VPC

[Set up an AWS transit gateway](#) to enable access to an HA pair's floating IP addresses from outside the VPC where the HA pair resides.

Route tables

After you specify the floating IP addresses in Cloud Manager, you need to select the route tables that should include routes to the floating IP addresses. This enables client access to the HA pair.

If you have just one route table for the subnets in your VPC (the main route table), then Cloud Manager automatically adds the floating IP addresses to that route table. If you have more than one route table, it's very important to select the correct route tables when launching the HA pair. Otherwise, some clients might not have access to Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

For example, you might have two subnets that are associated with different route tables. If you select route table A, but not route table B, then clients in the subnet associated with route table A can access the HA pair, but clients in the subnet associated with route table B can't.

For more information about route tables, refer to [AWS Documentation: Route Tables](#).

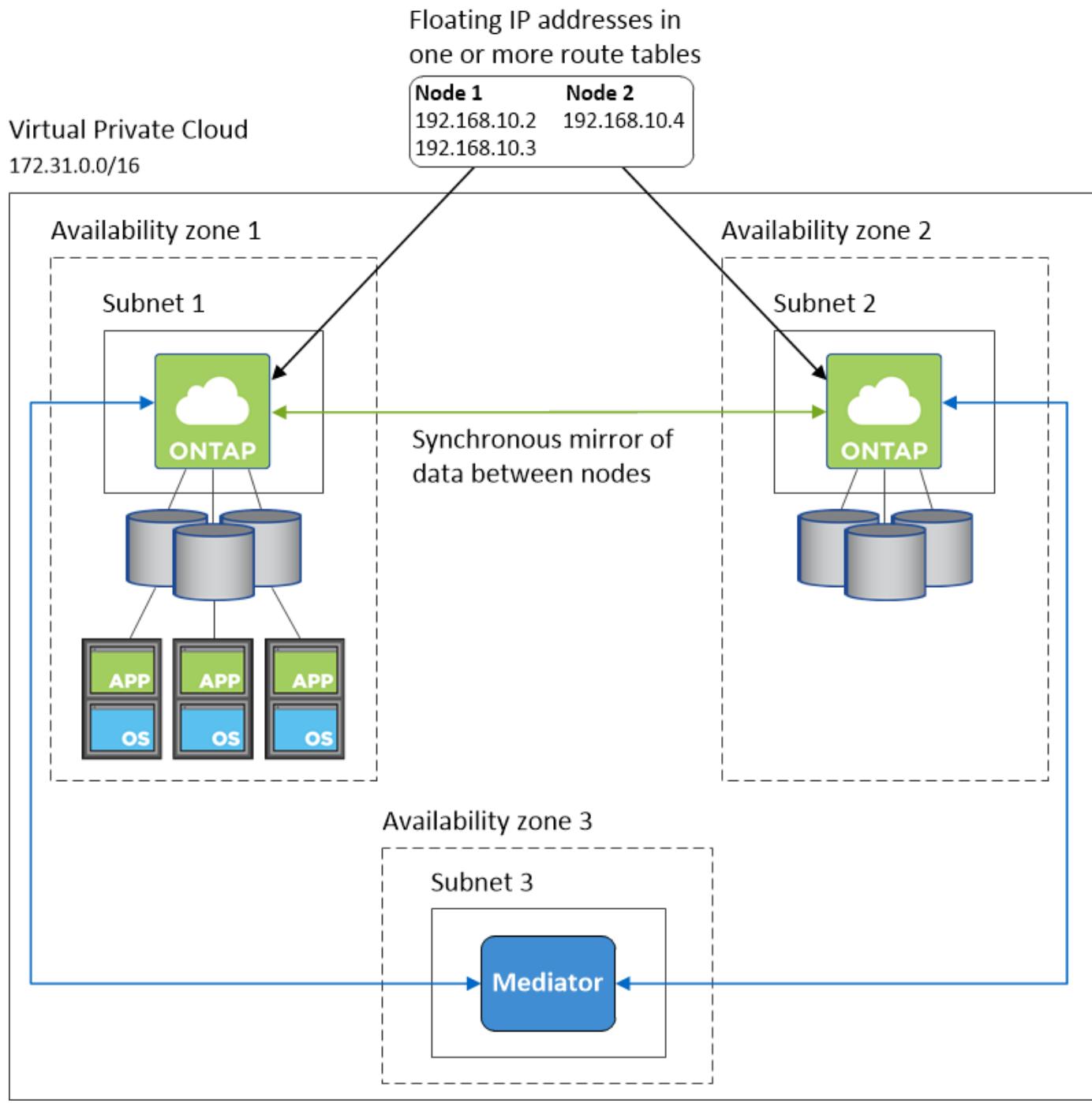
Connection to NetApp management tools

To use NetApp management tools with HA configurations that are in multiple AZs, you have two connection options:

1. Deploy the NetApp management tools in a different VPC and [set up an AWS transit gateway](#). The gateway enables access to the floating IP address for the cluster management interface from outside the VPC.
2. Deploy the NetApp management tools in the same VPC with a similar routing configuration as NAS clients.

Example configuration

The following image shows an optimal HA configuration in AWS operating as an active-passive configuration:



Sample VPC configurations

To better understand how you can deploy Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, you should review the most common VPC configurations.

- A VPC with public and private subnets and a NAT device
- A VPC with a private subnet and a VPN connection to your network

A VPC with public and private subnets and a NAT device

This VPC configuration includes public and private subnets, an internet gateway that connects the VPC

to the internet, and a NAT gateway or NAT instance in the public subnet that enables outbound internet traffic from the private subnet. In this configuration, you can run Cloud Manager in a public subnet or private subnet, but the public subnet is recommended because it allows access from hosts outside the VPC. You can then launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances in the private subnet.

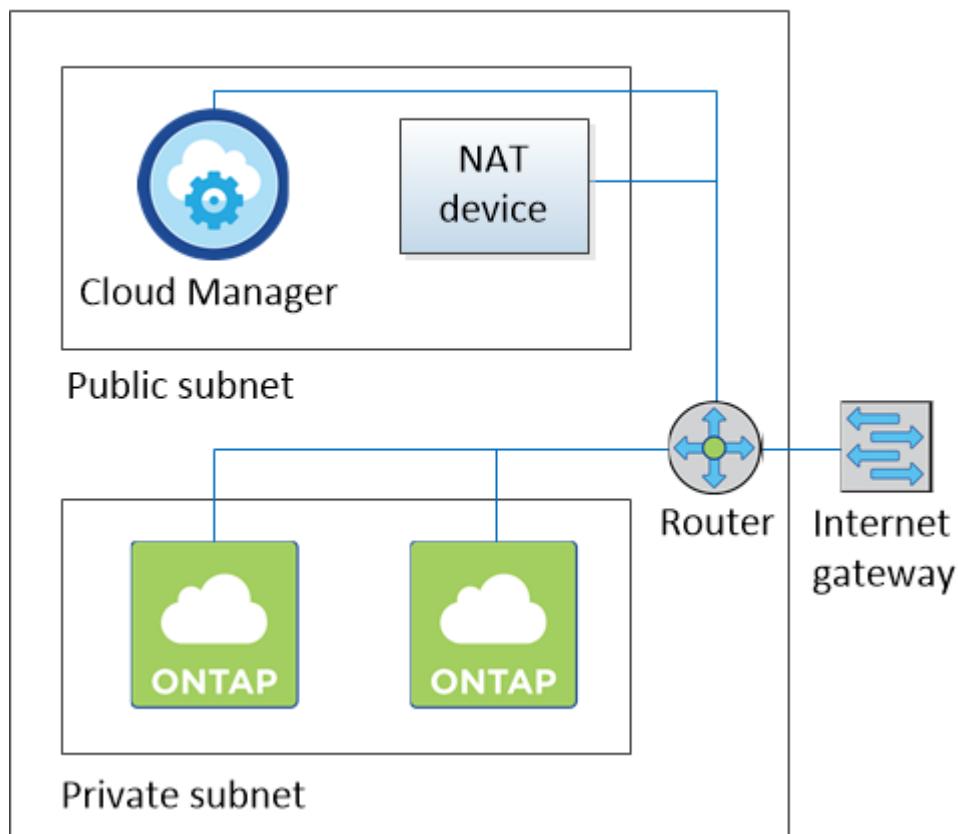


Instead of a NAT device, you can use an HTTP proxy to provide internet connectivity.

For more details about this scenario, refer to [AWS Documentation: Scenario 2: VPC with Public and Private Subnets \(NAT\)](#).

The following graphic shows Cloud Manager running in a public subnet and single node systems running in a private subnet:

Virtual Private Cloud



A VPC with a private subnet and a VPN connection to your network

This VPC configuration is a hybrid cloud configuration in which Cloud Volumes ONTAP becomes an extension of your private environment. The configuration includes a private subnet and a virtual private gateway with a VPN connection to your network. Routing across the VPN tunnel allows EC2 instances to access the internet through your network and firewalls. You can run Cloud Manager in the private subnet or in your data center. You would then launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in the private subnet.



You can also use a proxy server in this configuration to allow internet access. The proxy server can be in your data center or in AWS.

If you want to replicate data between FAS systems in your data center and Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in AWS, you should use a VPN connection so that the link is secure.

For more details about this scenario, refer to [AWS Documentation: Scenario 4: VPC with a Private Subnet Only and AWS Managed VPN Access](#).

The following graphic shows Cloud Manager running in your data center and single node systems running in a private subnet:

Setting up an AWS transit gateway for HA pairs in multiple AZs

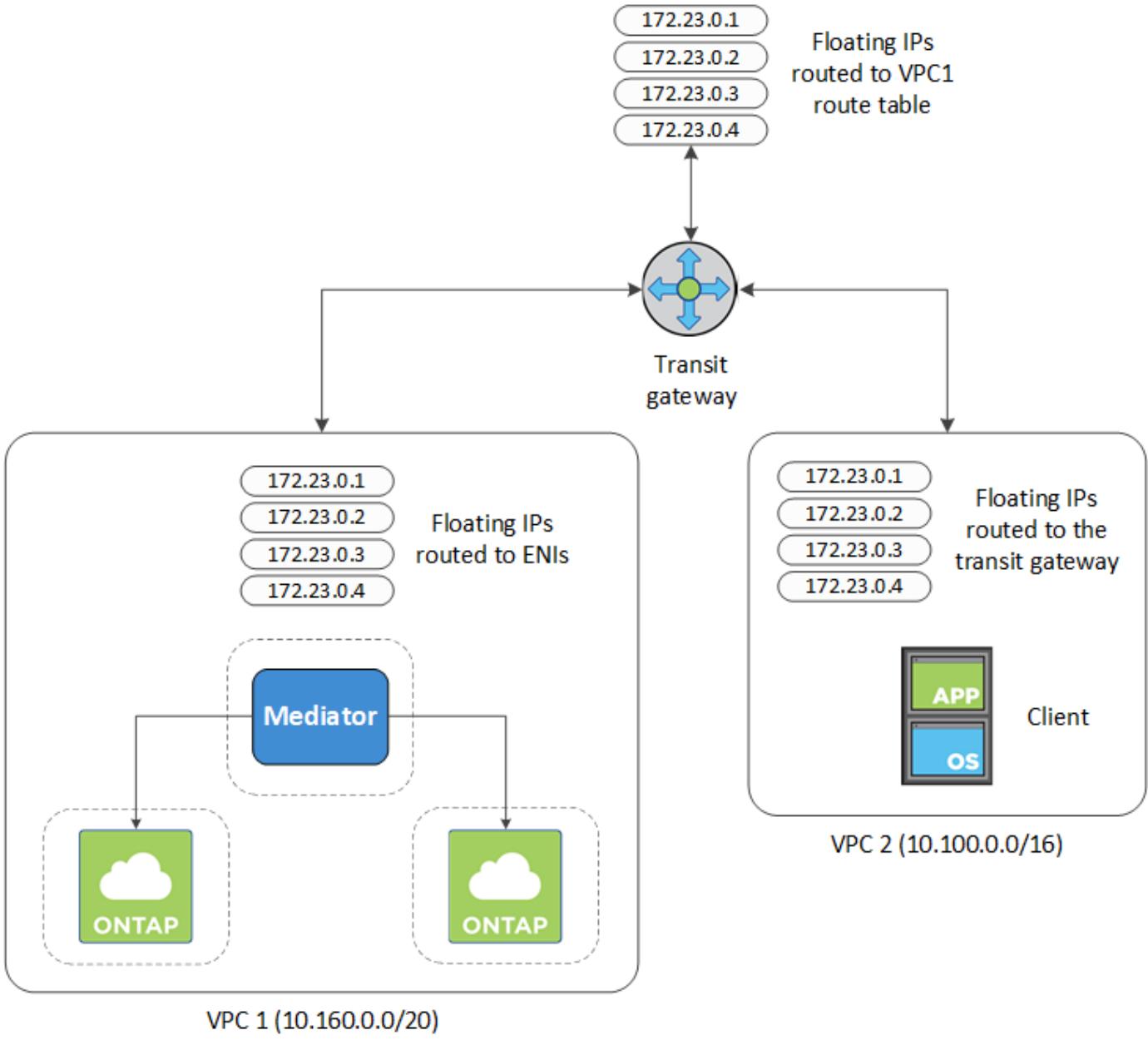
Set up an AWS transit gateway to enable access to an HA pair's [floating IP addresses](#) from outside the VPC where the HA pair resides.

When a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configuration is spread across multiple AWS Availability Zones, floating IP addresses are required for NAS data access from within the VPC. These floating IP addresses can migrate between nodes when failures occur, but they are not natively accessible from outside the VPC. Separate private IP addresses provide data access from outside the VPC, but they don't provide automatic failover.

Floating IP addresses are also required for the cluster management interface and the optional SVM management LIF.

If you set up an AWS transit gateway, you enable access to the floating IP addresses from outside the VPC where the HA pair resides. That means NAS clients and NetApp management tools outside the VPC can access the floating IPs.

Here's an example that shows two VPCs connected by a transit gateway. An HA system resides in one VPC, while a client resides in the other. You could then mount a NAS volume on the client using the floating IP address.



The following steps illustrate how to set up a similar configuration.

Steps

1. Create a transit gateway and attach the VPCs to the gateway.
2. Create routes in the transit gateway's route table by specifying the HA pair's floating IP addresses.

You can find the floating IP addresses on the Working Environment Information page in Cloud Manager. Here's an example:

NFS & CIFS access from within the VPC using Floating IP

Auto failover

Cluster Management : 172.23.0.1

Data (nfs,cifs) : Node 1: 172.23.0.2 | Node 2: 172.23.0.3

Access

SVM Management : 172.23.0.4

The following sample image shows the route table for the transit gateway. It includes routes to the CIDR blocks of the two VPCs and four floating IP addresses used by Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Transit Gateway Route Table: tgw-rtb-0ea8ee291c7aeddd3					
Details	Associations	Propagations	Routes	Tags	⋮
The table below will return a maximum of 1000 routes. Narrow the filter or use export routes to view more routes.					
Create route	Replace route	Delete route			
<input type="text"/> Filter by attributes or search by keyword					
CIDR	Attachment		Resource type	Route type	Route state
10.100.0.0/16	tgw-attach-05e77bd34e2ff91f8 vpc-0b2bc30e0dc8e0db1		VPC2	propagated	active
10.160.0.0/20	tgw-attach-00eba3eac3250d7db vpc-673ae603		VPC1	propagated	active
172.23.0.1/32	tgw-attach-00eba3eac3250d7db vpc-673ae603		VPC	static	active
172.23.0.2/32	tgw-attach-00eba3eac3250d7db vpc-673ae603		VPC	static	active
172.23.0.3/32	tgw-attach-00eba3eac3250d7db vpc-673ae603		VPC	static	active
172.23.0.4/32	tgw-attach-00eba3eac3250d7db vpc-673ae603		VPC	static	active

3. Modify the route table of VPCs that need to access the floating IP addresses.

- Add route entries to the floating IP addresses.
- Add a route entry to the CIDR block of the VPC where the HA pair resides.

The following sample image shows the route table for VPC 2, which includes routes to VPC 1 and the floating IP addresses.

Route Table: rtb-0569a1bd740ed033f				
Summary	Routes	Subnet Associations	Route Propagation	Tags
Edit routes				
View All routes ▾				
Destination	Target	Status	Propagated	
10.100.0.0/16	local	active	No	
0.0.0.0/0	igw-07250bd01781e67df	active	No	
10.160.0.0/20	taw-015b7c249661ac279	VPC1	No	
172.23.0.1/32	tgw-015b7c249661ac279	active	No	
172.23.0.2/32	tgw-015b7c249661ac279	active	No	
172.23.0.3/32	tgw-015b7c249661ac279	active	No	
172.23.0.4/32	tgw-015b7c249661ac279	active	No	

4. Modify the route table for the HA pair's VPC by adding a route to the VPC that needs access to the floating IP addresses.

This step is important because it completes the routing between the VPCs.

The following sample image shows the route table for VPC 1. It includes a route to the floating IP addresses and to VPC 2, which is where a client resides. Cloud Manager automatically added the floating IPs to the route table when it deployed the HA pair.

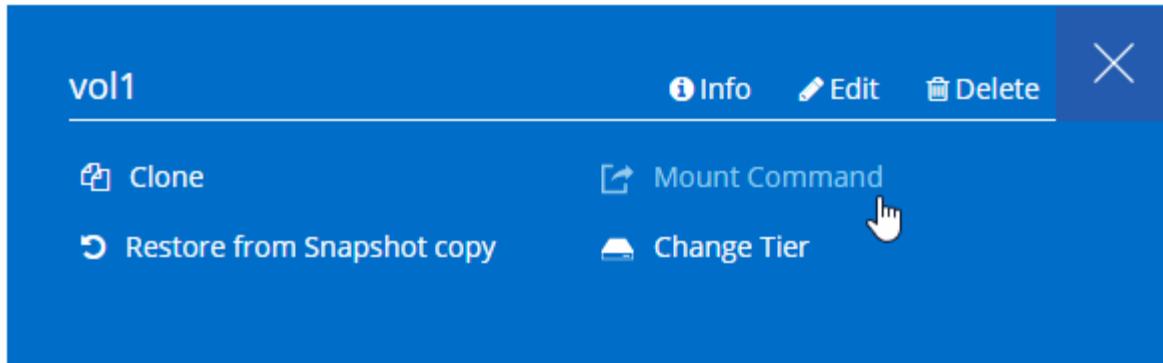
Route Table: rtb-0569a1bd740ed033f				
Summary	Routes	Subnet Associations	Route Propagation	Tags
Edit routes				
View All routes ▾				
Destination	Target	Status	Propagated	
10.160.0.0/20	local	active		
pl-68a54001 (com.amazonaws.us-west-2.s3, 54.231.160.0/19, 52.218.128.0/17, 52.92.32.0/22)	vpc-e-cb51a0a2	active		
0.0.0.0/0	igw-b2182dd7	active		
10.60.29.0/25	pcx-589c3331	active		
10.100.0.0/16	tgw-015b7c249661ac279	VPC2		
10.129.0.0/20	pcx-ff7e1396	active		
172.23.0.1/32	eni-0854d4715559c3cdb	Floating IP Addresses		
172.23.0.2/32	eni-0854d4715559c3cdb	acti		
172.23.0.3/32	eni-076681216c3108ed	IP		
172.23.0.4/32	eni-0854d4715559c3cdb	Addresses		

5. Mount volumes to clients using the floating IP address.

You can find the correct IP address in Cloud Manager by selecting a volume and clicking **Mount Command**.

Volumes

2 Volumes | 0.22 TB Allocated | < 0.01 TB Used (0 TB in S3)



Related links

- [High-availability pairs in AWS](#)
- [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)

Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure

Set up your Azure networking so Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems can operate properly.

Outbound internet access for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Cloud Volumes ONTAP requires outbound internet access to send messages to NetApp AutoSupport, which proactively monitors the health of your storage.

Routing and firewall policies must allow HTTP/HTTPS traffic to the following endpoints so Cloud Volumes ONTAP can send AutoSupport messages:

- <https://support.netapp.com/aods/asupmessage>
- <https://support.netapp.com/asupprod/post/1.0/postAsup>

[Learn how to configure AutoSupport.](#)

Security groups

You do not need to create security groups because Cloud Manager does that for you. If you need to use your own, refer to [Security group rules](#).

Number of IP addresses

Cloud Manager allocates the following number of IP addresses to Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure:

- Single node: 5 IP addresses
- HA pair: 16 IP addresses

Note that Cloud Manager creates an SVM management LIF on HA pairs, but not on single node systems in Azure.



A LIF is an IP address associated with a physical port. An SVM management LIF is required for management tools like SnapCenter.

Connection from Cloud Volumes ONTAP to Azure Blob storage for data tiering

If you want to tier cold data to Azure Blob storage, you don't need to set up a connection between the performance tier and the capacity tier as long as Cloud Manager has the required permissions. Cloud Manager enables a VNet service endpoint for you if the Cloud Manager policy has these permissions:

```
"Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks/subnets/write",
"Microsoft.Network/routeTables/join/action",
```

These permissions are included in the latest [Cloud Manager policy](#).

For details about setting up data tiering, see [Tiering cold data to low-cost object storage](#).

Connections to ONTAP systems in other networks

To replicate data between a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in Azure and ONTAP systems in other networks, you must have a VPN connection between the Azure VNet and the other network—for example, an AWS VPC or your corporate network.

For instructions, refer to [Microsoft Azure Documentation: Create a Site-to-Site connection in the Azure portal](#).

Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP

Set up your Google Cloud Platform networking so Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems can operate properly.

Shared VPC

Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP are supported in a Google Cloud Platform shared VPC.

A shared VPC enables you to configure and centrally manage virtual networks across multiple projects. You can set up shared VPC networks in the *host project* and deploy the Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP virtual machine instances in a *service project*. [Google Cloud documentation: Shared VPC overview](#).

The only requirement is to provide the following permissions to the Cloud Manager service account

in the shared VPC host project:

```
compute.firewalls.*  
compute.networks.*  
compute.subnetworks.*
```

Cloud Manager needs these permissions to query the firewalls, VPC, and subnets in the host project.

Outbound internet access for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Cloud Volumes ONTAP requires outbound internet access to send messages to NetApp AutoSupport, which proactively monitors the health of your storage.

Routing and firewall policies must allow HTTP/HTTPS traffic to the following endpoints so Cloud Volumes ONTAP can send AutoSupport messages:

- <https://support.netapp.com/aods/asupmessage>
- <https://support.netapp.com/asupprod/post/1.0/postAsup>

[Learn how to configure AutoSupport.](#)

Number of IP addresses

Cloud Manager allocates 5 IP addresses to Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP.

Note that Cloud Manager doesn't create an SVM management LIF for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP.



A LIF is an IP address associated with a physical port. An SVM management LIF is required for management tools like SnapCenter.

Firewall rules

You don't need to create firewall rules because Cloud Manager does that for you. If you need to use your own, refer to [GCP firewall rules](#).

Connection from Cloud Volumes ONTAP to Google Cloud Storage for data tiering

If you want to tier cold data to a Google Cloud Storage bucket, the subnet in which Cloud Volumes ONTAP resides must be configured for Private Google Access. For instructions, refer to [Google Cloud documentation: Configuring Private Google Access](#).

For additional steps required to set up data tiering in Cloud Manager, see [Tiering cold data to low-cost object storage](#).

Connections to ONTAP systems in other networks

To replicate data between a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in GCP and ONTAP systems in other networks, you must have a VPN connection between the VPC and the other network—for example, your corporate network.

For instructions, refer to [Google Cloud documentation: Cloud VPN overview](#).

Additional deployment options

Cloud Manager host requirements

If you install Cloud Manager on your own host, then you must verify support for your configuration, which includes operating system requirements, port requirements, and so on.



You can install Cloud Manager on your own host in GCP, but not in your on-premises network. Cloud Manager must be installed in GCP in order to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP.

A dedicated host is required

Cloud Manager is not supported on a host that is shared with other applications. The host must be a dedicated host.

Supported AWS EC2 instance types

An instance type with at least 4 vCPUs and 7 GB of RAM. We recommend t3.xlarge.

Supported Azure VM sizes

A VM with at least 4 vCPUs and 7 GB of RAM. We recommend DS3 v2.

Supported GCP machine types

A machine type with at least 4 vCPUs and 7 GB of RAM.

Supported operating systems

- CentOS 7.2
- CentOS 7.3
- CentOS 7.4
- CentOS 7.5
- CentOS 7.6
- CentOS 7.7
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.2
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.3
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.4
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.5
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.6
- Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.7

The Red Hat Enterprise Linux system must be registered with Red Hat Subscription Management. If it is not registered, the system cannot access repositories to update required 3rd party software during Cloud Manager installation.

Cloud Manager is supported on English-language versions of these operating systems.

Hypervisor

A bare metal or hosted hypervisor that is certified to run CentOS or Red Hat Enterprise Linux

[Red Hat Solution: Which hypervisors are certified to run Red Hat Enterprise Linux?](#)

CPU

2.27 GHz or higher with two cores

RAM

4 GB

Free disk space in /opt

100 GB

Outbound internet access

Outbound internet access is required when installing Cloud Manager and when using Cloud Manager to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP. For a list of endpoints, see [Networking requirements for Cloud Manager](#).

Ports

The following ports must be available:

- 80 for HTTP access
- 443 for HTTPS access
- 3306 for the Cloud Manager database
- 8080 for the Cloud Manager API proxy

If other services are using these ports, Cloud Manager installation fails.



There is a potential conflict with port 3306. If another instance of MySQL is running on the host, it uses port 3306 by default. You must change the port that the existing MySQL instance uses.

You can change the default HTTP and HTTPS ports when you install Cloud Manager. You cannot change the default port for the MySQL database. If you change the HTTP and HTTPS ports, you must ensure that users can access the Cloud Manager web console from a remote host:

- Modify the security group to allow inbound connections through the ports.
- Specify the port when you enter the URL to the Cloud Manager web console.

Installing Cloud Manager on an existing Linux host

The most common way to deploy Cloud Manager is from Cloud Central or from a cloud provider's marketplace. But you have the option to download and install the Cloud Manager software on an existing Linux host in your network or in the cloud.



You can install Cloud Manager on your own host in GCP, but not in your on-premises network. Cloud Manager must be installed in GCP in order to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP.

Before you begin

- A Red Hat Enterprise Linux system must be registered with Red Hat Subscription Management. If it is not registered, the system cannot access repositories to update required 3rd party software during Cloud Manager installation.
- The Cloud Manager installer accesses several URLs during the installation process. You must ensure that outbound internet access is allowed to those endpoints. Refer to [Networking requirements for Cloud Manager](#).

About this task

- Root privileges are not required to install Cloud Manager.
- Cloud Manager installs the AWS command line tools (awscli) to enable recovery procedures from NetApp support.

If you receive a message that installing the awscli failed, you can safely ignore the message. Cloud Manager can operate successfully without the tools.

- The installer that is available on the NetApp Support Site might be an earlier version. After installation, Cloud Manager automatically updates itself if a new version is available.

Steps

1. Review networking requirements:
 - [Networking requirements for Cloud Manager](#)
 - [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)
 - [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure](#)
 - [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP](#)
2. Review [Cloud Manager host requirements](#).
3. Download the software from the [NetApp Support Site](#), and then copy it to the Linux host.

For help with connecting and copying the file to an EC2 instance in AWS, see [AWS Documentation: Connecting to Your Linux Instance Using SSH](#).

4. Assign permissions to execute the script.

Example

```
chmod +x OnCommandCloudManager-V3.8.4.sh
```

5. Run the installation script:

```
./OnCommandCloudManager-V3.8.4.sh [silent] [proxy=ipaddress] [proxyport=port]  
[proxyuser=user_name] [proxypwd=password]
```

silent runs the installation without prompting you for information.

proxy is required if the Cloud Manager host is behind a proxy server.

proxyport is the port for the proxy server.

proxyuser is the user name for the proxy server, if basic authentication is required.

proxypwd is the password for the user name that you specified.

6. Unless you specified the silent parameter, type Y to continue the script, and then enter the HTTP and HTTPS ports when prompted.

If you change the HTTP and HTTPS ports, you must ensure that users can access the Cloud Manager web console from a remote host:

- Modify the security group to allow inbound connections through the ports.
- Specify the port when you enter the URL to the Cloud Manager web console.

Cloud Manager is now installed. At the end of the installation, the Cloud Manager service (occm) restarts twice if you specified a proxy server.

7. Open a web browser and enter the following URL:

<https://ipaddress:port>

ipaddress can be localhost, a private IP address, or a public IP address, depending on the configuration of the Cloud Manager host. For example, if Cloud Manager is in the public cloud without a public IP address, you must enter a private IP address from a host that has a connection to the Cloud Manager host.

port is required if you changed the default HTTP (80) or HTTPS (443) ports. For example, if the HTTPS port was changed to 8443, you would enter <https://ipaddress:8443>

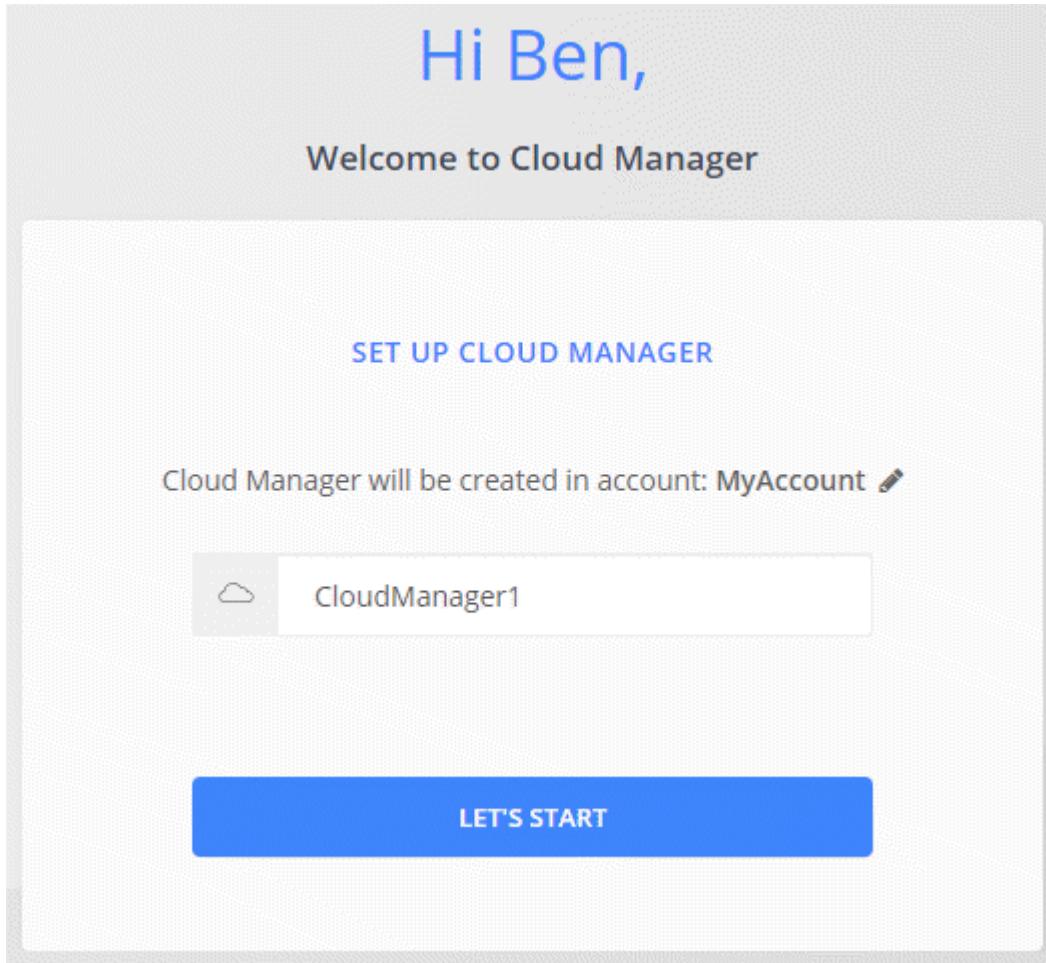
8. Sign up at NetApp Cloud Central or log in.

9. After you log in, set up Cloud Manager:

- a. Specify the Cloud Central account to associate with this Cloud Manager system.

[Learn about Cloud Central accounts.](#)

- b. Enter a name for the system.



After you finish

Set up permissions so Cloud Manager can deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in your cloud provider:

- AWS: [Set up an AWS account and then add it to Cloud Manager.](#)
- Azure: [Set up an Azure account and then add it to Cloud Manager.](#)
- GCP: Set up a service account that has the permissions that Cloud Manager needs to create and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in projects.
 1. [Create a role in GCP that includes the permissions defined in the Cloud Manager policy for GCP.](#)
 2. [Create a GCP service account and apply the custom role that you just created.](#)
 3. [Associate this service account with the Cloud Manager VM.](#)
 4. If you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in other projects, [grant access by adding the service account with the Cloud Manager role to that project](#). You'll need to repeat this step for each project.

Launching Cloud Manager from the AWS Marketplace

It's best to launch Cloud Manager in AWS using [NetApp Cloud Central](#), but you can launch it from the AWS Marketplace, if needed.



If you launch Cloud Manager from the AWS Marketplace, Cloud Manager is still integrated with NetApp Cloud Central. [Learn more about the integration.](#)

About this task

The following steps describe how to launch the instance from the EC2 Console because the console enables you to attach an IAM role to the Cloud Manager instance. This is not possible using the **Launch from Website** action.

Steps

1. Create an IAM policy and role for the EC2 instance:
 - a. Download the Cloud Manager IAM policy from the following location:

[NetApp Cloud Manager: AWS, Azure, and GCP Policies](#)
 - b. From the IAM console, create your own policy by copying and pasting the text from the Cloud Manager IAM policy.
 - c. Create an IAM role with the role type Amazon EC2 and attach the policy that you created in the previous step to the role.
2. Now go to the [Cloud Manager page on the AWS Marketplace](#) to deploy Cloud Manager from an AMI.
3. On the Marketplace page, click **Continue to Subscribe** and then click **Continue to Configuration**.
4. Change any of the default options and click **Continue to Launch**.
5. Under **Choose Action**, select **Launch through EC2** and then click **Launch**.
6. Follow the prompts to configure and deploy the instance:
 - **Choose Instance Type:** Depending on region availability, choose one of the supported instance types (t3.xlarge is recommended).

[Review the list of supported instance types.](#)
 - **Configure Instance:** Select a VPC and subnet, the IAM role that you created in step 1, and other configuration options that meet your requirements.

Number of instances Launch into Auto Scaling Group [\(i\)](#)

Purchasing option Request Spot instances

Network [\(i\)](#) [C](#) Create new VPC

Subnet [\(i\)](#) [Create new subnet](#)
251 IP Addresses available

Auto-assign Public IP [\(i\)](#)

Placement group Add instance to placement group

Capacity Reservation [\(i\)](#) [C](#) Create new Capacity Reservation

IAM role [\(i\)](#) [C](#) Create new IAM role

- **Add Storage:** Keep the default storage options.
- **Add Tags:** Enter tags for the instance, if desired.
- **Configure Security Group:** Specify the required connection methods for the Cloud Manager instance: SSH, HTTP, and HTTPS.
- **Review:** Review your selections and click **Launch**.

AWS launches the software with the specified settings. The Cloud Manager instance and software should be running in approximately five minutes.

7. Open a web browser from a host that has a connection to the Cloud Manager virtual machine and enter the following URL:

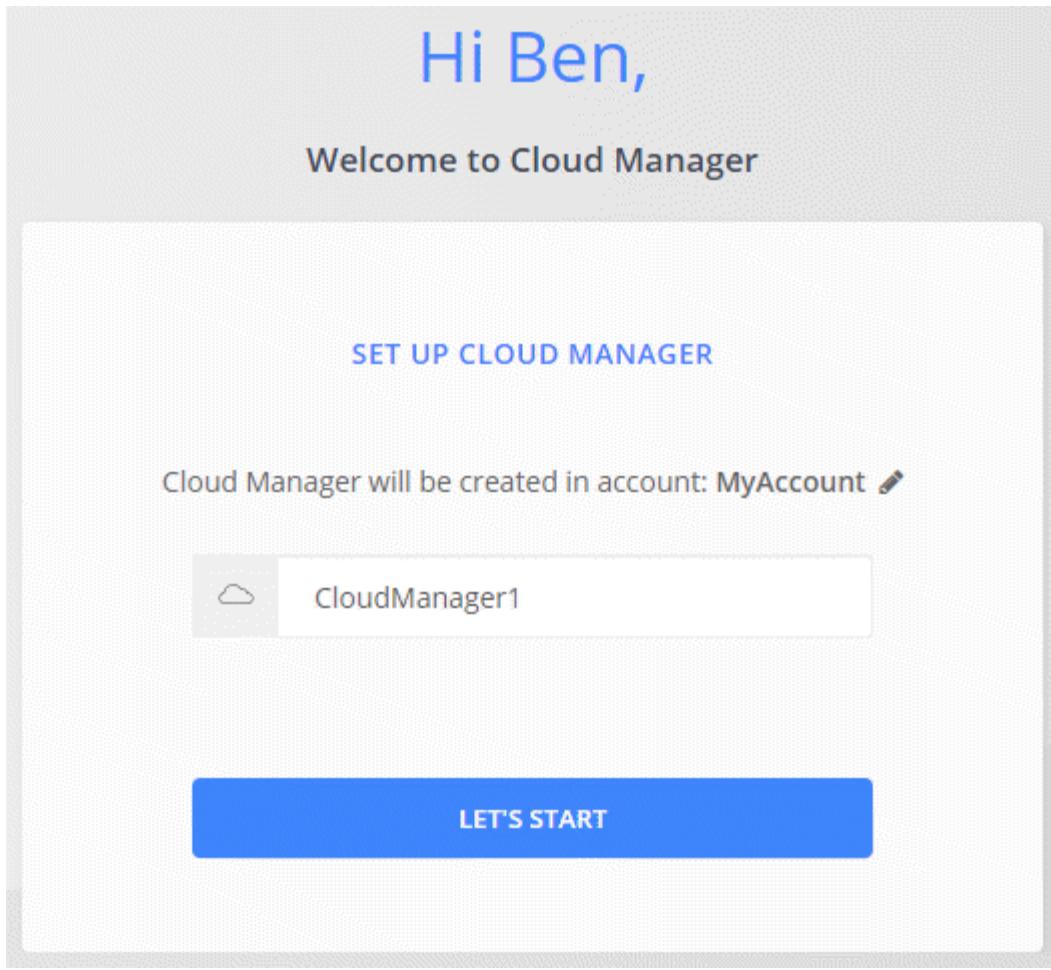
<http://ipaddress:80>

8. After you log in, set up Cloud Manager:

- a. Specify the Cloud Central account to associate with this Cloud Manager system.

[Learn about Cloud Central accounts.](#)

- b. Enter a name for the system.



Result

Cloud Manager is now installed and set up.

Deploying Cloud Manager from the Azure Marketplace

It is best to deploy Cloud Manager in Azure using [NetApp Cloud Central](#), but you can deploy it from the Azure Marketplace, if needed.

Separate instructions are available to deploy Cloud Manager in [Azure US Government regions](#) and in [Azure Germany regions](#).



If you deploy Cloud Manager from the Azure Marketplace, Cloud Manager is still integrated with NetApp Cloud Central. [Learn more about the integration](#).

Deploying Cloud Manager in Azure

You need to install and set up Cloud Manager so you can use it to launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure.

Steps

1. [Go to the Azure Marketplace page for Cloud Manager.](#)
2. Click **Get it now** and then click **Continue**.
3. From the Azure portal, click **Create** and follow the steps to configure the virtual machine.

Note the following as you configure the VM:

- Cloud Manager can perform optimally with either HDD or SSD disks.
- Choose a VM size that has at least 4 vCPUs and 7 GB of RAM. We recommend DS3 v2.
- For the network security group, Cloud Manager requires inbound connections using SSH, HTTP, and HTTPS.

[Learn more about security group rules for Cloud Manager.](#)

- Under **Management**, enable **System assigned managed identity** for Cloud Manager by selecting **On**.

This setting is important because a managed identity allows the Cloud Manager virtual machine to identify itself to Azure Active Directory without providing any credentials. [Learn more about managed identities for Azure resources.](#)

4. On the **Review + create** page, review your selections and click **Create** to start the deployment.

Azure deploys the virtual machine with the specified settings. The virtual machine and Cloud Manager software should be running in approximately five minutes.

5. Open a web browser from a host that has a connection to the Cloud Manager virtual machine and enter the following URL:

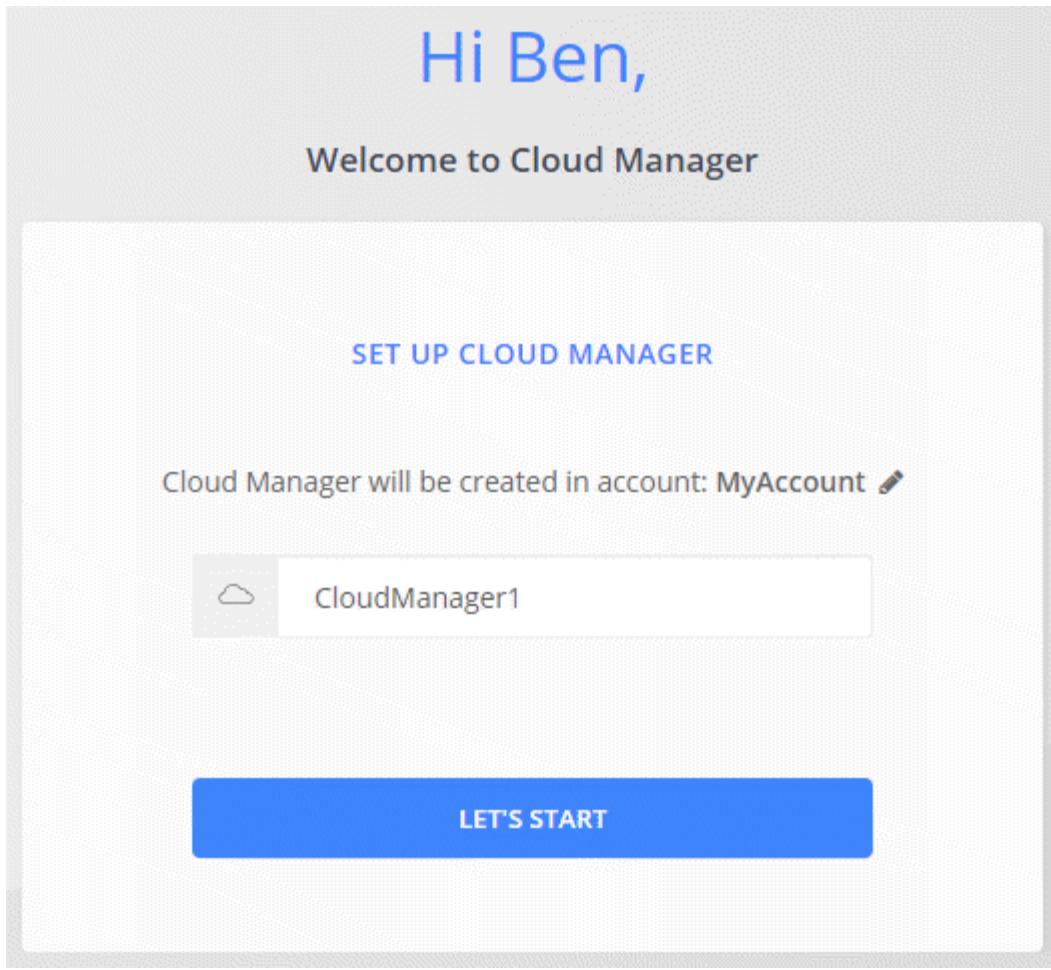
`http://ipaddress:80`

6. After you log in, set up Cloud Manager:

- a. Specify the Cloud Central account to associate with this Cloud Manager system.

[Learn about Cloud Central accounts.](#)

- b. Enter a name for the system.



Result

Cloud Manager is now installed and set up. You must grant Azure permissions before users can deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure.

Granting Azure permissions to Cloud Manager

When you deployed Cloud Manager in Azure, you should have enabled a [system-assigned managed identity](#). You must now grant the required Azure permissions by creating a custom role and then by assigning the role to the Cloud Manager virtual machine for one or more subscriptions.

Steps

1. Create a custom role using the Cloud Manager policy:
 - a. Download the [Cloud Manager Azure policy](#).
 - b. Modify the JSON file by adding Azure subscription IDs to the assignable scope.

You should add the ID for each Azure subscription from which users will create Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

Example

```
"AssignableScopes": [  
    "/subscriptions/d333af45-0d07-4154-943d-c25fbzzzzzz",  
    "/subscriptions/54b91999-b3e6-4599-908e-416e0zzzzzz",  
    "/subscriptions/398e471c-3b42-4ae7-9b59-ce5bbzzzzzz"
```

- c. Use the JSON file to create a custom role in Azure.

The following example shows how to create a custom role using the Azure CLI 2.0:

```
az role definition create --role-definition C:\Policy_for_cloud_Manager_Azure_3.8.5.json
```

You should now have a custom role called OnCommand Cloud Manager Operator that you can assign to the Cloud Manager virtual machine.

2. Assign the role to the Cloud Manager virtual machine for one or more subscriptions:
 - a. Open the **Subscriptions** service and then select the subscription in which you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.
 - b. Click **Access control (IAM)**.
 - c. Click **Add > Add role assignment** and then add the permissions:
 - Select the **OnCommand Cloud Manager Operator** role.
 OnCommand Cloud Manager Operator is the default name provided in the [Cloud Manager policy](#). If you chose a different name for the role, then select that name instead.
 - Assign access to a **Virtual Machine**.
 - Select the subscription in which the Cloud Manager virtual machine was created.
 - Select the Cloud Manager virtual machine.
 - Click **Save**.
 - d. If you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP from additional subscriptions, switch to that subscription and then repeat these steps.

Result

Cloud Manager now has the permissions that it needs to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure.

Deploying Cloud Manager in an Azure US Government region

To get Cloud Manager up and running in a US Government region, first deploy Cloud Manager from the Azure Government Marketplace. Then provide the permissions that Cloud Manager needs to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

For a list of supported Azure US Government regions, see [Cloud Volumes Global Regions](#).

Deploying Cloud Manager from the Azure US Government Marketplace

Cloud Manager is available as an image in the Azure US Government Marketplace.

Steps

1. Ensure that the Azure Government Marketplace is enabled in your subscription:
 - a. Log into the portal as an Enterprise Administrator.
 - b. Navigate to **Manage**.
 - c. Under **Enrollment Details**, click the pencil icon next to **Azure Marketplace**.
 - d. Select **Enabled**.
 - e. Click **Save**.

[Microsoft Azure Documentation: Azure Government Marketplace](#)

2. Search for OnCommand Cloud Manager in the Azure US Government portal.
3. Click **Create** and follow the steps to configure the virtual machine.

Note the following as you configure the virtual machine:

- Cloud Manager can perform optimally with either HDD or SSD disks.
- You should choose a VM size that has at least 4 vCPUs and 7 GB of RAM. We recommend DS3 v2.
- For the network security group, it is best to choose **Advanced**.

The **Advanced** option creates a new security group that includes the required inbound rules for Cloud Manager. If you choose Basic, refer to [Security group rules](#) for the list of required rules.

4. On the summary page, review your selections and click **Create** to start the deployment.

Azure deploys the virtual machine with the specified settings. The virtual machine and Cloud Manager software should be running in approximately five minutes.

5. Open a web browser from a host that has a connection to the Cloud Manager virtual machine and enter the following URL:

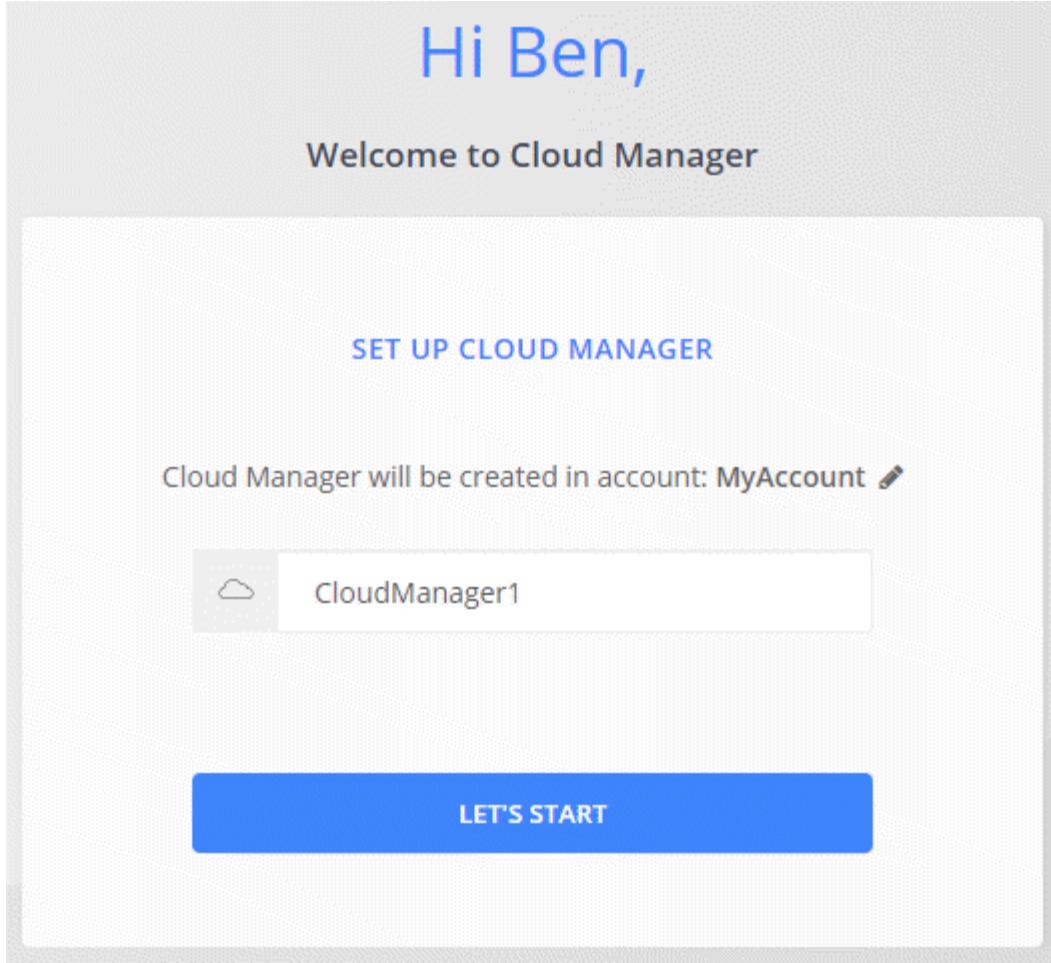
`http://ipaddress:80`

6. After you log in, set up Cloud Manager:

- a. Specify the Cloud Central account to associate with this Cloud Manager system.

[Learn about Cloud Central accounts](#).

- b. Enter a name for the system.



Result

Cloud Manager is now installed and set up. You must grant Azure permissions before users can deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure.

Granting Azure permissions to Cloud Manager using a managed identity

The easiest way to provide permissions is by enabling a [managed identity](#) on the Cloud Manager virtual machine and then by assigning the required permissions to the virtual machine. If preferred, an alternative way is to [grant Azure permissions using a service principal](#).

Steps

1. Enable a managed identity on the Cloud Manager virtual machine:
 - a. Navigate to the Cloud Manager virtual machine and select **Identity**.
 - b. Under **System Assigned**, click **On** and then click **Save**.
2. Create a custom role using the Cloud Manager policy:
 - a. Download the [Cloud Manager Azure policy](#).
 - b. Modify the JSON file by adding Azure subscription IDs to the assignable scope.

You should add the ID for each Azure subscription from which users will create Cloud Volumes

ONTAP systems.

Example

```
"AssignableScopes": [  
    "/subscriptions/d333af45-0d07-4154-943d-c25fbzzzzzz",  
    "/subscriptions/54b91999-b3e6-4599-908e-416e0zzzzzz",  
    "/subscriptions/398e471c-3b42-4ae7-9b59-ce5bbzzzzzz"
```

- c. Use the JSON file to create a custom role in Azure.

The following example shows how to create a custom role using the Azure CLI 2.0:

```
az role definition create --role-definition C:\Policy_for_cloud_Manager_Azure_3.8.5.json
```

You should now have a custom role called OnCommand Cloud Manager Operator that you can assign to the Cloud Manager virtual machine.

3. Assign the role to the Cloud Manager virtual machine for one or more subscriptions:
 - a. Open the **Subscriptions** service and then select the subscription in which you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.
 - b. Click **Access control (IAM)**.
 - c. Click **Add**, click **Add role assignment**, and then add the permissions:
 - Select the **OnCommand Cloud Manager Operator** role.



OnCommand Cloud Manager Operator is the default name provided in the [Cloud Manager policy](#). If you chose a different name for the role, then select that name instead.

- Assign access to a **Virtual Machine**.
 - Select the subscription in which the Cloud Manager virtual machine was created.
 - Type the name of the virtual machine and then select it.
 - Click **Save**.
- d. If you want to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP from additional subscriptions, switch to that subscription and then repeat these steps.

Result

Cloud Manager now has the permissions that it needs to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure.

Installing Cloud Manager in an Azure Germany region

You can deploy Cloud Manager in an Azure Germany region by downloading the

Cloud Manager installer from the NetApp Support Site and installing it on an existing Linux host in the region.



The Azure Marketplace isn't available in the Azure Germany regions, so you can't deploy Cloud Manager from the Marketplace.

Steps

1. [Review networking requirements for Azure](#).
2. [Review Cloud Manager host requirements](#).
3. [Download and install Cloud Manager](#).
4. [Grant Azure permissions to Cloud Manager using a service principal](#).

After you finish

Cloud Manager is now ready to deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in the Azure Germany region, just like any other region. However, you might want to perform additional setup first.

Logging in to Cloud Manager

You can log in to Cloud Manager from any web browser that has a connection to the Cloud Manager system. You should log in using a [NetApp Cloud Central](#) user account.

Steps

1. Open a web browser and log in to [NetApp Cloud Central](#).

This step should automatically direct you to the Fabric View. If it doesn't, then click **Fabric View**.

2. Select the Cloud Manager system that you want to access.



If you don't see any systems listed, make sure that the Account Admin added you to the Cloud Central Account associated with the Cloud Manager system.

3. Log in to Cloud Manager using your NetApp Cloud Central credentials.

NetApp Cloud Central

[Continue to Cloud Manager](#)

[LOGIN](#) [SIGN UP](#)

Email

Password

[LOGIN](#)

[Forgot your password?](#)

Keeping Cloud Manager up and running

Cloud Manager should remain running at all times.

Cloud Manager is a key component in the health and billing of Cloud Volumes ONTAP. If Cloud Manager is powered down, Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems will shut down after losing communication with Cloud Manager for longer than 4 days.

Manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Before you create Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems

Before you use Cloud Manager to create and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems, your Cloud Manager administrator should have prepared networking and installed and set up Cloud Manager.

The following conditions should exist before you start deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP:

- Networking requirements were met for Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
- Cloud Manager has permissions to perform operations in your chosen cloud provider.
- Cloud Manager was installed.



Cloud Manager should remain running at all times.

Related links

- [Getting started in AWS](#)
- [Getting started in Azure](#)
- [Getting started in GCP](#)
- [Setting up Cloud Manager](#)

Planning your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration

When you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you can choose a preconfigured system that matches your workload requirements, or you can create your own configuration. If you choose your own configuration, you should understand the options available to you.

Choosing a license type

Cloud Volumes ONTAP is available in two pricing options: pay-as-you-go and Bring Your Own License (BYOL). For pay-as-you-go, you can choose from three licenses: Explore, Standard, or Premium. Each license provides different capacity and compute options.

- [Supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 in AWS](#)
- [Supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 in Azure](#)

- [Supported configurations for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 in GCP](#)

Understanding storage limits

The raw capacity limit for a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system is tied to the license. Additional limits impact the size of aggregates and volumes. You should be aware of these limits as you plan your configuration.

- [Storage limits for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 in AWS](#)
- [Storage limits for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 in Azure](#)
- [Storage limits for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 in GCP](#)

Choosing a write speed

Cloud Manager enables you to choose a write speed setting for single node Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems. Before you choose a write speed, you should understand the differences between the normal and high settings and risks and recommendations when using high write speed.

Difference between normal write speed and high write speed

When you choose normal write speed, data is written directly to disk, thereby reducing the likelihood of data loss in the event of an unplanned system outage.

When you choose high write speed, data is buffered in memory before it is written to disk, which provides faster write performance. Due to this caching, there is the potential for data loss if an unplanned system outage occurs.

The amount of data that can be lost in the event of an unplanned system outage is the span of the last two consistency points. A consistency point is the act of writing buffered data to disk. A consistency point occurs when the write log is full or after 10 seconds (whichever comes first). However, AWS EBS volume performance can affect consistency point processing time.

When to use high write speed

High write speed is a good choice if fast write performance is required for your workload and you can withstand the risk of data loss in the event of an unplanned system outage.

Recommendations when using high write speed

If you enable high write speed, you should ensure write protection at the application layer.

Choosing a volume usage profile

ONTAP includes several storage efficiency features that can reduce the total amount of storage that you need. When you create a volume in Cloud Manager, you can choose a profile that enables these features or a profile that disables them. You should learn more about these features to help you decide

which profile to use.

NetApp storage efficiency features provide the following benefits:

Thin provisioning

Presents more logical storage to hosts or users than you actually have in your physical storage pool. Instead of preallocating storage space, storage space is allocated dynamically to each volume as data is written.

Deduplication

Improves efficiency by locating identical blocks of data and replacing them with references to a single shared block. This technique reduces storage capacity requirements by eliminating redundant blocks of data that reside in the same volume.

Compression

Reduces the physical capacity required to store data by compressing data within a volume on primary, secondary, and archive storage.

AWS planning

Plan your deployment of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS by sizing your system and reviewing the network information that you need to enter.

- [Sizing your system in AWS](#)
- [AWS network information worksheet](#)

Sizing your system in AWS

Sizing your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system can help you meet requirements for performance and capacity. You should be aware of a few key points when choosing an instance type, disk type, and disk size:

Instance type

- Match your workload requirements to the maximum throughput and IOPS for each EC2 instance type.
- If several users write to the system at the same time, choose an instance type that has enough CPUs to manage the requests.
- If you have an application that is mostly reads, then choose a system with enough RAM.
 - [AWS Documentation: Amazon EC2 Instance Types](#)
 - [AWS Documentation: Amazon EBS–Optimized Instances](#)

EBS disk type

General Purpose SSDs are the most common disk type for Cloud Volumes ONTAP. To view the use cases for EBS disks, refer to [AWS Documentation: EBS Volume Types](#).

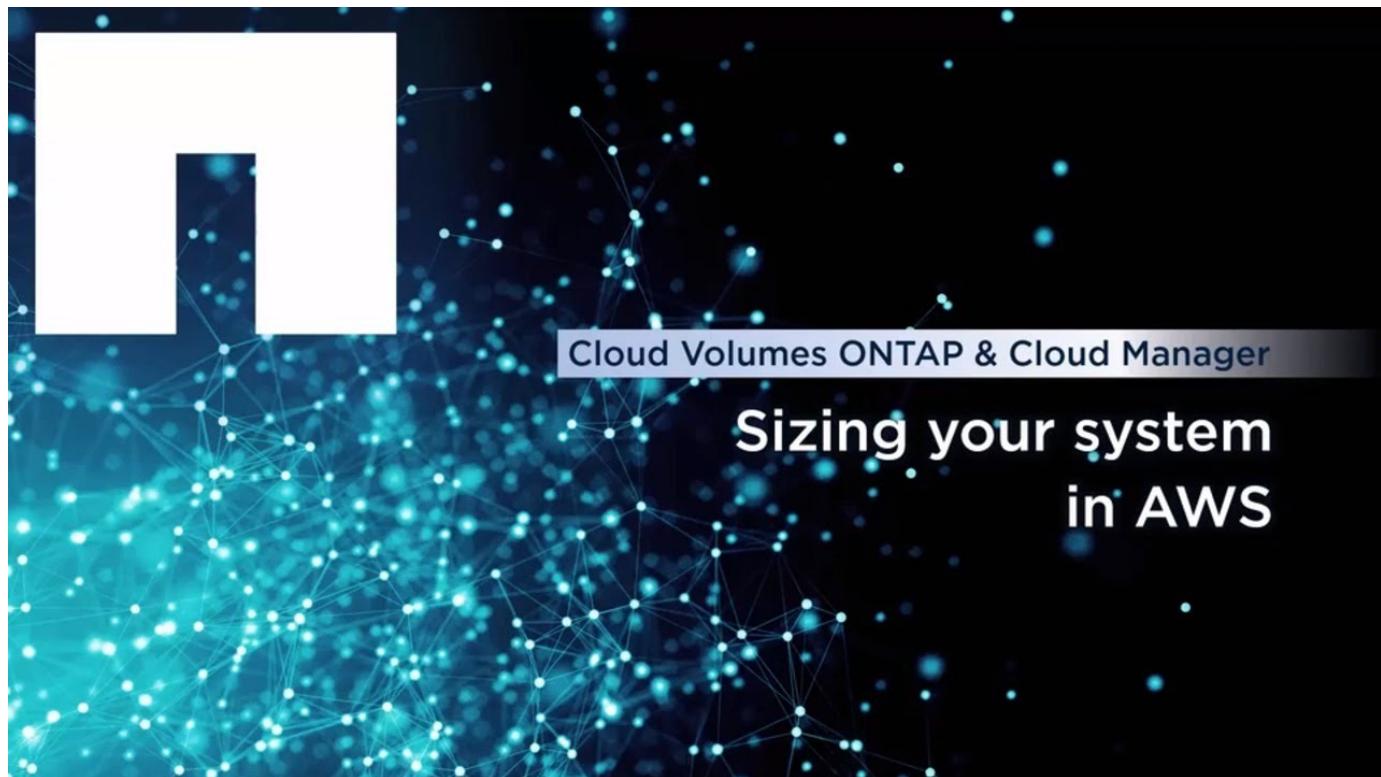
EBS disk size

You need to choose an initial disk size when you launch a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. After that, you can [let Cloud Manager manage a system's capacity for you](#), but if you want to [build aggregates yourself](#), be aware of the following:

- All disks in an aggregate must be the same size.
- The performance of EBS disks is tied to disk size. The size determines the baseline IOPS and maximum burst duration for SSD disks and the baseline and burst throughput for HDD disks.
- Ultimately, you should choose the disk size that gives you the *sustained performance* that you need.
- Even if you do choose larger disks (for example, six 4 TB disks), you might not get all of the IOPS because the EC2 instance can reach its bandwidth limit.

For more details about EBS disk performance, refer to [AWS Documentation: EBS Volume Types](#).

Watch the following video for more details about sizing your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in AWS:



AWS network information worksheet

When you launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, you need to specify details about your VPC network. You can use a worksheet to collect the information from your administrator.

Network information for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

AWS information	Your value
Region	
VPC	
Subnet	
Security group (if using your own)	

Network information for an HA pair in multiple AZs

AWS information	Your value
Region	
VPC	
Security group (if using your own)	
Node 1 availability zone	
Node 1 subnet	
Node 2 availability zone	
Node 2 subnet	
Mediator availability zone	
Mediator subnet	
Key pair for the mediator	
Floating IP address for cluster management port	
Floating IP address for data on node 1	
Floating IP address for data on node 2	
Route tables for floating IP addresses	

Azure planning

Plan your deployment of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure by sizing your system and reviewing the network information that you need to enter.

- [Sizing your system in Azure](#)
- [Azure network information worksheet](#)

Sizing your system in Azure

Sizing your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system can help you meet requirements for performance and capacity. You should be aware of a few key points when choosing a VM type, disk type, and disk size:

Virtual machine type

Look at the supported virtual machine types in the [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#) and then review details about each supported VM type. Be aware that each VM type supports a specific number of data disks.

- [Azure documentation: General purpose virtual machine sizes](#)
- [Azure documentation: Memory optimized virtual machine sizes](#)

Azure disk type

When you create volumes for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you need to choose the underlying cloud storage that Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses as a disk.

HA systems use Premium page blobs. Meanwhile, single node systems can use two types of Azure Managed Disks:

- *Premium SSD Managed Disks* provide high performance for I/O-intensive workloads at a higher cost.
- *Standard SSD Managed Disks* provide consistent performance for workloads that require low IOPS.
- *Standard HDD Managed Disks* are a good choice if you don't need high IOPS and want to reduce your costs.

For additional details about the use cases for these disks, see [Microsoft Azure Documentation: Introduction to Microsoft Azure Storage](#).

Azure disk size

When you launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances, you must choose the default disk size for aggregates. Cloud Manager uses this disk size for the initial aggregate, and for any additional aggregates that it creates when you use the simple provisioning option. You can create aggregates that use a disk size different from the default by [using the advanced allocation option](#).



All disks in an aggregate must be the same size.

When choosing a disk size, you should take several factors into consideration. The disk size impacts how much you pay for storage, the size of volumes that you can create in an aggregate, the total capacity available to Cloud Volumes ONTAP, and storage performance.

The performance of Azure Premium Storage is tied to the disk size. Larger disks provide higher IOPS and throughput. For example, choosing 1 TB disks can provide better performance than 500 GB disks, at a higher cost.

There are no performance differences between disk sizes for Standard Storage. You should choose disk size based on the capacity that you need.

Refer to Azure for IOPS and throughput by disk size:

- [Microsoft Azure: Managed Disks pricing](#)
- [Microsoft Azure: Page Blobs pricing](#)

Azure network information worksheet

When you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure, you need to specify details about your virtual network. You can use a worksheet to collect the information from your administrator.

Azure information	Your value
Region	
Virtual network (VNet)	
Subnet	
Network security group (if using your own)	

GCP planning

Plan your deployment of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud Platform by sizing your system and reviewing the network information that you need to enter.

- [Sizing your system in GCP](#)
- [GCP network information worksheet](#)

Sizing your system in GCP

Sizing your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system can help you meet requirements for performance and capacity. You should be aware of a few key points when choosing a machine type, disk type, and disk size:

Machine type

Look at the supported machine types in the [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Release Notes](#) and then review details from Google about each supported machine type. Match your workload requirements to the number of vCPUs and memory for the machine type. Note that each CPU core increases networking performance.

Refer to the following for more details:

- [Google Cloud documentation: N1 standard machine types](#)
- [Google Cloud documentation: Performance](#)

GCP disk type

When you create volumes for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you need to choose the underlying cloud storage that Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses for a disk. The disk type can be either *Zonal SSD persistent disks* or *Zonal standard persistent disks*.

SSD persistent disks are best for workloads that require high rates of random IOPS, while Standard persistent disks are economical and can handle sequential read/write operations. For more details, see [Google Cloud documentation: Zonal Persistent disks \(Standard and SSD\)](#).

GCP disk size

You need to choose an initial disk size when you deploy a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. After that you can let Cloud Manager manage a system's capacity for you, but if you want to build aggregates yourself, be aware of the following:

- All disks in an aggregate must be the same size.
- Determine the space that you need, while taking performance into consideration.
- The performance of persistent disks scales automatically with disk size and the number of vCPUs available to the system.

Refer to the following for more details:

- [Google Cloud documentation: Zonal Persistent disks \(Standard and SSD\)](#)
- [Google Cloud documentation: Optimizing Persistent Disk and Local SSD Performance](#)

GCP network information worksheet

When you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP, you need to specify details about your virtual network. You can use a worksheet to collect the information from your administrator.

GCP information	Your value
Region	
Zone	
VPC network	
Subnet	
Firewall policy (if using your own)	

Finding your Cloud Manager system ID

To help you get started, your NetApp representative might ask you for your Cloud Manager system ID. The ID is typically used for licensing and troubleshooting purposes.

Steps

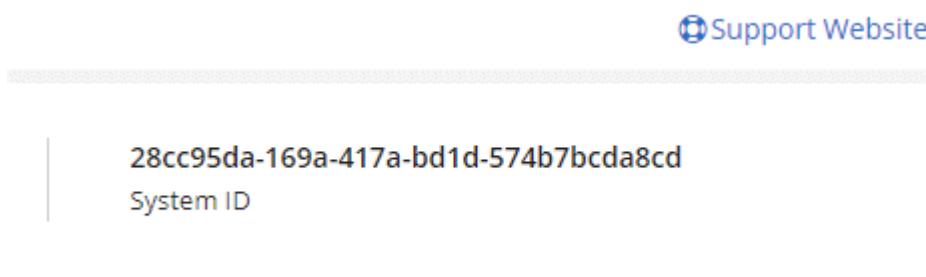
1. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon.



2. Click **Support Dashboard**.

Your system ID appears in the top right.

Example



Enabling Flash Cache on Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Some Cloud Volumes ONTAP configurations in AWS and Azure include local NVMe storage, which Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses as *Flash Cache* for better performance.

What's Flash Cache?

Flash Cache speeds access to data through real-time intelligent caching of recently read user data and NetApp metadata. It is effective for random read-intensive workloads, including databases, email, and file services.

Limitations

- Compression must be disabled on all volumes to take advantage of the Flash Cache performance improvements.
- Cache rewarming after a reboot is not supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Enabling Flash Cache on Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS

Flash Cache is supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP Premium and BYOL in AWS.

Steps

1. Select one of the following EC2 instance types with a new or existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Premium or BYOL system:

- c5d.4xlarge
 - c5d.9xlarge
 - c5d.18xlarge
 - m5d.8xlarge
 - m5d.12xlarge
 - r5d.2xlarge
2. Disable compression on all volumes to take advantage of the Flash Cache performance improvements.

Choose no storage efficiency when creating a volume from Cloud Manager, or create a volume and then [disable data compression by using the CLI](#).

Enabling Flash Cache on Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure

Flash Cache is supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP BYOL on single node systems.

Steps

1. Select the Standard_L8s_v2 VM type with a single node Cloud Volumes ONTAP BYOL system in Azure.
2. Disable compression on all volumes to take advantage of the Flash Cache performance improvements.

Choose no storage efficiency when creating a volume from Cloud Manager, or create a volume and then [disable data compression by using the CLI](#).

Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS

You can launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in a single-system configuration or as an HA pair in AWS.

Launching a single-node Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in AWS

If you want to launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, you need to create a new working environment in Cloud Manager.

Before you begin

- You should have prepared by choosing a configuration and by obtaining AWS networking information from your administrator. For details, see [Planning your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration](#).
- If you want to launch a BYOL system, you must have the 20-digit serial number (license key).

- If you want to use CIFS, you must have set up DNS and Active Directory. For details, see [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#).
- You should be prepared to leave Cloud Manager running at all times.

About this task

Immediately after you create the working environment, Cloud Manager launches a test instance in the specified VPC to verify connectivity. If successful, Cloud Manager immediately terminates the instance and then starts deploying the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. If Cloud Manager cannot verify connectivity, creation of the working environment fails. The test instance is either a t2.nano (for default VPC tenancy) or m3.medium (for dedicated VPC tenancy).

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, click **Create Cloud Volumes ONTAP** and follow the prompts.
2. **Define Your Working Environment:** Select **Amazon Web Services** and **Cloud Volumes ONTAP**.
3. **Details and Credentials:** Optionally change the AWS credentials and subscription, enter a working environment name, add tags if needed, and then enter a password.

Some of the fields in this page are self-explanatory. The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Working Environment Name	Cloud Manager uses the working environment name to name both the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system and the Amazon EC2 instance. It also uses the name as the prefix for the predefined security group, if you select that option.
Add tags	<p>AWS tags are metadata for your AWS resources. Cloud Manager adds the tags to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance and each AWS resource associated with the instance.</p> <p>You can add up to four tags from the user interface when creating a working environment, and then you can add more after its created. Note that the API does not limit you to four tags when creating a working environment.</p> <p>For information about tags, refer to AWS Documentation: Tagging your Amazon EC2 Resources.</p>
User name and password	These are the credentials for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP cluster admin account. You can use these credentials to connect to Cloud Volumes ONTAP through OnCommand System Manager or its CLI.

Field	Description
	<p>Choose the AWS credentials and marketplace subscription to use with this Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.</p> <p>Click Add Subscription to associate the selected credentials with a subscription.</p> <p>To create a pay-as-you-go Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, you need to select AWS credentials that are associated with a subscription to Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the AWS Marketplace. You'll be charged from this subscription for every Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 and later PAYGO system that you create and each add-on feature that you enable.</p> <p>Learn how to add additional AWS credentials to Cloud Manager.</p>

The following video shows how to associate a pay-as-you-go Marketplace subscription to your AWS credentials:

► https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/occm/media/video_subscribing_aws.mp4 (video)

If multiple IAM users work in the same AWS account, then each user needs to subscribe. After the first user subscribes, the AWS Marketplace informs subsequent users that they're already subscribed, as shown in the image below. While a subscription is in place for the AWS *account*, each IAM user needs to associate themselves with that subscription. If you see the message shown below, click the **click here** link to go to Cloud Central and complete the process.



Cloud Manager (for Cloud Volumes ONTAP)

You are currently subscribed to this product and will be charged for your accumulated usage at the end of your next billing cycle, based on the costs listed in Pricing information on the right.



Having issues signing up for your product?

If you were unable to complete the set-up process for this software, please [click here](#) to be taken to the product's registration area.

[Subscribe](#)

You are already subscribed to this product

Pricing Details

Software Fees

4. Services: Keep the services enabled or disable the individual services that you don't want to use with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

- [Learn more about Cloud Compliance.](#)
- [Learn more about Backup to Cloud.](#)
- [Learn more about Monitoring.](#)

5. Location & Connectivity: Enter the network information that you recorded in the AWS worksheet.

The following image shows the page filled out:

Location	Connectivity
AWS Region	Security Group
US West Oregon	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Generated security group <input type="radio"/> Use existing security group
VPC	SSH Authentication Method
vpc-3a01e05f - 172.31.0.0/16	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Password <input type="radio"/> Key Pair
Subnet	
172.31.5.0/24 (OCCM subnet)	

6. Data Encryption: Choose no data encryption or AWS-managed encryption.

For AWS-managed encryption, you can choose a different Customer Master Key (CMK) from your account or another AWS account.



You can't change the AWS data encryption method after you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

[Learn how to set up the AWS KMS for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

[Learn more about supported encryption technologies.](#)

7. License and Support Site Account: Specify whether you want to use pay-as-you-go or BYOL, and then specify a NetApp Support Site account.

To understand how licenses work, see [Licensing](#).

A NetApp Support Site Account is optional for pay-as-you-go, but required for BYOL systems. [Learn how to add NetApp Support Site accounts.](#)

8. Preconfigured Packages: Select one of the packages to quickly launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP, or click [Create my own configuration](#).

If you choose one of the packages, you only need to specify a volume and then review and approve the configuration.

9. IAM Role: You should keep the default option to let Cloud Manager create the role for you.

If you prefer to use your own policy, it must meet [policy requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes](#).

10. Licensing: Change the Cloud Volumes ONTAP version as needed, select a license, an instance type, and the instance tenancy.

If your needs change after you launch the instance, you can modify the license or instance type later.



If a newer Release Candidate, General Availability, or patch release is available for the selected version, then Cloud Manager updates the system to that version when creating the working environment. For example, the update occurs if you select Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 RC1 and 9.6 GA is available. The update does not occur from one release to another—for example, from 9.6 to 9.7.

- 11. Underlying Storage Resources:** Choose settings for the initial aggregate: a disk type, a size for each disk, and whether data tiering should be enabled.

Note the following:

- The disk type is for the initial volume. You can choose a different disk type for subsequent volumes.
- The disk size is for all disks in the initial aggregate and for any additional aggregates that Cloud Manager creates when you use the simple provisioning option. You can create aggregates that use a different disk size by using the advanced allocation option.

For help choosing a disk type and size, see [Sizing your system in AWS](#).

- You can choose a specific volume tiering policy when you create or edit a volume.
- If you disable data tiering, you can enable it on subsequent aggregates.

[Learn how data tiering works.](#)

- 12. Write Speed & WORM:** Choose **Normal** or **High** write speed, and activate write once, read many (WORM) storage, if desired.

[Learn more about write speed.](#)

[Learn more about WORM storage.](#)

- 13. Create Volume:** Enter details for the new volume or click **Skip**.

You might skip this step if you want to create a volume for iSCSI. Cloud Manager sets up volumes for NFS and CIFS only.

Some of the fields in this page are self-explanatory. The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Size	The maximum size that you can enter largely depends on whether you enable thin provisioning, which enables you to create a volume that is bigger than the physical storage currently available to it.

Field	Description
Access control (for NFS only)	An export policy defines the clients in the subnet that can access the volume. By default, Cloud Manager enters a value that provides access to all instances in the subnet.
Permissions and Users / Groups (for CIFS only)	These fields enable you to control the level of access to a share for users and groups (also called access control lists or ACLs). You can specify local or domain Windows users or groups, or UNIX users or groups. If you specify a domain Windows user name, you must include the user's domain using the format domain\username.
Snapshot Policy	A Snapshot copy policy specifies the frequency and number of automatically created NetApp Snapshot copies. A NetApp Snapshot copy is a point-in-time file system image that has no performance impact and requires minimal storage. You can choose the default policy or none. You might choose none for transient data: for example, tempdb for Microsoft SQL Server.
Advanced options (for NFS only)	Select an NFS version for the volume: either NFSv3 or NFSv4.

The following image shows the Volume page filled out for the CIFS protocol:

Details & Protection

Volume Name:

Size (GB):

Snapshot Policy:

Default Policy

Protocol

NFS Protocol CIFS Protocol

Share name:	<input type="text" value="vol1_share"/>	Permissions:	<input type="text" value="Full Control"/>
Users / Groups:		<input type="text" value="engineering"/>	
<small>Valid users and groups separated by a semicolon</small>			

14. CIFS Setup: If you chose the CIFS protocol, set up a CIFS server.

Field	Description
DNS Primary and Secondary IP Address	The IP addresses of the DNS servers that provide name resolution for the CIFS server. The listed DNS servers must contain the service location records (SRV) needed to locate the Active Directory LDAP servers and domain controllers for the domain that the CIFS server will join.
Active Directory Domain to join	The FQDN of the Active Directory (AD) domain that you want the CIFS server to join.

Field	Description
Credentials authorized to join the domain	The name and password of a Windows account with sufficient privileges to add computers to the specified Organizational Unit (OU) within the AD domain.
CIFS server NetBIOS name	A CIFS server name that is unique in the AD domain.
Organizational Unit	The organizational unit within the AD domain to associate with the CIFS server. The default is CN=Computers. If you configure AWS Managed Microsoft AD as the AD server for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you should enter OU=Computers,OU=corp in this field.
DNS Domain	The DNS domain for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage virtual machine (SVM). In most cases, the domain is the same as the AD domain.
NTP Server	Select Use Active Directory Domain to configure an NTP server using the Active Directory DNS. If you need to configure an NTP server using a different address, then you should use the API. See the Cloud Manager API Developer Guide for details.

15. **Usage Profile, Disk Type, and Tiering Policy:** Choose whether you want to enable storage efficiency features and edit the volume tiering policy, if needed.

For more information, see [Understanding volume usage profiles](#) and [Data tiering overview](#).

16. **Review & Approve:** Review and confirm your selections.

- Review details about the configuration.
- Click **More information** to review details about support and the AWS resources that Cloud Manager will purchase.
- Select the **I understand...** check boxes.
- Click **Go**.

Result

Cloud Manager launches the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance. You can track the progress in the timeline.

If you experience any issues launching the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance, review the failure message. You can also select the working environment and click Re-create environment.

For additional help, go to [NetApp Cloud Volumes ONTAP Support](#).

After you finish

- If you provisioned a CIFS share, give users or groups permissions to the files and folders and verify that those users can access the share and create a file.

- If you want to apply quotas to volumes, use System Manager or the CLI.

Quotas enable you to restrict or track the disk space and number of files used by a user, group, or qtree.

Launching a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair in AWS

If you want to launch a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair in AWS, you need to create an HA working environment in Cloud Manager.

Before you begin

- You should have prepared by choosing a configuration and by obtaining AWS networking information from your administrator. For details, see [Planning your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration](#).
- If you purchased BYOL licenses, you must have a 20-digit serial number (license key) for each node.
- If you want to use CIFS, you must have set up DNS and Active Directory. For details, see [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#).
- You should be prepared to leave Cloud Manager running at all times.

About this task

Immediately after you create the working environment, Cloud Manager launches a test instance in the specified VPC to verify connectivity. If successful, Cloud Manager immediately terminates the instance and then starts deploying the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. If Cloud Manager cannot verify connectivity, creation of the working environment fails. The test instance is either a t2.nano (for default VPC tenancy) or m3.medium (for dedicated VPC tenancy).

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, click **Create Cloud Volumes ONTAP** and follow the prompts.
2. **Define Your Working Environment:** Select **Amazon Web Services** and **Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA**.
3. **Details and Credentials:** Optionally change the AWS credentials and subscription, enter a working environment name, add tags if needed, and then enter a password.

Some of the fields in this page are self-explanatory. The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Working Environment Name	Cloud Manager uses the working environment name to name both the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system and the Amazon EC2 instance. It also uses the name as the prefix for the predefined security group, if you select that option.

Field	Description
Add tags	<p>AWS tags are metadata for your AWS resources. Cloud Manager adds the tags to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance and each AWS resource associated with the instance.</p> <p>You can add up to four tags from the user interface when creating a working environment, and then you can add more after its created. Note that the API does not limit you to four tags when creating a working environment.</p> <p>For information about tags, refer to AWS Documentation: Tagging your Amazon EC2 Resources.</p>
User name and password	<p>These are the credentials for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP cluster admin account. You can use these credentials to connect to Cloud Volumes ONTAP through OnCommand System Manager or its CLI.</p>
Edit Credentials	<p>Choose the AWS credentials and marketplace subscription to use with this Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.</p> <p>Click Add Subscription to associate the selected credentials with a subscription.</p> <p>To create a pay-as-you-go Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, you need to select AWS credentials that are associated with a subscription to Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the AWS Marketplace. You'll be charged from this subscription for every Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 and later PAYGO system that you create and each add-on feature that you enable.</p> <p>Learn how to add additional AWS credentials to Cloud Manager.</p>

The following video shows how to associate a pay-as-you-go Marketplace subscription to your AWS credentials:

► https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/occm/media/video_subscribing_aws.mp4 (video)



If multiple IAM users work in the same AWS account, then each user needs to subscribe. After the first user subscribes, the AWS Marketplace informs subsequent users that they're already subscribed, as shown in the image below. While a subscription is in place for the AWS *account*, each IAM user needs to associate themselves with that subscription. If you see the message shown below, click the **click here** link to go to Cloud Central and complete the process.

4. **Services:** Keep the services enabled or disable the individual services that you don't want to use

with this Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

- [Learn more about Backup to S3.](#)
- [Learn more about Cloud Compliance.](#)
- [Learn more about Monitoring.](#)

5. HA Deployment Models:

Choose an HA configuration.

For an overview of the deployment models, see [Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA for AWS](#).

6. Region & VPC:

Enter the network information that you recorded in the AWS worksheet.

The following image shows the page filled out for a multiple AZ configuration:

AWS Region	VPC	Security group
US West Oregon	vpc-3a01e05f 172.31.0.0/16	Use a generated security group
Node 1: Availability Zone us-west-2a Subnet 172.31.16.0/20	Node 2: Availability Zone us-west-2b Subnet 172.31.32.0/20	Mediator: Availability Zone us-west-2c Subnet 172.31.0.0/20 Key Pair newKey

7. Connectivity and SSH Authentication:

Choose connection methods for the HA pair and the mediator.

8. Floating IPs:

If you chose multiple AZs, specify the floating IP addresses.

The IP addresses must be outside of the CIDR block for all VPCs in the region. For additional details, see [AWS networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA in multiple AZs](#).

9. Route Tables:

If you chose multiple AZs, select the route tables that should include routes to the floating IP addresses.

If you have more than one route table, it is very important to select the correct route tables. Otherwise, some clients might not have access to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair. For more information about route tables, refer to [AWS Documentation: Route Tables](#).

10. Data Encryption:

Choose no data encryption or AWS-managed encryption.

For AWS-managed encryption, you can choose a different Customer Master Key (CMK) from your account or another AWS account.



You can't change the AWS data encryption method after you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

[Learn how to set up the AWS KMS for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.](#)

[Learn more about supported encryption technologies.](#)

11. **License and Support Site Account:** Specify whether you want to use pay-as-you-go or BYOL, and then specify a NetApp Support Site account.

To understand how licenses work, see [Licensing](#).

A NetApp Support Site Account is optional for pay-as-you-go, but required for BYOL systems. [Learn how to add NetApp Support Site accounts](#).

12. **Preconfigured Packages:** Select one of the packages to quickly launch a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, or click **Create my own configuration**.

If you choose one of the packages, you only need to specify a volume and then review and approve the configuration.

13. **IAM Role:** You should keep the default option to let Cloud Manager create the roles for you.

If you prefer to use your own policy, it must meet [policy requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP nodes and the HA mediator](#).

14. **Licensing:** Change the Cloud Volumes ONTAP version as needed, select a license, an instance type, and the instance tenancy.

If your needs change after you launch the instances, you can modify the license or instance type later.



If a newer Release Candidate, General Availability, or patch release is available for the selected version, then Cloud Manager updates the system to that version when creating the working environment. For example, the update occurs if you select Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 RC1 and 9.6 GA is available. The update does not occur from one release to another—for example, from 9.6 to 9.7.

15. **Underlying Storage Resources:** Choose settings for the initial aggregate: a disk type, a size for each disk, and whether data tiering should be enabled.

Note the following:

- The disk type is for the initial volume. You can choose a different disk type for subsequent volumes.

- The disk size is for all disks in the initial aggregate and for any additional aggregates that Cloud Manager creates when you use the simple provisioning option. You can create aggregates that use a different disk size by using the advanced allocation option.

For help choosing a disk type and size, see [Sizing your system in AWS](#).

- You can choose a specific volume tiering policy when you create or edit a volume.
- If you disable data tiering, you can enable it on subsequent aggregates.

[Learn how data tiering works](#).

16. **WORM:** Activate write once, read many (WORM) storage, if desired.

[Learn more about WORM storage](#).

17. **Create Volume:** Enter details for the new volume or click **Skip**.

You might skip this step if you want to create a volume for iSCSI. Cloud Manager sets up volumes for NFS and CIFS only.

Some of the fields in this page are self-explanatory. The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Size	The maximum size that you can enter largely depends on whether you enable thin provisioning, which enables you to create a volume that is bigger than the physical storage currently available to it.
Access control (for NFS only)	An export policy defines the clients in the subnet that can access the volume. By default, Cloud Manager enters a value that provides access to all instances in the subnet.
Permissions and Users / Groups (for CIFS only)	These fields enable you to control the level of access to a share for users and groups (also called access control lists or ACLs). You can specify local or domain Windows users or groups, or UNIX users or groups. If you specify a domain Windows user name, you must include the user's domain using the format domain\username.
Snapshot Policy	A Snapshot copy policy specifies the frequency and number of automatically created NetApp Snapshot copies. A NetApp Snapshot copy is a point-in-time file system image that has no performance impact and requires minimal storage. You can choose the default policy or none. You might choose none for transient data: for example, tempdb for Microsoft SQL Server.
Advanced options (for NFS only)	Select an NFS version for the volume: either NFSv3 or NFSv4.

The following image shows the Volume page filled out for the CIFS protocol:

The screenshot shows the 'Volume' configuration page. On the left, under 'Details & Protection', there are fields for 'Volume Name' (vol1), 'Size (GB)' (50), and 'Snapshot Policy' (default). Below these is a note about the 'Default Policy'. On the right, under 'Protocol', the 'CIFS Protocol' is selected. It includes fields for 'Share name' (vol1_share), 'Permissions' (Full Control), and 'Users / Groups' (engineering). A note at the bottom states: 'Valid users and groups separated by a semicolon'.

18. CIFS Setup: If you selected the CIFS protocol, set up a CIFS server.

Field	Description
DNS Primary and Secondary IP Address	The IP addresses of the DNS servers that provide name resolution for the CIFS server. The listed DNS servers must contain the service location records (SRV) needed to locate the Active Directory LDAP servers and domain controllers for the domain that the CIFS server will join.
Active Directory Domain to join	The FQDN of the Active Directory (AD) domain that you want the CIFS server to join.
Credentials authorized to join the domain	The name and password of a Windows account with sufficient privileges to add computers to the specified Organizational Unit (OU) within the AD domain.
CIFS server NetBIOS name	A CIFS server name that is unique in the AD domain.
Organizational Unit	The organizational unit within the AD domain to associate with the CIFS server. The default is CN=Computers. If you configure AWS Managed Microsoft AD as the AD server for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you should enter OU=Computers,OU=corp in this field.
DNS Domain	The DNS domain for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage virtual machine (SVM). In most cases, the domain is the same as the AD domain.
NTP Server	Select Use Active Directory Domain to configure an NTP server using the Active Directory DNS. If you need to configure an NTP server using a different address, then you should use the API. See the Cloud Manager API Developer Guide for details.

19. Usage Profile, Disk Type, and Tiering Policy: Choose whether you want to enable storage efficiency features and edit the volume tiering policy, if needed.

For more information, see [Understanding volume usage profiles](#) and [Data tiering overview](#).

20. **Review & Approve:** Review and confirm your selections.
 - a. Review details about the configuration.
 - b. Click **More information** to review details about support and the AWS resources that Cloud Manager will purchase.
 - c. Select the **I understand...** check boxes.
 - d. Click **Go**.

Result

Cloud Manager launches the Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair. You can track the progress in the timeline.

If you experience any issues launching the HA pair, review the failure message. You can also select the working environment and click Re-create environment.

For additional help, go to [NetApp Cloud Volumes ONTAP Support](#).

After you finish

- If you provisioned a CIFS share, give users or groups permissions to the files and folders and verify that those users can access the share and create a file.
- If you want to apply quotas to volumes, use System Manager or the CLI.

Quotas enable you to restrict or track the disk space and number of files used by a user, group, or qtree.

Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure

You can launch a single node system or an HA pair in Azure by creating a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment in Cloud Manager.

Before you begin

- Make sure that your Azure account has the required permissions, especially if you upgraded from a previous release and are deploying an HA system for the first time.

The latest permissions are in the [NetApp Cloud Central policy for Azure](#).

- You should have chose a configuration and obtained Azure networking information from your administrator. For details, see [Planning your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration](#).
- To deploy a BYOL system, you need the 20-digit serial number (license key) for each node.
- [You should be prepared to leave Cloud Manager running at all times](#).

About this task

When Cloud Manager creates a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in Azure, it creates several Azure

objects, such as a resource group, network interfaces, and storage accounts. You can review a summary of the resources at the end of the wizard.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, click **Create Cloud Volumes ONTAP** and follow the prompts.
2. **Define Your Working Environment:** Select **Microsoft Azure** and then choose a single node or HA pair.
3. **Details and Credentials:** Optionally change the Azure credentials and subscription, specify a cluster name and resource group name, add tags if needed, and then specify credentials.

The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Working Environment Name	Cloud Manager uses the working environment name to name both the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system and the Azure virtual machine. It also uses the name as the prefix for the predefined security group, if you select that option.
Resource Group Name	If you uncheck Use Default , you can enter the name of a new resource group. If you want to use an existing resource group, then you must use the API.
Tags	<p>Tags are metadata for your Azure resources. Cloud Manager adds the tags to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system and each Azure resource associated with the system.</p> <p>You can add up to four tags from the user interface when creating a working environment, and then you can add more after its created. Note that the API does not limit you to four tags when creating a working environment.</p> <p>For information about tags, refer to Microsoft Azure Documentation: Using tags to organize your Azure resources.</p>
User name and password	These are the credentials for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP cluster admin account. You can use these credentials to connect to Cloud Volumes ONTAP through OnCommand System Manager or its CLI.
Edit Credentials	You can choose different Azure credentials and a different Azure subscription to use with this Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. You need to associate an Azure Marketplace subscription with the selected Azure subscription in order to deploy a pay-as-you-go Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. Learn how to add credentials .

The following video shows how to associate a Marketplace subscription to an Azure subscription:

► https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/occm/media/video_subscribing_azure.mp4 (video)

4. **Services:** Keep the services enabled or disable the individual services that you don't want to use with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
 - [Learn more about Cloud Compliance.](#)
 - [Learn more about Backup to Cloud.](#)
5. **Location & Connectivity:** Select a location and security group and select the checkbox to confirm network connectivity between Cloud Manager and the target location.
6. **License and Support Site Account:** Specify whether you want to use pay-as-you-go or BYOL, and then specify a NetApp Support Site account.

To understand how licenses work, see [Licensing](#).

A NetApp Support Site Account is optional for pay-as-you-go, but required for BYOL systems. [Learn how to add NetApp Support Site accounts](#).

7. **Preconfigured Packages:** Select one of the packages to quickly deploy a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, or click **Create my own configuration**.

If you choose one of the packages, you only need to specify a volume and then review and approve the configuration.

8. **Licensing:** Change the Cloud Volumes ONTAP version as needed, select a license, and select a virtual machine type.

If your needs change after you launch the system, you can modify the license or virtual machine type later.



If a newer Release Candidate, General Availability, or patch release is available for the selected version, then Cloud Manager updates the system to that version when creating the working environment. For example, the update occurs if you select Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 RC1 and 9.6 GA is available. The update does not occur from one release to another—for example, from 9.6 to 9.7.

9. **Subscribe from the Azure Marketplace:** Follow the steps if Cloud Manager could not enable programmatic deployments of Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
10. **Underlying Storage Resources:** Choose settings for the initial aggregate: a disk type, a size for each disk, and whether data tiering to Blob storage should be enabled.

Note the following:

- The disk type is for the initial volume. You can choose a different disk type for subsequent volumes.

- The disk size is for all disks in the initial aggregate and for any additional aggregates that Cloud Manager creates when you use the simple provisioning option. You can create aggregates that use a different disk size by using the advanced allocation option.

For help choosing a disk type and size, see [Sizing your system in Azure](#).

- You can choose a specific volume tiering policy when you create or edit a volume.
- If you disable data tiering, you can enable it on subsequent aggregates.

[Learn more about data tiering](#).

11. **Write Speed & WORM** (single node systems only): Choose **Normal** or **High** write speed, and activate write once, read many (WORM) storage, if desired.



Choosing a write speed is supported with single node systems only.

[Learn more about write speed](#).

[Learn more about WORM storage](#).

12. **Secure Communication to Storage & WORM** (HA only): Choose whether to enable an HTTPS connection to Azure storage accounts, and activate write once, read many (WORM) storage, if desired.

The HTTPS connection is from a Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 HA pair to Azure storage accounts. Note that enabling this option can impact write performance. You can't change the setting after you create the working environment.

[Learn more about WORM storage](#).

13. **Create Volume:** Enter details for the new volume or click **Skip**.

You should skip this step if you want to use iSCSI. Cloud Manager enables you to create volumes for NFS and CIFS only.

Some of the fields in this page are self-explanatory. The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Size	The maximum size that you can enter largely depends on whether you enable thin provisioning, which enables you to create a volume that is bigger than the physical storage currently available to it.
Access control (for NFS only)	An export policy defines the clients in the subnet that can access the volume. By default, Cloud Manager enters a value that provides access to all instances in the subnet.

Field	Description
Permissions and Users / Groups (for CIFS only)	These fields enable you to control the level of access to a share for users and groups (also called access control lists or ACLs). You can specify local or domain Windows users or groups, or UNIX users or groups. If you specify a domain Windows user name, you must include the user's domain using the format domain\username.
Snapshot Policy	A Snapshot copy policy specifies the frequency and number of automatically created NetApp Snapshot copies. A NetApp Snapshot copy is a point-in-time file system image that has no performance impact and requires minimal storage. You can choose the default policy or none. You might choose none for transient data: for example, tempdb for Microsoft SQL Server.
Advanced options (for NFS only)	Select an NFS version for the volume: either NFSv3 or NFSv4.

The following image shows the Volume page filled out for the CIFS protocol:

Details & Protection <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> Volume Name: <input type="text" value="vol1"/> Size (GB): <input type="text" value="50"/> </div> <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> Snapshot Policy: <input type="text" value="default"/> <div style="float: right;"><small><input type="radio"/> Default Policy</small></div> </div>	Protocol <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> <input type="radio"/> NFS Protocol <input checked="" type="radio"/> CIFS Protocol </div> <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> Share name: <input type="text" value="vol1_share"/> Permissions: <input type="text" value="Full Control"/> </div> <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> Users / Groups: <input type="text" value="engineering"/> <div style="font-size: small; margin-top: -10px;">Valid users and groups separated by a semicolon</div> </div>
--	--

14. CIFS Setup: If you chose the CIFS protocol, set up a CIFS server.

Field	Description
DNS Primary and Secondary IP Address	The IP addresses of the DNS servers that provide name resolution for the CIFS server. The listed DNS servers must contain the service location records (SRV) needed to locate the Active Directory LDAP servers and domain controllers for the domain that the CIFS server will join.
Active Directory Domain to join	The FQDN of the Active Directory (AD) domain that you want the CIFS server to join.
Credentials authorized to join the domain	The name and password of a Windows account with sufficient privileges to add computers to the specified Organizational Unit (OU) within the AD domain.

Field	Description
CIFS server NetBIOS name	A CIFS server name that is unique in the AD domain.
Organizational Unit	<p>The organizational unit within the AD domain to associate with the CIFS server. The default is CN=Computers.</p> <p>To configure Azure AD Domain Services as the AD server for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you should enter OU=AADDC Computers or OU=AADDC Users in this field.</p> <p>Azure Documentation: Create an Organizational Unit (OU) in an Azure AD Domain Services managed domain</p>
DNS Domain	The DNS domain for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage virtual machine (SVM). In most cases, the domain is the same as the AD domain.
NTP Server	Select Use Active Directory Domain to configure an NTP server using the Active Directory DNS. If you need to configure an NTP server using a different address, then you should use the API. See the Cloud Manager API Developer Guide for details.

15. **Usage Profile, Disk Type, and Tiering Policy:** Choose whether you want to enable storage efficiency features and change the volume tiering policy, if needed.

For more information, see [Understanding volume usage profiles](#) and [Data tiering overview](#).

16. **Review & Approve:** Review and confirm your selections.

- Review details about the configuration.
- Click **More information** to review details about support and the Azure resources that Cloud Manager will purchase.
- Select the **I understand...** check boxes.
- Click **Go**.

Result

Cloud Manager deploys the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. You can track the progress in the timeline.

If you experience any issues deploying the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, review the failure message. You can also select the working environment and click **Re-create environment**.

For additional help, go to [NetApp Cloud Volumes ONTAP Support](#).

After you finish

- If you provisioned a CIFS share, give users or groups permissions to the files and folders and verify that those users can access the share and create a file.
- If you want to apply quotas to volumes, use System Manager or the CLI.

Quotas enable you to restrict or track the disk space and number of files used by a user, group, or qtree.

Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP

You can launch a single node Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in GCP by creating a working environment.

Before you begin

- You should have chose a configuration and obtained GCP networking information from your administrator. For details, see [Planning your Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration](#).
- To deploy a BYOL system, you need the 20-digit serial number (license key) for each node.
- [You should be prepared to leave Cloud Manager running at all times](#).

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, click **Create Cloud Volumes ONTAP** and follow the prompts.
2. **Define Your Working Environment:** Click **Continue**.
3. **Details & Credentials:** Select a project, specify a cluster name, optionally add labels, and then specify credentials.

The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Working Environment Name	Cloud Manager uses the working environment name to name both the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system and the GCP VM instance. It also uses the name as the prefix for the predefined security group, if you select that option.
Add Labels	<p>Labels are metadata for your GCP resources. Cloud Manager adds the labels to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system and GCP resources associated with the system.</p> <p>You can add up to four labels from the user interface when creating a working environment, and then you can add more after its created. Note that the API does not limit you to four labels when creating a working environment.</p> <p>For information about labels, refer to Google Cloud Documentation: Labeling Resources.</p>
User name and password	These are the credentials for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP cluster admin account. You can use these credentials to connect to Cloud Volumes ONTAP through System Manager or its CLI.

Field	Description
Edit Project	<p>Select the project where you want Cloud Volumes ONTAP to reside. The default project is the project where Cloud Manager resides.</p> <p>If you don't see any additional projects in the drop-down list, then you haven't yet associated the Cloud Manager service account with other projects. Go to the Google Cloud console, open the IAM service, and select the project. Add the service account with the Cloud Manager role to that project. You'll need to repeat this step for each project.</p> <p> This is the service account that you set up for Cloud Manager, as described in step 2b on this page.</p> <p>Click Add Subscription to associate the selected credentials with a subscription.</p> <p>To create a pay-as-you-go Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, you need to select a GCP project that's associated with a subscription to Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the GCP Marketplace.</p>

The following video shows how to associate a pay-as-you-go Marketplace subscription to your GCP project:

► https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/occm/media/video_subscribing_gcp.mp4 (video)

4. **Location & Connectivity:** Select a location, choose a firewall policy, and select the checkbox to confirm network connectivity to Google Cloud storage for data tiering.

If you want to tier cold data to a Google Cloud Storage bucket, the subnet in which Cloud Volumes ONTAP resides must be configured for Private Google Access. For instructions, refer to [Google Cloud Documentation: Configuring Private Google Access](#).

5. **License & Support Site Account:** Specify whether you want to use pay-as-you-go or BYOL, and then specify a NetApp Support Site account.

To understand how licenses work, see [Licensing](#).

A NetApp Support Site Account is optional for pay-as-you-go, but required for BYOL systems. [Learn how to add NetApp Support Site accounts](#).

6. **Preconfigured Packages:** Select one of the packages to quickly deploy a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, or click **Create my own configuration**.

If you choose one of the packages, you only need to specify a volume and then review and approve the configuration.

7. Licensing: Change the Cloud Volumes ONTAP version as needed, select a license, and select a virtual machine type.

If your needs change after you launch the system, you can modify the license or virtual machine type later.



If a newer Release Candidate, General Availability, or patch release is available for the selected version, then Cloud Manager updates the system to that version when creating the working environment. For example, the update occurs if you select Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 RC1 and 9.6 GA is available. The update does not occur from one release to another—for example, from 9.6 to 9.7.

8. Underlying Storage Resources: Choose settings for the initial aggregate: a disk type and the size for each disk.

The disk type is for the initial volume. You can choose a different disk type for subsequent volumes.

The disk size is for all disks in the initial aggregate and for any additional aggregates that Cloud Manager creates when you use the simple provisioning option. You can create aggregates that use a different disk size by using the advanced allocation option.

For help choosing a disk type and size, see [Sizing your system in GCP](#).

9. Write Speed & WORM: Choose **Normal** or **High** write speed, and activate write once, read many (WORM) storage, if desired.

[Learn more about write speed](#).

[Learn more about WORM storage](#).

10. Data Tiering in Google Cloud Platform: Choose whether to enable data tiering on the initial aggregate, choose a storage class for the tiered data, and then either select a service account that has the predefined Storage Admin role (required for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7), or select a GCP account (required for Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6).

Note the following:

- Cloud Manager sets the service account on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance. This service account provides permissions for data tiering to a Google Cloud Storage bucket. Be sure to add the Cloud Manager service account as a user of the tiering service account, otherwise, you can't select it from Cloud Manager.
- For help with adding a GCP account, see [Setting up and adding GCP accounts for data tiering with 9.6](#).
- You can choose a specific volume tiering policy when you create or edit a volume.

- If you disable data tiering, you can enable it on subsequent aggregates, but you'll need to turn off the system and add a service account from the GCP console.

[Learn more about data tiering.](#)

11. **Create Volume:** Enter details for the new volume or click **Skip**.

You should skip this step if you want to use iSCSI. Cloud Manager enables you to create volumes for NFS and CIFS only.

Some of the fields in this page are self-explanatory. The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Size	The maximum size that you can enter largely depends on whether you enable thin provisioning, which enables you to create a volume that is bigger than the physical storage currently available to it.
Access control (for NFS only)	An export policy defines the clients in the subnet that can access the volume. By default, Cloud Manager enters a value that provides access to all instances in the subnet.
Permissions and Users / Groups (for CIFS only)	These fields enable you to control the level of access to a share for users and groups (also called access control lists or ACLs). You can specify local or domain Windows users or groups, or UNIX users or groups. If you specify a domain Windows user name, you must include the user's domain using the format domain\username.
Snapshot Policy	A Snapshot copy policy specifies the frequency and number of automatically created NetApp Snapshot copies. A NetApp Snapshot copy is a point-in-time file system image that has no performance impact and requires minimal storage. You can choose the default policy or none. You might choose none for transient data: for example, tempdb for Microsoft SQL Server.
Advanced options (for NFS only)	Select an NFS version for the volume: either NFSv3 or NFSv4.

The following image shows the Volume page filled out for the CIFS protocol:

The screenshot shows the 'Details & Protection' and 'Protocol' sections of a volume creation form. In the 'Details & Protection' section, 'Volume Name' is set to 'vol1' and 'Size (GB)' is '50'. Under 'Snapshot Policy', 'default' is selected from a dropdown, with a note '(i) Default Policy'. In the 'Protocol' section, 'CIFS Protocol' is selected (radio button is checked). The 'Share name' is 'vol1_share' and 'Permissions' are set to 'Full Control'. Below that, 'Users / Groups' is listed as 'engineering'. A note at the bottom states 'Valid users and groups separated by a semicolon'.

- 12. CIFS Setup:** If you chose the CIFS protocol, set up a CIFS server.

Field	Description
DNS Primary and Secondary IP Address	The IP addresses of the DNS servers that provide name resolution for the CIFS server. The listed DNS servers must contain the service location records (SRV) needed to locate the Active Directory LDAP servers and domain controllers for the domain that the CIFS server will join.
Active Directory Domain to join	The FQDN of the Active Directory (AD) domain that you want the CIFS server to join.
Credentials authorized to join the domain	The name and password of a Windows account with sufficient privileges to add computers to the specified Organizational Unit (OU) within the AD domain.
CIFS server NetBIOS name	A CIFS server name that is unique in the AD domain.
Organizational Unit	The organizational unit within the AD domain to associate with the CIFS server. The default is CN=Computers.
DNS Domain	The DNS domain for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage virtual machine (SVM). In most cases, the domain is the same as the AD domain.
NTP Server	Select Use Active Directory Domain to configure an NTP server using the Active Directory DNS. If you need to configure an NTP server using a different address, then you should use the API. See the Cloud Manager API Developer Guide for details.

- 13. Usage Profile, Disk Type, and Tiering Policy:** Choose whether you want to enable storage efficiency features and change the volume tiering policy, if needed.

For more information, see [Understanding volume usage profiles](#) and [Data tiering overview](#).

- 14. Review & Approve:** Review and confirm your selections.

- a. Review details about the configuration.
- b. Click **More information** to review details about support and the GCP resources that Cloud Manager will purchase.
- c. Select the **I understand...** check boxes.
- d. Click **Go**.

Result

Cloud Manager deploys the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. You can track the progress in the timeline.

If you experience any issues deploying the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, review the failure message. You can also select the working environment and click **Re-create environment**.

For additional help, go to [NetApp Cloud Volumes ONTAP Support](#).

After you finish

- If you provisioned a CIFS share, give users or groups permissions to the files and folders and verify that those users can access the share and create a file.
- If you want to apply quotas to volumes, use System Manager or the CLI.

Quotas enable you to restrict or track the disk space and number of files used by a user, group, or qtree.

Registering pay-as-you-go systems

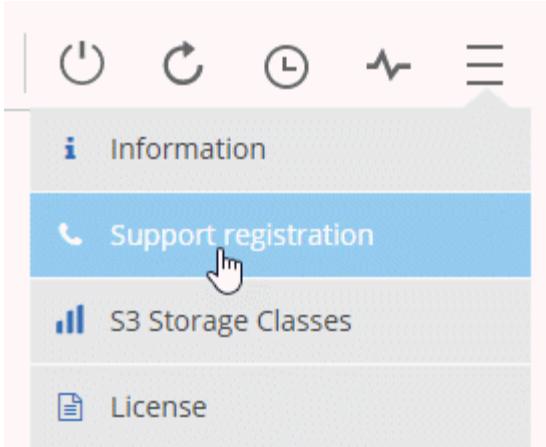
Support from NetApp is included with Cloud Volumes ONTAP Explore, Standard, and Premium systems, but you must first activate support by registering the systems with NetApp.

Steps

1. If you have not yet added your NetApp Support Site account to Cloud Manager, go to **Account Settings** and add it now.

[Learn how to add NetApp Support Site accounts](#).

2. On the Working Environments page, double-click the name of the system that you want to register.
3. Click the menu icon and then click **Support registration**:



4. Select a NetApp Support Site account and click **Register**.

Result

Cloud Manager registers the system with NetApp.

Setting up Cloud Volumes ONTAP

After you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you can set it up by synchronizing the system time using NTP and by performing a few optional tasks from either System Manager or the CLI.

Task	Description
<p>Synchronize the system time using NTP</p>	<p>Specifying an NTP server synchronizes the time between the systems in your network, which can help prevent issues due to time differences.</p> <p>Specify an NTP server using the Cloud Manager API or from the user interface when you set up a CIFS server.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Modifying the CIFS server • Cloud Manager API Developer Guide <p>For example, here's the API for a single-node system in AWS:</p> <pre> POST /vsa/working-environments/{workingEnvironmentId}/ntp Setup NTP server. Operation may only be performed on working environments whose status is: ON, DEGRADED. Parameters Parameter Value Description Parameter Type Data Type workingEnvironmentId [] Public Id of working environment path string body (required) NTP Configuration request body Model Model Schema NTPConfigurationRequest { ntpServer (string): NTPs server } Parameter content type: application/json ▾ Try it out! </pre>
<p>Optional: Configure AutoSupport</p>	<p>AutoSupport proactively monitors the health of your system and automatically sends messages to NetApp technical support by default.</p> <p>If the Account Admin added a proxy server to Cloud Manager before you launched your instance, Cloud Volumes ONTAP is configured to use that proxy server for AutoSupport messages.</p> <p>You should test AutoSupport to ensure that it can send messages. For instructions, see the System Manager Help or the ONTAP 9 System Administration Reference.</p>
<p>Optional: Configure Cloud Manager as the AutoSupport proxy</p>	<p>If your environment requires a proxy server to send AutoSupport messages, you can configure Cloud Manager to act as the proxy. No configuration for Cloud Manager is required, other than internet access. You simply need to go to the CLI for Cloud Volumes ONTAP and run the following command:</p> <pre>system node autosupport modify -proxy-url <cloud-manager-ip-address></pre>

Task	Description
Optional: Configure EMS	<p>The Event Management System (EMS) collects and displays information about events that occur on Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems. To receive event notifications, you can set event destinations (email addresses, SNMP trap hosts, or syslog servers) and event routes for a particular event severity.</p> <p>You can configure EMS using the CLI. For instructions, see the ONTAP 9 EMS Configuration Express Guide.</p>
Optional: Create an SVM management network interface (LIF) for HA systems in multiple AWS Availability Zones	<p>A storage virtual machine (SVM) management network interface (LIF) is required if you want to use SnapCenter or SnapDrive for Windows with an HA pair. The SVM management LIF must use a <i>floating</i> IP address when using an HA pair across multiple AWS Availability Zones.</p> <p>Cloud Manager prompts you to specify the floating IP address when you launch the HA pair. If you did not specify the IP address, you can create the SVM Management LIF yourself from System Manager or the CLI. The following example shows how to create the LIF from the CLI:</p> <pre>network interface create -vserver svm_cloud -lif svm_mgmt -role data -data-protocol none -home-node cloud-01 -home -port e0a -address 10.0.2.126 -netmask 255.255.255.0 -status -admin up -firewall-policy mgmt</pre>
Optional: Change the backup location of configuration files	<p>Cloud Volumes ONTAP automatically creates configuration backup files that contain information about the configurable options that it needs to operate properly.</p> <p>By default, Cloud Volumes ONTAP backs up the files to the Cloud Manager host every eight hours. If you want to send the backups to an alternate location, you can change the location to an FTP or HTTP server in your data center or in AWS. For example, you might already have a backup location for your FAS storage systems.</p> <p>You can change the backup location using the CLI. See the ONTAP 9 System Administration Reference.</p>

Provision and manage storage

Provisioning storage

You can provision additional storage for your Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems from Cloud Manager by managing volumes and aggregates.



All disks and aggregates must be created and deleted directly from Cloud Manager. You should not perform these actions from another management tool. Doing so can impact system stability, hamper the ability to add disks in the future, and potentially generate redundant cloud provider fees.

Creating FlexVol volumes

If you need more storage after you launch a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, you can create new FlexVol volumes for NFS or CIFS from Cloud Manager.

Before you begin

If you want to use CIFS in AWS, you must have set up DNS and Active Directory. For details, see [Networking requirements for Cloud Volumes ONTAP for AWS](#).

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, double-click the name of the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system on which you want to provision FlexVol volumes.
2. Create a new volume on any aggregate or on a specific aggregate:

Action	Steps
Create a new volume and let Cloud Manager choose the containing aggregate	Click Add New Volume .
Create a new volume on a specific aggregate	<ol style="list-style-type: none">a. Click the menu icon, and then click Advanced > Advanced allocation.b. Click the menu for an aggregate.c. Click Create volume.

3. Enter details for the new volume, and then click **Continue**.

Some of the fields in this page are self-explanatory. The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Size	The maximum size that you can enter largely depends on whether you enable thin provisioning, which enables you to create a volume that is bigger than the physical storage currently available to it.
Access control (for NFS only)	An export policy defines the clients in the subnet that can access the volume. By default, Cloud Manager enters a value that provides access to all instances in the subnet.
Permissions and Users / Groups (for CIFS only)	These fields enable you to control the level of access to a share for users and groups (also called access control lists or ACLs). You can specify local or domain Windows users or groups, or UNIX users or groups. If you specify a domain Windows user name, you must include the user's domain using the format domain\username.
Snapshot Policy	A Snapshot copy policy specifies the frequency and number of automatically created NetApp Snapshot copies. A NetApp Snapshot copy is a point-in-time file system image that has no performance impact and requires minimal storage. You can choose the default policy or none. You might choose none for transient data: for example, tempdb for Microsoft SQL Server.
Advanced options (for NFS only)	Select an NFS version for the volume: either NFSv3 or NFSv4.

4. If you chose the CIFS protocol and the CIFS server has not been set up, specify details for the server in the Create a CIFS Server dialog box, and then click **Save and continue**:

Field	Description
DNS Primary and Secondary IP Address	The IP addresses of the DNS servers that provide name resolution for the CIFS server. The listed DNS servers must contain the service location records (SRV) needed to locate the Active Directory LDAP servers and domain controllers for the domain that the CIFS server will join.
Active Directory Domain to join	The FQDN of the Active Directory (AD) domain that you want the CIFS server to join.
Credentials authorized to join the domain	The name and password of a Windows account with sufficient privileges to add computers to the specified Organizational Unit (OU) within the AD domain.
CIFS server NetBIOS name	A CIFS server name that is unique in the AD domain.

Field	Description
Organizational Unit	<p>The organizational unit within the AD domain to associate with the CIFS server. The default is CN=Computers.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> To configure AWS Managed Microsoft AD as the AD server for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you should enter OU=Computers,OU=corp in this field. To configure Azure AD Domain Services as the AD server for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you should enter OU=AADDC Computers or OU=AADDC Users in this field. <p>Azure Documentation: Create an Organizational Unit (OU) in an Azure AD Domain Services managed domain</p>
DNS Domain	<p>The DNS domain for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage virtual machine (SVM). In most cases, the domain is the same as the AD domain.</p>
NTP Server	<p>Select Use Active Directory Domain to configure an NTP server using the Active Directory DNS. If you need to configure an NTP server using a different address, then you should use the API. See the Cloud Manager API Developer Guide for details.</p>

- On the Usage Profile, Disk Type, and Tiering Policy page, choose whether you want to enable storage efficiency features, choose a disk type, and edit the tiering policy, if needed.

For help, refer to the following:

- [Understanding volume usage profiles](#)
- [Sizing your system in AWS](#)
- [Sizing your system in Azure](#)
- [Data tiering overview](#)

- Click **Go**.

Result

Cloud Volumes ONTAP provisions the volume.

After you finish

If you provisioned a CIFS share, give users or groups permissions to the files and folders and verify that those users can access the share and create a file.

If you want to apply quotas to volumes, you must use System Manager or the CLI. Quotas enable you to restrict or track the disk space and number of files used by a user, group, or qtree.

Creating FlexVol volumes on the second node in an HA configuration

By default, Cloud Manager creates volumes on the first node in an HA configuration. If you need an active-active configuration, in which both nodes serve data to clients, you must create aggregates and volumes on the second node.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, double-click the name of the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment on which you want to manage aggregates.
2. Click the menu icon and then click **Advanced > Advanced allocation**.
3. Click **Add Aggregate** and then create the aggregate.
4. For Home Node, choose the second node in the HA pair.
5. After Cloud Manager creates the aggregate, select it and then click **Create volume**.
6. Enter details for the new volume, and then click **Create**.

After you finish

You can create additional volumes on this aggregate if required.



For HA pairs deployed in multiple AWS Availability Zones, you must mount the volume to clients by using the floating IP address of the node on which the volume resides.

Creating aggregates

You can create aggregates yourself or let Cloud Manager do it for you when it creates volumes. The benefit of creating aggregates yourself is that you can choose the underlying disk size, which enables you to size your aggregate for the capacity or the performance that you need.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, double-click the name of the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance on which you want to manage aggregates.
2. Click the menu icon, and then click **Advanced > Advanced allocation**.
3. Click **Add Aggregate** and then specify details for the aggregate.

For help with disk type and disk size, see [Planning your configuration](#).

4. Click **Go**, and then click **Approve and Purchase**.

Provisioning iSCSI LUNs

Create iSCSI LUNs by using a Cloud Manager API or by going to System Manager.

If you want to use the Cloud Manager APIs, [view an example here](#).

If you want to use System Manager, follow the steps below.

Before you begin

- The Host Utilities must be installed and set up on the hosts that will connect to the LUN.
- You must have recorded the iSCSI initiator name from the host. You need to supply this name when you create an igroup for the LUN.
- Before you create volumes in System Manager, you must ensure that you have an aggregate with sufficient space. You need to create aggregates in Cloud Manager. For details, see [Creating aggregates](#).

About this task

These steps describe how to use System Manager for version 9.3 and later.

Steps

1. [Log in to System Manager](#).
2. Click **Storage > LUNs**.
3. Click **Create** and follow the prompts to create the LUN.
4. Connect to the LUN from your hosts.

For instructions, see the [Host Utilities documentation](#) for your operating system.

Using FlexCache volumes to accelerate data access

A FlexCache volume is a storage volume that caches NFS read data from an origin (or source) volume. Subsequent reads to the cached data result in faster access to that data.

You can use FlexCache volumes to speed up access to data or to offload traffic from heavily accessed volumes. FlexCache volumes help improve performance, especially when clients need to access the same data repeatedly, because the data can be served directly without having to access the origin volume. FlexCache volumes work well for system workloads that are read-intensive.

Cloud Manager does not provide management of FlexCache volumes at this time, but you can use the ONTAP CLI or ONTAP System Manager to create and manage FlexCache volumes:

- [FlexCache Volumes for Faster Data Access Power Guide](#)
- [Creating FlexCache volumes in System Manager](#)

Starting with the 3.7.2 release, Cloud Manager generates a FlexCache license for all new Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems. The license includes a 500 GB usage limit.



To generate the license, Cloud Manager needs to access <https://ipa-signer.cloudmanager.netapp.com>. Make sure that this URL is accessible from your firewall.



Managing existing storage

Cloud Manager enables you to manage volumes, aggregates, and CIFS servers. It also prompts you to move volumes to avoid capacity issues.

Managing existing volumes

You can manage existing volumes as your storage needs change. You can view, edit, clone, restore, and delete volumes.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, double-click the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment on which you want to manage volumes.
2. Manage your volumes:

Task	Action
View information about a volume	Select a volume, and then click Info .

Task	Action
Edit a volume (read-write volumes only)	<p>a. Select a volume, and then click Edit.</p> <p>b. Modify the volume's Snapshot policy, NFS protocol version, NFS access control list, or share permissions, and then click Update.</p> <p> If you need custom Snapshot policies, you can create them by using System Manager.</p>
Clone a volume	<p>a. Select a volume, and then click Clone.</p> <p>b. Modify the clone name as needed, and then click Clone.</p> <p>This process creates a FlexClone volume. A FlexClone volume is a writable, point-in-time copy that is space-efficient because it uses a small amount of space for metadata, and then only consumes additional space as data is changed or added.</p> <p>To learn more about FlexClone volumes, see the ONTAP 9 Logical Storage Management Guide.</p>
Restore data from a Snapshot copy to a new volume	<p>a. Select a volume, and then click Restore from Snapshot copy.</p> <p>b. Select a Snapshot copy, enter a name for the new volume, and then click Restore.</p>
Create a Snapshot copy on demand	<p>a. Select a volume, and then click Create a Snapshot copy.</p> <p>b. Change the name, if needed, and then click Create.</p>
Get the NFS mount command	<p>a. Select a volume, and then click Mount Command.</p> <p>b. Click Copy.</p>
Change the underlying disk type	<p>a. Select a volume, and then click Change Disk Type & Tiering Policy.</p> <p>b. Select the disk type, and then click Change.</p> <p> Cloud Manager moves the volume to an existing aggregate that uses the selected disk type or it creates a new aggregate for the volume.</p>

Task	Action
Change the tiering policy	<p>a. Select a volume, and then click Change Disk Type & Tiering Policy.</p> <p>b. Click Edit Policy.</p> <p>c. Select a different policy and click Change.</p> <p> Cloud Manager moves the volume to an existing aggregate that uses the selected disk type with tiering, or it creates a new aggregate for the volume.</p>
Delete a volume	<p>a. Select a volume, and then click Delete.</p> <p>b. Click Delete again to confirm.</p>

Managing existing aggregates

Manage aggregates yourself by adding disks, viewing information about the aggregates, and by deleting them.

Before you begin

If you want to delete an aggregate, you must have first deleted the volumes in the aggregate.

About this task

If an aggregate is running out of space, you can move volumes to another aggregate by using OnCommand System Manager.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, double-click the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment on which you want to manage aggregates.
2. Click the menu icon and then click **Advanced > Advanced allocation**.
3. Manage your aggregates:

Task	Action
View information about an aggregate	Select an aggregate and click Info .
Create a volume on a specific aggregate	Select an aggregate and click Create volume .

Task	Action
Add disks to an aggregate	<p>a. Select an aggregate and click Add AWS disks or Add Azure disks.</p> <p>b. Select the number of disks that you want to add and click Add.</p> <p> All disks in an aggregate must be the same size.</p>
Delete an aggregate	<p>a. Select an aggregate that does not contain any volumes and click Delete.</p> <p>b. Click Delete again to confirm.</p>

Modifying the CIFS server

If you change your DNS servers or Active Directory domain, you need to modify the CIFS server in Cloud Volumes ONTAP so that it can continue to serve storage to clients.

Steps

- From the working environment, click the menu icon and then click **Advanced > CIFS setup**.
- Specify settings for the CIFS server:

Task	Action
DNS Primary and Secondary IP Address	<p>The IP addresses of the DNS servers that provide name resolution for the CIFS server.</p> <p>The listed DNS servers must contain the service location records (SRV) needed to locate the Active Directory LDAP servers and domain controllers for the domain that the CIFS server will join.</p>
Active Directory Domain to join	The FQDN of the Active Directory (AD) domain that you want the CIFS server to join.
Credentials authorized to join the domain	The name and password of a Windows account with sufficient privileges to add computers to the specified Organizational Unit (OU) within the AD domain.
CIFS server NetBIOS name	A CIFS server name that is unique in the AD domain.
Organizational Unit	<p>The organizational unit within the AD domain to associate with the CIFS server. The default is CN=Computers.</p> <p>If you configure AWS Managed Microsoft AD as the AD server for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you should enter OU=Computers,OU=corp in this field.</p>

Task	Action
DNS Domain	The DNS domain for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage virtual machine (SVM). In most cases, the domain is the same as the AD domain.
NTP Server	Select Use Active Directory Domain to configure an NTP server using the Active Directory DNS. If you need to configure an NTP server using a different address, then you should use the API. See the Cloud Manager API Developer Guide for details.

3. Click **Save**.

Result

Cloud Volumes ONTAP updates the CIFS server with the changes.

Moving a volume

Move volumes for capacity utilization, improved performance, and to satisfy service-level agreements.

You can move a volume in System Manager by selecting a volume and the destination aggregate, starting the volume move operation, and optionally monitoring the volume move job. When using System Manager, a volume move operation finishes automatically.

Steps

1. Use System Manager or the CLI to move the volumes to the aggregate.

In most situations, you can use System Manager to move volumes.

For instructions, see the [ONTAP 9 Volume Move Express Guide](#).

Moving a volume when Cloud Manager displays an Action Required message

Cloud Manager might display an Action Required message that says moving a volume is necessary to avoid capacity issues, but that it cannot provide recommendations to correct the issue. If this happens, you need to identify how to correct the issue and then move one or more volumes.

Steps

1. [Identify how to correct the issue](#).
2. Based on your analysis, move volumes to avoid capacity issues:
 - [Move volumes to another system](#).
 - [Move volumes to another aggregate on the same system](#).

Identifying how to correct capacity issues

If Cloud Manager cannot provide recommendations for moving a volume to avoid capacity issues, you

must identify the volumes that you need to move and whether you should move them to another aggregate on the same system or to another system.

Steps

1. View the advanced information in the Action Required message to identify the aggregate that has reached its capacity limit.

For example, the advanced information should say something similar to the following: Aggregate aggr1 has reached its capacity limit.

2. Identify one or more volumes to move out of the aggregate:

- a. In the working environment, click the menu icon, and then click **Advanced > Advanced allocation**.
- b. Select the aggregate, and then click **Info**.
- c. Expand the list of volumes.

Used Aggregate Capacity: 105.66 GB

Volumes:	4
Vol54 (54 GB)	
data_vol (150 GB)	
svm_FinanceOnPrem_root (1 GB)	

- d. Review the size of each volume and choose one or more volumes to move out of the aggregate.

You should choose volumes that are large enough to free space in the aggregate so that you avoid additional capacity issues in the future.

3. If the system has not reached the disk limit, you should move the volumes to an existing aggregate or a new aggregate on the same system.

For details, see [Moving volumes to another aggregate to avoid capacity issues](#).

4. If the system has reached the disk limit, do any of the following:

- a. Delete any unused volumes.
- b. Rearrange volumes to free space on an aggregate.

For details, see [Moving volumes to another aggregate to avoid capacity issues](#).

- c. Move two or more volumes to another system that has space.

For details, see [Moving volumes to another system to avoid capacity issues](#).

Moving volumes to another system to avoid capacity issues

You can move one or more volumes to another Cloud Volumes ONTAP system to avoid capacity issues. You might need to do this if the system reached its disk limit.

About this task

You can follow the steps in this task to correct the following Action Required message:

Moving a volume is necessary to avoid capacity issues; however, Cloud Manager cannot perform this action for you because the system has reached the disk limit.

Steps

1. Identify a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that has available capacity, or deploy a new system.
2. Drag and drop the source working environment on the target working environment to perform a one-time data replication of the volume.

For details, see [Replicating data between systems](#).

3. Go to the Replication Status page, and then break the SnapMirror relationship to convert the replicated volume from a data protection volume to a read/write volume.

For details, see [Managing data replication schedules and relationships](#).

4. Configure the volume for data access.

For information about configuring a destination volume for data access, see the [ONTAP 9 Volume Disaster Recovery Express Guide](#).

5. Delete the original volume.

For details, see [Managing existing volumes](#).

Moving volumes to another aggregate to avoid capacity issues

You can move one or more volumes to another aggregate to avoid capacity issues.

About this task

You can follow the steps in this task to correct the following Action Required message:

Moving two or more volumes is necessary to avoid capacity issues; however, Cloud Manager cannot perform this action for you.

Steps

1. Verify whether an existing aggregate has available capacity for the volumes that you need to move:
 - a. In the working environment, click the menu icon, and then click **Advanced > Advanced allocation**.
 - b. Select each aggregate, click **Info**, and then view the available capacity (aggregate capacity minus used aggregate capacity).

aggr1

Aggregate Capacity: 442.94 GB

Used Aggregate Capacity: 105.66 GB

2. If needed, add disks to an existing aggregate:
 - a. Select the aggregate, and then click **Add disks**.
 - b. Select the number of disks to add, and then click **Add**.
3. If no aggregates have available capacity, create a new aggregate.

For details, see [Creating aggregates](#).

4. Use System Manager or the CLI to move the volumes to the aggregate.
5. In most situations, you can use System Manager to move volumes.

For instructions, see the [ONTAP 9 Volume Move Express Guide](#).

Reasons why a volume move might perform slowly

Moving a volume might take longer than you expect if any of the following conditions are true for Cloud Volumes ONTAP:

- The volume is a clone.
- The volume is a parent of a clone.
- The source or destination aggregate has a single Throughput Optimized HDD (st1) disk.
- The Cloud Volumes ONTAP system is in AWS and one aggregate uses an older naming scheme for objects. Both aggregates have to use the same name format.

An older naming scheme is used if data tiering was enabled on an aggregate in the 9.4 release or earlier.

- The encryption settings don't match on the source and destination aggregates, or a rekey is in

progress.

- The `-tiering-policy` option was specified on the volume move to change the tiering policy.
- The `-generate-destination-key` option was specified on the volume move.

Tiering inactive data to low-cost object storage

You can reduce storage costs by combining an SSD or HDD performance tier for hot data with an object storage capacity tier for inactive data. For a high-level overview, see [Data tiering overview](#).

To set up data tiering, you simply need to do the following:



Choose a supported configuration

Most configurations are supported. If you have a Cloud Volumes ONTAP Standard, Premium, or BYOL system running the most recent version, then you should be good to go. [Learn more](#).



Ensure connectivity between Cloud Volumes ONTAP and object storage

- For AWS, you'll need a VPC Endpoint to S3. [Learn more](#).
- For Azure, you won't need to do anything as long as Cloud Manager has the required permissions. [Learn more](#).
- For GCP, you need to configure the subnet for Private Google Access and set up a service account. [Learn more](#).



Choose a tiering policy when creating, modifying, or replicating a volume

Cloud Manager prompts you to choose a tiering policy when you create, modify, or replicate a volume.

- [Tiering data on read-write volumes](#)
- [Tiering data on data protection volumes](#)

What's not required for data tiering



- You don't need to install a feature license to enable data tiering.
- You don't need to create the capacity tier (an S3 bucket, Azure Blob container, or GCP bucket). Cloud Manager does that for you.

Configurations that support data tiering

You can enable data tiering when using specific configurations and features:

- Data tiering is supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP Standard, Premium, and BYOL, starting with the following versions:
 - Version 9.2 in AWS
 - Version 9.4 in Azure with single node systems
 - Version 9.6 in Azure with HA pairs
 - Version 9.6 in GCP



Data tiering is not supported in Azure with the DS3_v2 virtual machine type.

- In AWS, the performance tier can be General Purpose SSDs, Provisioned IOPS SSDs, or Throughput Optimized HDDs.
- In Azure, the performance tier can be Premium SSD managed disks, Standard SSD managed disks, or Standard HDD managed disks.
- In GCP, the performance tier can be either SSDs or HDDs (standard disks).
- Data tiering is supported with encryption technologies.
- Thin provisioning must be enabled on volumes.

Requirements to tier cold data to AWS S3

Ensure that Cloud Volumes ONTAP has a connection to S3. The best way to provide that connection is by creating a VPC Endpoint to the S3 service. For instructions, see [AWS Documentation: Creating a Gateway Endpoint](#).

When you create the VPC Endpoint, be sure to select the region, VPC, and route table that corresponds to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance. You must also modify the security group to add an outbound HTTPS rule that enables traffic to the S3 endpoint. Otherwise, Cloud Volumes ONTAP cannot connect to the S3 service.

If you experience any issues, see [AWS Support Knowledge Center: Why can't I connect to an S3 bucket using a gateway VPC endpoint?](#).

Requirements to tier cold data to Azure Blob storage

You don't need to set up a connection between the performance tier and the capacity tier as long as Cloud Manager has the required permissions. Cloud Manager enables a VNet service endpoint for you if the Cloud Manager policy has these permissions:

```
"Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks/subnets/write",
"Microsoft.Network/routeTables/join/action",
```

The permissions are included in the latest [Cloud Manager policy](#).

Requirements to tier cold data to a Google Cloud Storage bucket

- The subnet in which Cloud Volumes ONTAP resides must be configured for Private Google Access. For instructions, refer to [Google Cloud Documentation: Configuring Private Google Access](#).
- Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7: You need to create a service account that has the predefined Storage Admin role. You'll need to select this service account when you create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment. For more details, see step 3 in [Getting started with Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Google Cloud Platform](#).

If you don't enable data tiering and select a service account when you create the Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 system, then you'll need to turn off the system and add the service account to Cloud Volumes ONTAP from the GCP console.

- Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6: You need to add a Google Cloud Platform account to Cloud Manager by entering storage access keys for a service account. The keys enable Cloud Manager to set up a Cloud Storage bucket for data tiering. For instructions, see [Setting up and adding GCP accounts for data tiering with 9.6](#).

Tiering data from read-write volumes

Cloud Volumes ONTAP can tier inactive data on read-write volumes to cost-effective object storage, freeing up the performance tier for hot data.

Steps

1. In the working environment, create a new volume or change the tier of an existing volume:

Task	Action
Create a new volume	Click Add New Volume .
Modify an existing volume	Select the volume and click Change Disk Type & Tiering Policy .

2. Select the Snapshot Only policy or the Auto policy.

For a description of these policies, see [Data tiering overview](#).

Example



Tiering data to object storage

Volume Tiering Policy

- Auto - Tiers cold Snapshot copies and cold user data from the active file system to object storage.
- Snapshot Only - Tiers cold Snapshot copies to object storage
- None - Data tiering is disabled.

Cloud Manager creates a new aggregate for the volume if a data tiering-enabled aggregate does not already exist.



If you prefer to create aggregates yourself, you can enable data tiering on aggregates when you create them.

Tiering data from data protection volumes

Cloud Volumes ONTAP can tier data from a data protection volume to a capacity tier. If you activate the destination volume, the data gradually moves to the performance tier as it is read.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, select the working environment that contains the source volume, and then drag it to the working environment to which you want to replicate the volume.
2. Follow the prompts until you reach the tiering page and enable data tiering to object storage.

Example



S3 Tiering

What are storage tiers?

- Enabled
- Disabled

Note: If you enable S3 tiering, thin provisioning must be enabled on volumes created in this aggregate.

For help with replicating data, see [Replicating data to and from the cloud](#).

Changing the storage class for tiered data

After you deploy Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you can reduce your storage costs by changing the storage class for inactive data that hasn't been accessed for 30 days. The access costs are higher if you do access the data, so you must take that into consideration before you change the storage class.

The storage class for tiered data is system wide—it's not per volume.

For information about supported storage classes, see [Data tiering overview](#).

Steps

1. From the working environment, click the menu icon and then click **Storage Classes** or **Blob Storage Tiering**.
2. Choose a storage class and then click **Save**.

Using ONTAP as persistent storage for Kubernetes

Cloud Manager can automate the deployment of [NetApp Trident](#) on Kubernetes clusters so you can use ONTAP as persistent storage for containers. This works with Cloud Volumes ONTAP and on-prem ONTAP clusters.

Before you complete these steps, you need to [create a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system](#) or [discover an on-premises ONTAP cluster](#) from Cloud Manager.



Verify network connectivity

- a. A network connection must be available between Cloud Manager and the Kubernetes clusters, and from the Kubernetes clusters to ONTAP systems.
- b. Cloud Manager needs an outbound internet connection to access the following endpoints when installing Trident:
<https://packages.cloud.google.com/yum>
<https://github.com/NetApp/trident/releases/download/>

Cloud Manager installs Trident on a Kubernetes cluster when you connect a working environment to the cluster.



Upload Kubernetes configuration files to Cloud Manager

For each Kubernetes cluster, the Account Admin needs to upload a configuration file (kubeconfig) that is in YAML format. After you upload the file, Cloud Manager verifies connectivity to the cluster and saves an encrypted copy of the kubeconfig file.

Click **K8s > Discover > Upload File** and select the kubeconfig file.

A Compliance Replication **K8s** Backup Monitoring OnPrem T
S

Let's discover your first Kubernetes cluster

B

Upload Kubernetes Configuration File

Upload the Kubernetes configuration file (kubeconfig) so Cloud Manager can install Trident on the Kubernetes cluster.

Connecting Cloud Volumes ONTAP with a Kubernetes cluster enables users to request and manage persistent volumes using native Kubernetes interfaces and constructs. Users can take advantage of ONTAP's advanced data management features without having to know anything about it. Storage provisioning is enabled by using NetApp Trident.

Learn more about [Trident for Kubernetes](#).

Upload File

3 Connect your working environments to Kubernetes clusters

From the working environment, click the Kubernetes icon and follow the prompts. You can connect different clusters to different ONTAP systems and multiple clusters to the same ONTAP system.

You have the option to set the NetApp storage class as the default storage class for the Kubernetes cluster. When a user creates a persistent volume, the Kubernetes cluster can use connected ONTAP systems as the backend storage by default.

A

Azure | Azure Managed Encryption

B

Persistent Volumes for Kubernetes

Select a Kubernetes cluster to connect with this Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. If the Kubernetes cluster is in a different network than Cloud Volumes ONTAP, specify a custom export policy to provide access to clients.

Kubernetes Cluster	Custom Export Policy (Optional)
Select Kubernetes Cluster	Custom Export Policy
netjyjbung	172.17.0.0/16

Set as default storage class

Connect **Cancel**

4 Start provisioning Persistent Volumes

Request and manage Persistent Volumes using native Kubernetes interfaces and constructs. Cloud Manager creates four Kubernetes storage classes that you can use when provisioning Persistent Volumes:

- **netapp-file**: for binding Persistent Volumes to single-node ONTAP systems
- **netapp-file-san**: for binding iSCSI Persistent Volumes to single-node ONTAP systems
- **netapp-file-redundant**: for binding Persistent Volumes to ONTAP HA pairs
- **netapp-file-redundant-san**: for binding iSCSI Persistent Volumes to ONTAP HA pairs

Cloud Manager configures Trident to use the following provisioning options by default:

- Thin volumes
- The default Snapshot policy
- Accessible Snapshot directory

[Learn more about provisioning your first volume with Trident for Kubernetes](#)

What are the trident_trident volumes?

Cloud Manager creates a volume on the first ONTAP system that you connect to a Kubernetes cluster. The name of the volume is appended with "_trident_trident." ONTAP uses this volume to connect to the Kubernetes cluster. You should not delete these volumes.

What happens when you disconnect or remove a Kubernetes cluster?

Cloud Manager enables you to disconnect individual ONTAP systems from a Kubernetes cluster. When you disconnect a system, you can no longer use that ONTAP system as persistent storage for containers. Existing Persistent Volumes are not deleted.

After you disconnect all systems from a Kubernetes cluster, you can also remove the entire Kubernetes configuration from Cloud Manager. Cloud Manager does not uninstall Trident when you remove the cluster and it does not delete any Persistent Volumes.

Both of these actions are available through APIs only. We plan to add the actions to the interface in a future release.

[Click here for details about the APIs.](#)

Encrypting volumes with NetApp encryption solutions

Cloud Volumes ONTAP supports both NetApp Volume Encryption (NVE) and NetApp Aggregate Encryption (NAE) with an external key manager. NVE and NAE are software-based solutions that enable (FIPS) 140-2-compliant data-at-rest encryption of volumes. [Learn more about these encryption solutions.](#)

Starting with Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7, new aggregates will have NAE enabled by default after you set up an external key manager. New volumes that aren't part of an NAE aggregate will have NVE enabled by default (for example, if you have existing aggregates that were created before setting up an external key manager).

Cloud Volumes ONTAP doesn't support onboard key management.

What you'll need

Your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system should be registered with NetApp support. Starting with Cloud Manager 3.7.1, a NetApp Volume Encryption license is automatically installed on each Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that is registered with NetApp Support.

- [Adding NetApp Support Site accounts to Cloud Manager](#)
- [Registering pay-as-you-go systems](#)



Cloud Manager doesn't install the NVE license on systems that reside in the China region.

Steps

1. Review the list of supported key managers in the [NetApp Interoperability Matrix Tool](#).
 Search for the **Key Managers** solution.
2. [Connect to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP CLI](#).
3. Install SSL certificates and connect to the external key management servers.

[ONTAP 9 NetApp Encryption Power Guide: Configuring external key management](#)

Replicating data between systems

You can replicate data between working environments by choosing a one-time data replication for data transfer, or a recurring schedule for disaster recovery or long-term retention. For example, you can set up data replication from an on-prem ONTAP system to Cloud Volumes ONTAP for disaster recovery.

Cloud Manager simplifies data replication between volumes on separate systems using SnapMirror and SnapVault technologies. You simply need to identify the source volume and the destination volume, and then choose a replication policy and schedule. Cloud Manager purchases the required disks, configures relationships, applies the replication policy, and then initiates the baseline transfer between volumes.



The baseline transfer includes a full copy of the source data. Subsequent transfers contain differential copies of the source data.

Data replication requirements

Before you can replicate data, you should confirm that specific requirements are met for both Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems and ONTAP clusters.

Version requirements

You should verify that the source and destination volumes are running compatible ONTAP versions before replicating data. For details, see the [Data Protection Power Guide](#).

Requirements specific to Cloud Volumes ONTAP

- The instance's security group must include the required inbound and outbound rules; specifically, rules for ICMP and ports 11104 and 11105.

These rules are included in the predefined security group.

- To replicate data between two Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in different subnets, the subnets must be routed together (this is the default setting).
- To replicate data between a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in AWS and a system in Azure, you must have a VPN connection between the AWS VPC and the Azure VNet.

Requirements specific to ONTAP clusters

- An active SnapMirror license must be installed.
- If the cluster is on your premises, you should have a connection from your corporate network to AWS or Azure, which is typically a VPN connection.
- ONTAP clusters must meet additional subnet, port, firewall, and cluster requirements.

For details, see the Cluster and SVM Peering Express Guide for your version of ONTAP.

Setting up data replication between systems

You can replicate data between Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems and ONTAP clusters by choosing a one-time data replication, which can help you move data to and from the cloud, or a recurring schedule, which can help with disaster recovery or long-term retention.

About this task

Cloud Manager supports simple, fanout, and cascade data protection configurations:

- In a simple configuration, replication occurs from volume A to volume B.
- In a fanout configuration, replication occurs from volume A to multiple destinations.
- In a cascade configuration, replication occurs from volume A to volume B and from volume B to volume C.

You can configure fanout and cascade configurations in Cloud Manager by setting up multiple data replications between systems. For example, by replicating a volume from system A to system B and then by replicating the same volume from system B to system C.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, select the working environment that contains the source

volume, and then drag it to the working environment to which you want to replicate the volume:



2. If the Source and Destination Peering Setup pages appear, select all of the intercluster LIFs for the cluster peer relationship.

The intercluster network should be configured so that cluster peers have *pair-wise full-mesh connectivity*, which means that each pair of clusters in a cluster peer relationship has connectivity among all of their intercluster LIFs.

These pages appear if an ONTAP cluster that has multiple LIFs is the source or destination.

3. On the Source Volume Selection page, select the volume that you want to replicate.
4. On the Destination Volume Name and Tiering page, specify the destination volume name, choose an underlying disk type, change any of the advanced options, and then click **Continue**.

If the destination is an ONTAP cluster, you must also specify the destination SVM and aggregate.

5. On the Max Transfer Rate page, specify the maximum rate (in megabytes per second) at which data can be transferred.
6. On the Replication Policy page, choose one of the default policies or click **Additional Policies**, and then select one of the advanced policies.

For help, see [Choosing a replication policy](#).

If you choose a custom backup (SnapVault) policy, the labels associated with the policy must match the labels of the Snapshot copies on the source volume. For more information, see [How backup policies work](#).

7. On the Schedule page, choose a one-time copy or a recurring schedule.

Several default schedules are available. If you want a different schedule, you must create a new schedule on the *destination* cluster using System Manager.

8. On the Review page, review your selections, and then click **Go**.

Result

Cloud Manager starts the data replication process. You can view details about the replication in the Replication Status page.

Managing data replication schedules and relationships

After you set up data replication between two systems, you can manage the data replication schedule and relationship from Cloud Manager.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, view the replication status for all working environments in the workspace or for a specific working environment:

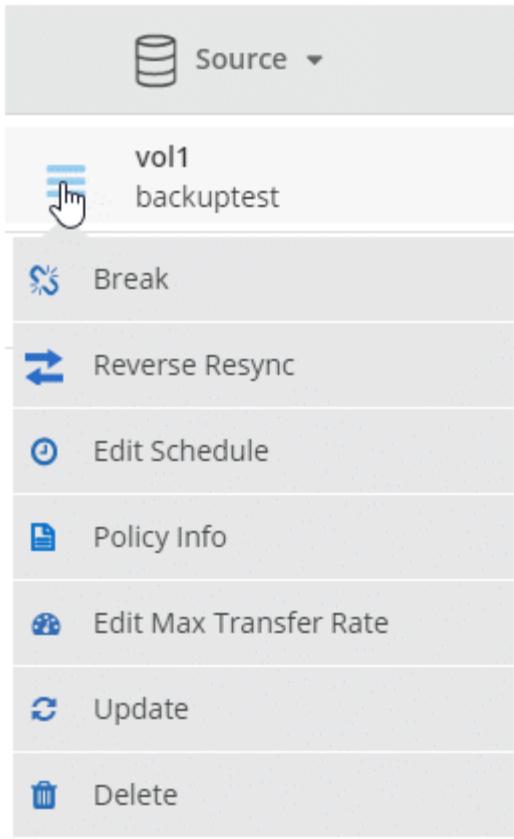
Option	Action
All working environments in the workspace	At the top of Cloud Manager, click Replication Status .
A specific working environment	Open the working environment and click Replications .

2. Review the status of the data replication relationships to verify that they are healthy.



If the Status of a relationship is idle and the Mirror State is uninitialized, you must initialize the relationship from the destination system for the data replication to occur according to the defined schedule. You can initialize the relationship by using System Manager or the command-line interface (CLI). These states can appear when the destination system fails and then comes back online.

3. Select the menu icon next to the source volume, and then choose one of the available actions.



The following table describes the available actions:

Action	Description
Break	<p>Breaks the relationship between the source and destination volumes, and activates the destination volume for data access.</p> <p>This option is typically used when the source volume cannot serve data due to events such as data corruption, accidental deletion, or an offline state.</p> <p>For information about configuring a destination volume for data access and reactivating a source volume, see the ONTAP 9 Volume Disaster Recovery Express Guide.</p>

Action	Description
Resync	<p>Reestablishes a broken relationship between volumes and resumes data replication according to the defined schedule.</p> <p> When you resynchronize the volumes, the contents on the destination volume are overwritten by the contents on the source volume.</p> <p>To perform a reverse resync, which resynchronizes the data from the destination volume to the source volume, see the ONTAP 9 Volume Disaster Recovery Express Guide.</p>
Reverse Resync	<p>Reverses the roles of the source and destination volumes. Contents from the original source volume are overwritten by contents of the destination volume. This is helpful when you want to reactivate a source volume that went offline.</p> <p>Any data written to the original source volume between the last data replication and the time that the source volume was disabled is not preserved.</p>
Edit Schedule	Enables you to choose a different schedule for data replication.
Policy Info	Shows you the protection policy assigned to the data replication relationship.
Edit Max Transfer Rate	Enables you to edit the maximum rate (in kilobytes per second) at which data can be transferred.
Update	Starts an incremental transfer to update the destination volume.
Delete	Deletes the data protection relationship between the source and destination volumes, which means that data replication no longer occurs between the volumes. This action does not activate the destination volume for data access. This action also deletes the cluster peer relationship and the storage virtual machine (SVM) peer relationship, if there are no other data protection relationships between the systems.

Result

After you select an action, Cloud Manager updates the relationship or schedule.

Choosing a replication policy

You might need help choosing a replication policy when you set up data replication in Cloud Manager. A replication policy defines how the storage system replicates data from a source volume to a destination volume.

What replication policies do

The ONTAP operating system automatically creates backups called Snapshot copies. A Snapshot copy is

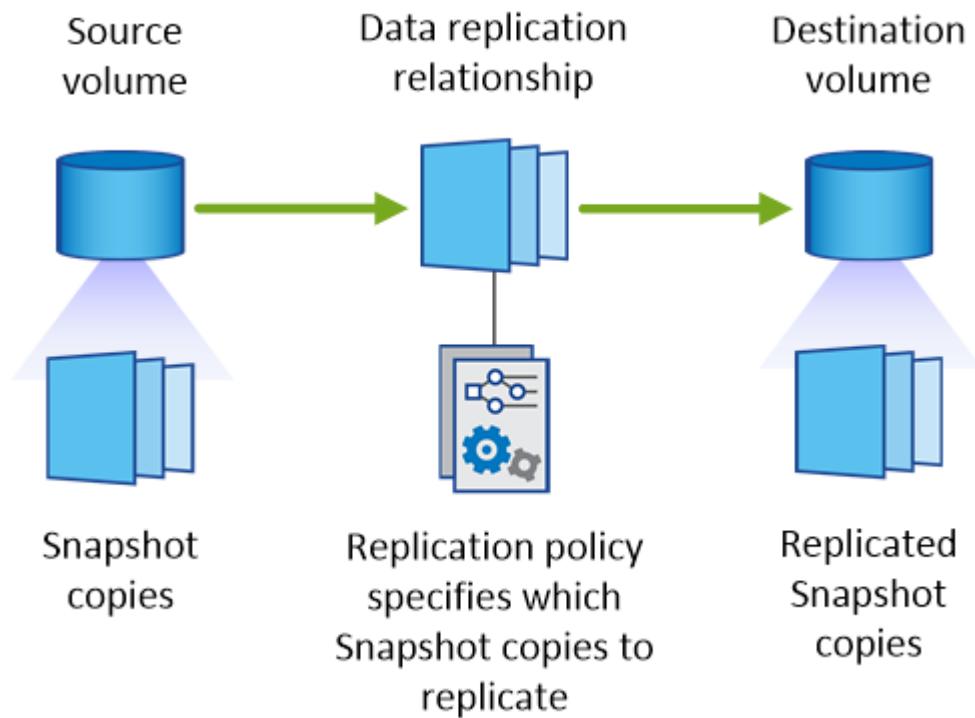
a read-only image of a volume that captures the state of the file system at a point in time.

When you replicate data between systems, you replicate Snapshot copies from a source volume to a destination volume. A replication policy specifies which Snapshot copies to replicate from the source volume to the destination volume.



Replication policies are also referred to as *protection* policies because they are powered by SnapMirror and SnapVault technologies, which provide disaster recovery protection and disk-to-disk backup and recovery.

The following image shows the relationship between Snapshot copies and replication policies:



Types of replication policies

There are three types of replication policies:

- A *Mirror* policy replicates newly created Snapshot copies to a destination volume.

You can use these Snapshot copies to protect the source volume in preparation for disaster recovery or for one-time data replication. You can activate the destination volume for data access at any time.

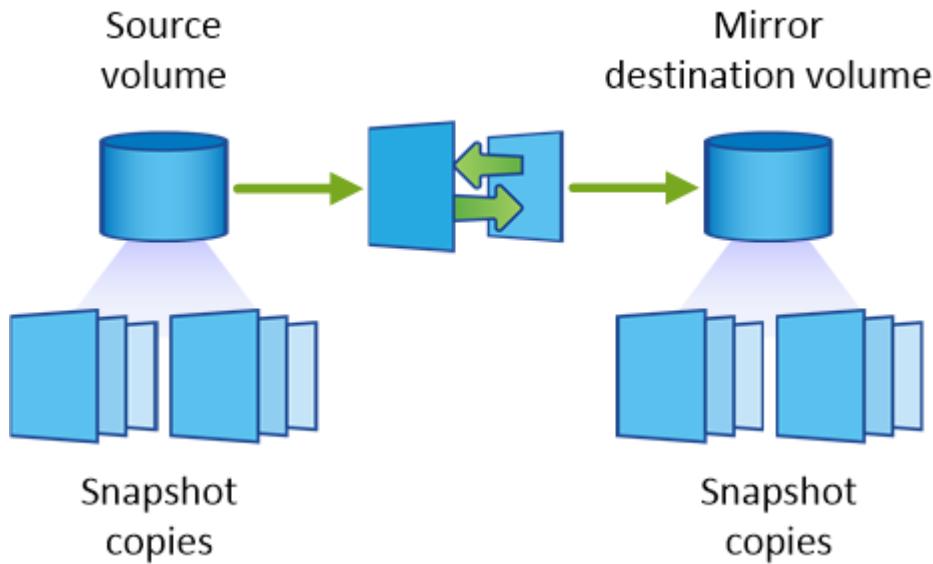
- A *Backup* policy replicates specific Snapshot copies to a destination volume and typically retains them for a longer period of time than you would on the source volume.

You can restore data from these Snapshot copies when data is corrupted or lost, and retain them for standards compliance and other governance-related purposes.

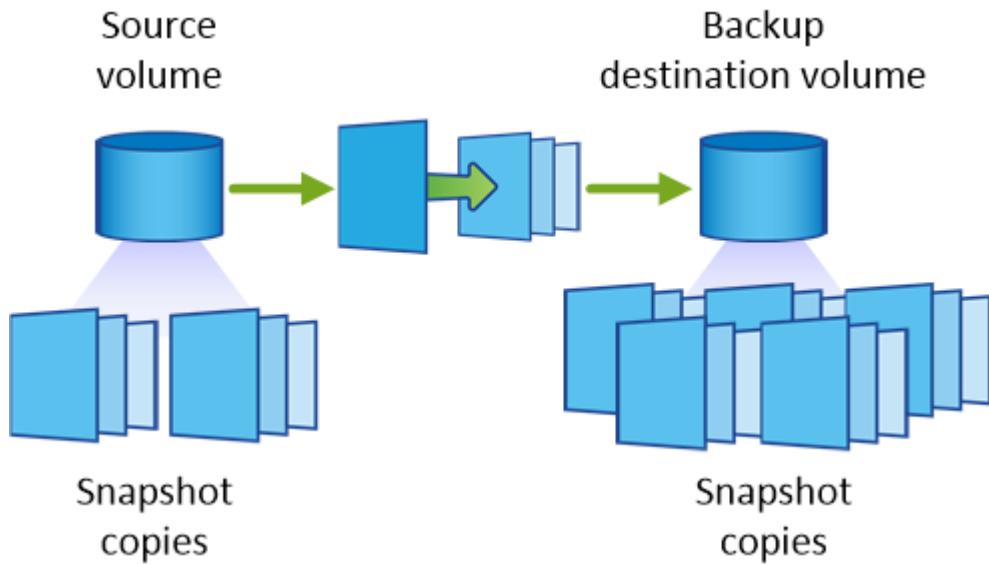
- A *Mirror and Backup* policy provides both disaster recovery and long-term retention.

Each system includes a default Mirror and Backup policy, which works well for many situations. If you find that you need custom policies, you can create your own using System Manager.

The following images show the difference between the Mirror and Backup policies. A Mirror policy mirrors the Snapshot copies available on the source volume.



A Backup policy typically retains Snapshot copies longer than they are retained on the source volume:



How Backup policies work

Unlike Mirror policies, Backup (SnapVault) policies replicate specific Snapshot copies to a destination volume. It is important to understand how Backup policies work if you want to use your own policies instead of the default policies.

Understanding the relationship between Snapshot copy labels and Backup policies

A Snapshot policy defines how the system creates Snapshot copies of volumes. The policy specifies when to create the Snapshot copies, how many copies to retain, and how to label them. For example, a system might create one Snapshot copy every day at 12:10 a.m., retain the two most recent copies, and label them "daily".

A Backup policy includes rules that specify which labeled Snapshot copies to replicate to a destination volume and how many copies to retain. The labels defined in a Backup policy must match one or more labels defined in a Snapshot policy. Otherwise, the system cannot replicate any Snapshot copies.

For example, a Backup policy that includes the labels "daily" and "weekly" results in replication of Snapshot copies that include only those labels. No other Snapshot copies are replicated, as shown in the following image:

Default policies and custom policies

The default Snapshot policy creates hourly, daily, and weekly Snapshot copies, retaining six hourly, two daily, and two weekly Snapshot copies.

You can easily use a default Backup policy with the default Snapshot policy. The default Backup policies replicate daily and weekly Snapshot copies, retaining seven daily and 52 weekly Snapshot copies.

If you create custom policies, the labels defined by those policies must match. You can create custom policies using System Manager.

Backup to Cloud

Learn about Backup to Cloud

Backup to Cloud is an add-on service for Cloud Volumes ONTAP that delivers backup and restore capabilities for protection, and long-term archive of your cloud data. Backups are stored in an object store in your cloud account, independent of volume Snapshot copies used for near-term recovery or cloning.

Backup to Cloud is powered by the [Cloud Backup Service](#).



You must use Cloud Manager for all backup and restore operations. Any actions taken directly from ONTAP or from your cloud provider results in an unsupported configuration.

Features

- Back up independent copies of your data volumes to low-cost object storage in the cloud.
Backup data is secured with AES-256 bit encryption at-rest and TLS 1.2 HTTPS connections in-flight.
- Restore data from a specific point in time.
- Restore the data to the source Cloud Volumes ONTAP system or to a different system.

Supported object storage providers

Backup to Cloud is supported with the following types of working environments:

- Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS
- Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure

Cost

You'll need to pay your cloud provider for object storage costs and NetApp for backup licensing costs. The licensing costs are based on used capacity (before storage efficiencies).

- AWS: A 30-day free trial is available. [Go to the Cloud Manager Marketplace offering for pricing details.](#)
- Azure: A 30-day free trial is available. [Go to the Cloud Manager Marketplace offering for pricing details.](#)

How Backup to Cloud works

When you enable Backup to Cloud, the service performs a full backup of your data. After the initial backup, all additional backups are incremental, which means that only changed blocks and new blocks are backed up.

Where backups reside

Backup copies are stored in an S3 bucket or Azure Blob container that Cloud Manager creates in your cloud account. The object store is created in the same region where the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system is located. There's one object store per Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

Cloud Manager names the object store as follows: `netapp-backup-clusteruuid`

Be sure not to delete this object store.

Notes:

- In AWS, Cloud Manager enables the [Amazon S3 Block Public Access feature](#) on the S3 bucket.
- In Azure, Cloud Manager creates a new resource group with a storage account for the Blob container.

Supported S3 storage classes

In Amazon S3, backups start in the *Standard* storage class and transition to the *Standard-Infrequent Access* storage class after 30 days.

Supported Azure Blob access tiers

In Azure, each backup is associated with the *cold* access tier.

Backup settings are system wide

When you enable Backup to Cloud, *all* supported volumes on the system are backed up to the cloud.

The schedule and number of backups to retain are defined at the system level. The backup settings affect all volumes on the system.

The schedule is daily, or weekly, or monthly

You can choose daily, or weekly, or monthly backups of all volumes. A combination of these backup frequency options isn't supported.

Backups are taken at midnight

- Daily backups start just after midnight each day.
- Weekly backups start just after midnight on Sunday mornings.
- Monthly backups start just after midnight on the first of each month.

At this time, you can't schedule backup operations at a user specified time.

Backup copies are associated with your Cloud Central account

Backup copies are associated with the [Cloud Central account](#) in which Cloud Manager resides.

If you have multiple Cloud Manager systems in the same Cloud Central account, each Cloud Manager system will display the same list of backups. That includes the backups associated with Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances from other Cloud Manager systems.

Supported volumes

Backup to Cloud supports read-write volumes only.

FlexGroup volumes and data protection volumes aren't supported.

Limitations

- Volumes that you create outside of Cloud Manager aren't automatically backed up.

For example, if you create a volume from the ONTAP CLI, ONTAP API, or System Manager, then the volume won't be automatically backed up.

If you want to back up these volumes, you would need to disable Backup to Cloud and then enable it again.

- Backup to Cloud can maintain up to 1,019 total backups of a volume.
- In Azure, if you enable Backup to Cloud when Cloud Volumes ONTAP is deployed, Cloud Manager creates the resource group for you and you cannot change it. If you want to pick your own resource group when enabling Backup to Cloud, **disable** Backup to Cloud when deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP and then enable Backup to Cloud and choose the resource group from the Backup to Cloud Settings page.
- WORM storage is not supported on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system when Backup to Cloud is enabled.

Get started

Backing up data to Amazon S3

Complete a few steps to get started backing up data from Cloud Volumes ONTAP to Amazon S3.

Quick start

Get started quickly by following these steps or scroll down to the remaining sections for full details.



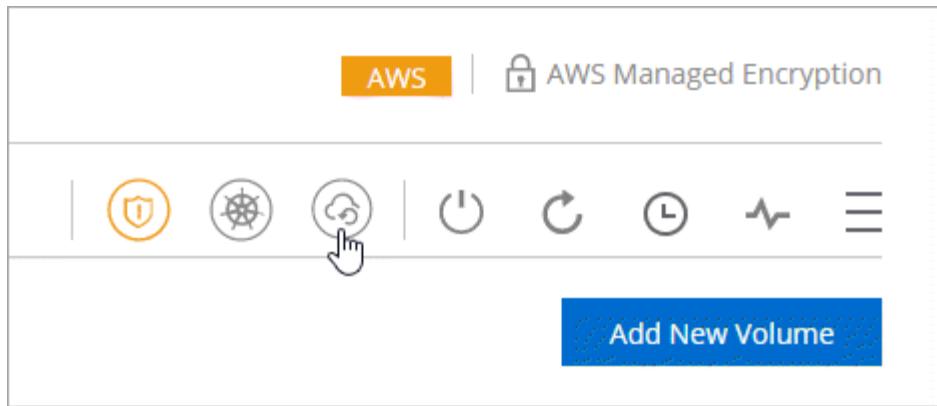
Verify support for your configuration

- You're running Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 or later in AWS.
- You have subscribed to the new [Cloud Manager Marketplace offering](#).
- The IAM role that provides Cloud Manager with permissions includes S3 permissions from the latest [Cloud Manager policy](#).



Enable Backup to Cloud on your new or existing system

- New systems: Backup to Cloud is enabled by default in the working environment wizard. Be sure to keep the option enabled.
- Existing systems: Open the working environment, click the backup settings icon and enable backups.



3

If needed, modify the backup policy

The default policy backs up volumes every day and retains the most recent 30 backup copies of each volume. Change to weekly or monthly backups, or select one of the system-defined policies that provide more options. You can also change the number of backup copies to retain.



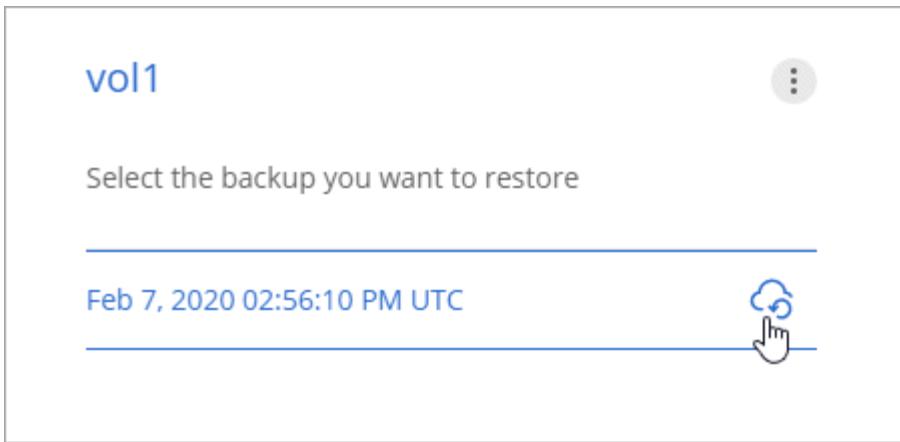
Backup to Cloud Settings

A screenshot of a backup configuration dialog. At the top left is a 'Backup Working Environment' button. Next to it is a toggle switch labeled 'Automatically back up all volumes'. Below this is a section titled 'Policy - Retention & Schedule' with two radio buttons: 'Create New Policy' (selected) and 'Use Existing Policy'. Underneath are two input fields: 'Backup Every' (set to 'Day') and 'Number of backups to retain' (set to '30'). Below these are three time-based options: 'Day', 'Week', and 'Month'. A note at the bottom left states 'All backups are stored in the S3 bucket named "ne..."' followed by a long string of characters. At the bottom right are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons.

4

Restore your data, as needed

At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Backup**, select a volume, select a backup, and then restore data from the backup to a new volume.



Requirements

Read the following requirements to make sure that you have a supported configuration before you start backing up volumes to S3.

Supported ONTAP versions

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 and later.

Supported AWS regions

Backup to Cloud is supported in all AWS regions [where Cloud Volumes ONTAP is supported](#).

AWS subscription requirement

Starting with the 3.7.3 release, a new Cloud Manager subscription is available in the AWS Marketplace. This subscription enables deployments of Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 and later (PAYGO) and Backup to Cloud. You need to [subscribe to this new Cloud Manager subscription](#) before you enable Backup to Cloud. Billing for Backup to Cloud is done through this subscription.

AWS permissions required

The IAM role that provides Cloud Manager with permissions must include S3 permissions from the latest [Cloud Manager policy](#).

Here are the specific permissions from the policy:

```
{  
    "Sid": "backupPolicy",  
    "Effect": "Allow",  
    "Action": [  
        "s3>DeleteBucket",  
        "s3>GetLifecycleConfiguration",  
        "s3>PutLifecycleConfiguration",  
        "s3>PutBucketTagging",  
        "s3>ListBucketVersions",  
        "s3>GetObject",  
        "s3>ListBucket",  
        "s3>ListAllMyBuckets",  
        "s3>GetBucketTagging",  
        "s3>GetBucketLocation",  
        "s3>GetBucketPolicyStatus",  
        "s3>GetBucketPublicAccessBlock",  
        "s3>GetBucketAcl",  
        "s3>GetBucketPolicy",  
        "s3>PutBucketPublicAccessBlock"  
    ],  
    "Resource": [  
        "arn:aws:s3:::netapp-backup-*"  
    ]  
}
```

Enabling Backup to Cloud on a new system

Backup to Cloud is enabled by default in the working environment wizard. Be sure to keep the option enabled.

Steps

1. Click **Create Cloud Volumes ONTAP**.
2. Select Amazon Web Services as the cloud provider and then choose a single node or HA system.
3. Fill out the Details & Credentials page.
4. On the Services page, leave the service enabled and click **Continue**.



Backup to Cloud



Integrated backup for Cloud Volumes ONTAP based on SnapMirror and Snapshot technologies. Backup copies are maintained in S3 buckets. Backups stored in S3 are charged separately from Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

ADVANTAGES

- ✓ Automatically back up all volumes.
- ✓ Creates new backup copy every day.
- ✓ Retains backups for 30 days.

CLARIFICATIONS

- Backup settings are editable after working environment creation.

5. Complete the pages in the wizard to deploy the system.

Result

Backup to Cloud is enabled on the system and backs up volumes every day and retains the most recent 30 backup copies.

What's next?

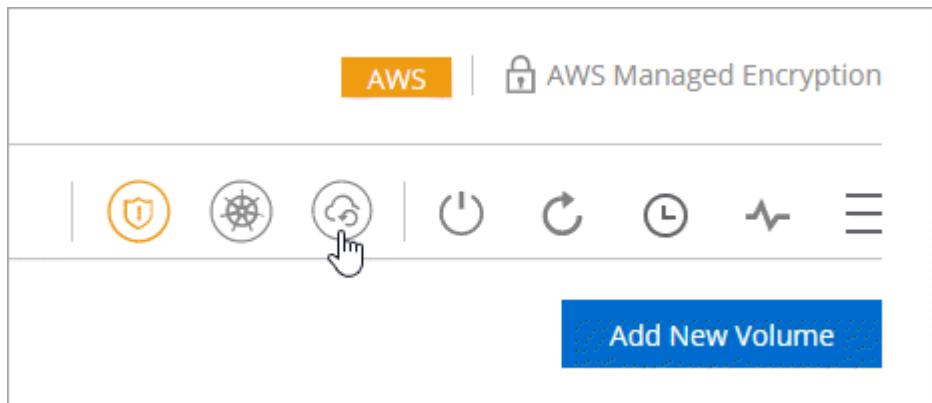
You can manage backups by changing the backup schedule, restoring volumes, and more.

Enabling Backup to Cloud on an existing system

Enable Backup to Cloud at any time directly from the working environment.

Steps

1. Open the working environment.
2. Click the backup settings icon.



3. Select **Automatically back up all volumes**.
4. Choose your backup schedule and retention value and then click **Save**.



Backup to Cloud Settings

Backup Working Environment

Automatically back up all volumes

Policy - Retention & Schedule

Create New Policy Use Existing Policy

Backup Every

Day

Week

Month

Number of backups to retain

30

All backups are stored in the S3 bucket named "new-backups"

8a5d-576fff4...

Save Cancel

Result

Backup to Cloud starts taking the initial backups of each volume.

What's next?

You can manage backups by changing the backup schedule, restoring volumes, and more.

Backing up data to Azure Blob storage

Complete a few steps to get started backing up data from Cloud Volumes ONTAP to Azure Blob storage.

Quick start

Get started quickly by following these steps or scroll down to the remaining sections for full details.

1

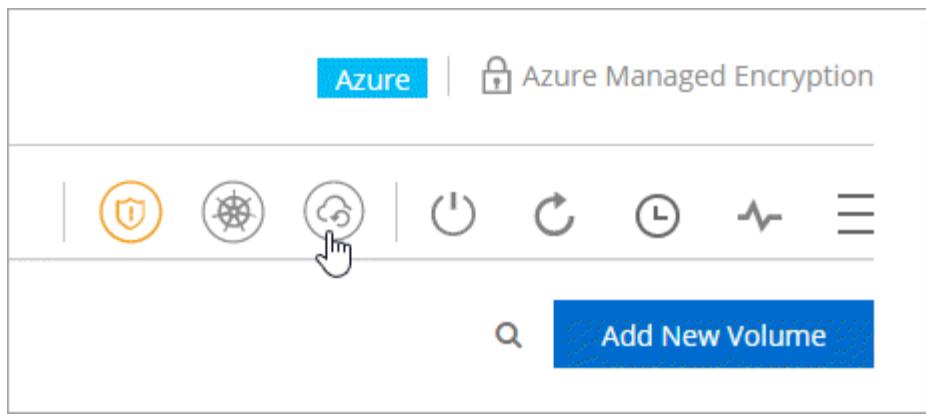
Verify support for your configuration

You're running Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 or later in Azure.

2

Enable Backup to Cloud on your new or existing system

- New systems: Backup to Cloud is enabled by default in the working environment wizard. Be sure to keep the option enabled.
- Existing systems: Open the working environment, click the backup settings icon and enable backups.



3

If needed, modify the backup policy

The default policy backs up volumes every day and retains the most recent 30 backup copies of each volume. Change to weekly or monthly backups, or select one of the system-defined policies that provide more options.

On existing systems, you can pick your own resource group when enabling Backup to Cloud for the first time. If you enable Backup to Cloud when Cloud Volumes ONTAP is deployed, Cloud Manager creates the resource group for you and you cannot change it.

Backup to Cloud Settings

Backup Working Environment Automatically back up all volumes

Policy - Retention & Schedule Create New Policy Use Existing Policy

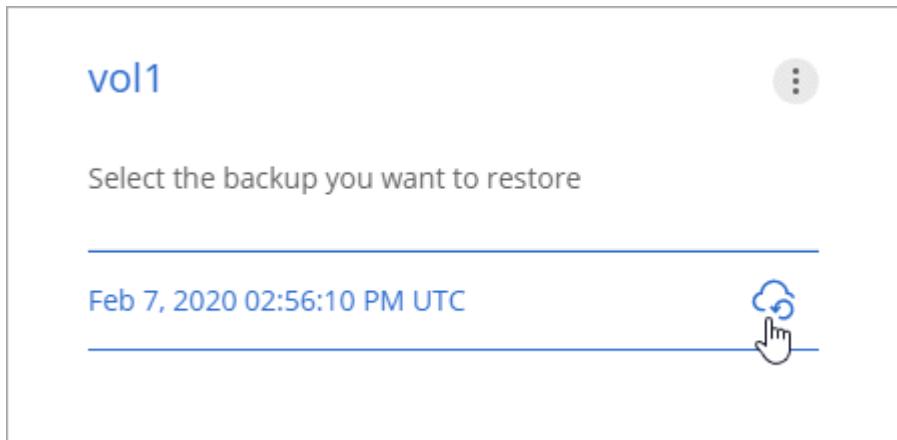
Backup Every Number of backups to retain

Resource Group
Automatically create a resource group
 Create a new resource group with a storage account for the source group after enabling Backup to Cloud.

4

Restore your data, as needed

At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Backup**, select a volume, select a backup, and then restore data from the backup to a new volume.



Requirements

Read the following requirements to make sure that you have a supported configuration before you start backing up volumes to Azure Blob storage.

Supported ONTAP versions

Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.7 and later.

Supported Azure regions

Backup to Cloud is supported in all Azure regions [where Cloud Volumes ONTAP is supported](#).

Azure Marketplace subscription

A subscription through the Azure Marketplace is required before you enable Backup to Cloud. [You can subscribe from the Details & Credentials page of the working environment wizard](#).

Enabling Backup to Cloud on a new system

Backup to Cloud is enabled by default in the working environment wizard. Be sure to keep the option enabled.



If you want to pick the name of the resource group, **disable** Backup to Cloud when deploying Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Follow the steps for [enabling backup to cloud on an existing system](#) to enable Backup to Cloud and choose the resource group.

Steps

1. Click **Create Cloud Volumes ONTAP**.
2. Select Microsoft Azure as the cloud provider and then choose a single node or HA system.
3. Fill out the Details & Credentials page and be sure that an Azure Marketplace subscription is in

place.

4. On the Services page, leave the service enabled and click **Continue**.

The screenshot shows a configuration page for 'Backup to Cloud'. At the top, there's a cloud icon and the text 'Backup to Cloud'. A blue toggle switch is set to 'On'. Below this, a descriptive text states: 'Integrated backup for Cloud Volumes ONTAP based on SnapMirror and Snapshot technologies. Backup copies are maintained in Storage Accounts. Backups stored in Storage Accounts are charged separately from Cloud Volumes ONTAP.' Under the heading 'ADVANTAGES', there are three bullet points: 'Automatically back up all volumes.', 'Creates new backup copy every day.', and 'Retains backups for 30 days.' Under the heading 'CLARIFICATIONS', there is one bullet point: 'Backup settings are editable after working environment creation.'

5. Complete the pages in the wizard to deploy the system.

Result

Backup to Cloud is enabled on the system and backs up volumes every day and retains the most recent 30 backup copies.

What's next?

[You can manage backups by changing the backup schedule, restoring volumes, and more.](#)

Enabling Backup to Cloud on an existing system

Enable Backup to Cloud at any time directly from the working environment.

Steps

1. Open the working environment.
2. Click the backup settings icon.

The screenshot shows the main interface of the NetApp Cloud Volumes ONTAP application. At the top, it says 'Azure' and 'Azure Managed Encryption'. Below the header are several icons: a shield (selected), a gear, a cloud with a circular arrow, a power button, a refresh symbol, a circular arrow with a 'L', a waveform, and a menu icon. At the bottom, there's a search bar and a large blue button labeled 'Add New Volume'.

3. Select **Automatically back up all volumes**.

4. Choose your backup schedule and retention value.

The screenshot shows the 'Backup to Cloud Settings' dialog box. At the top left is a cloud icon with a circular arrow. To its right is the title 'Backup to Cloud Settings'. Below the title are two sections: 'Backup Working Environment' and 'Policy - Retention & Schedule'. In 'Backup Working Environment', there is a toggle switch labeled 'Automatically back up all volumes' which is turned on. In 'Policy - Retention & Schedule', there are two radio buttons: 'Create New Policy' (selected) and 'Use Existing Policy'. Below these are fields for 'Backup Every' (set to 'Day') and 'Number of backups to retain' (set to '30'). Under 'Resource Group', there is a dropdown menu with the placeholder 'Please select'. A tooltip for this dropdown says: 'Automatically create a resource group' (with a note about creating a storage account), 'Create a new resource group' (with a note about creating a new resource group after enabling Backup to Cloud), and 'Select an existing resource group'. At the bottom right are 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons.

5. Choose how the resource group is created and click **Save**.

- **Automatically create a resource group** - Cloud Manager creates a resource group
- **Create a new resource group** - You create the resource group
- **Select an existing resource group** - You select an existing resource group

Result

Backup to Cloud starts taking the initial backups of each volume.

What's next?

[You can manage backups by changing the backup schedule, restoring volumes, and more.](#)

Managing backups for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Manage backups for Cloud Volumes ONTAP by changing the backup schedule, restoring volumes, and more.

Changing the schedule and backup retention

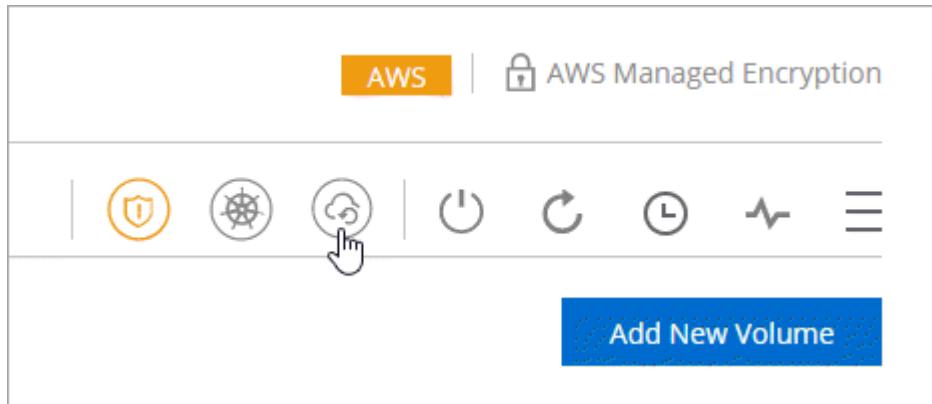
The default policy backs up volumes every day and retains the most recent 30 backup copies of each volume. You can change to weekly or monthly backups and you can change the number of backup copies to retain. You can also select one of the system-defined policies that provide more options, such as *NetappRecommended2* that provides 30 daily, 13 weekly, and 12 monthly backups.



Changing the backup policy affects all future backups. It doesn't affect any previous backups that were created.

Steps

1. Open the working environment.
2. Click the backup settings icon.



3. Change the schedule and backup retention and then click **Save**.

The dialog box has a title 'Backup to Cloud Settings'. It contains the following sections:

- Backup Working Environment:** A toggle switch labeled 'Automatically back up all volumes' is turned on.
- Policy - Retention & Schedule:** A radio button group where 'Create New Policy' is selected. Below it are fields for 'Backup Every' (set to 'Day') and 'Number of backups to retain' (set to '30').
- Resource Group:** A message stating: 'You created a new resource group with a storage account for the Blob container. resource group name: "Resource_Group_1"'.
- Action Buttons:** 'Save' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

Restoring a volume

When you restore data from a backup, Cloud Manager performs a full volume restore to a *new* volume. You can restore the data to the same working environment or to a different working environment that's located in the same AWS account as the source working environment.

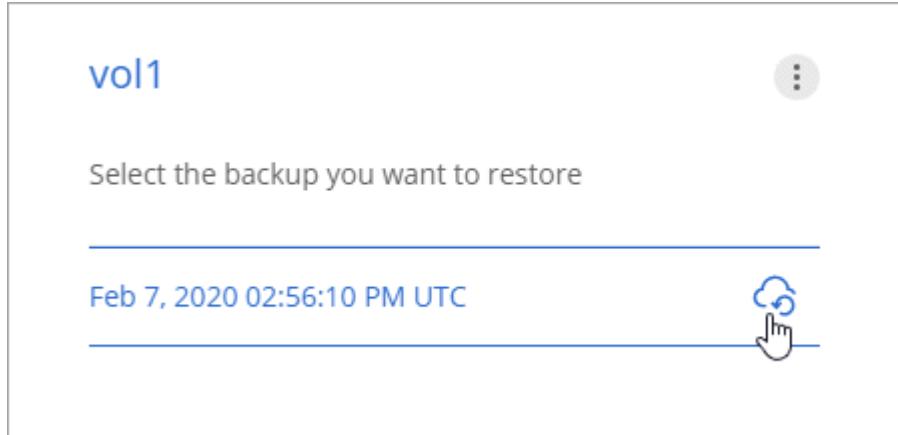
Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Backup**.
2. Select the volume that you want to restore.

2 Volumes

Working Environment	Source Volume	Last Backup	Policy	Retention	Relationship Status
BackuptoS3 (On)	vol1 (Available)	Feb 7, 2020 02:56:10 PM UTC	Daily	30	● Active (Idle) View Backup List
BackuptoS3 (On)	vol2 (Available)	Feb 7, 2020 03:11:25 PM UTC	Daily	30	● Active (Idle) View Backup List

3. Find the backup that you want to restore from and click the restore icon.



4. Select the working environment to which you want to restore the volume.
5. Enter a name for the volume.
6. Click **Restore**.

< vol1

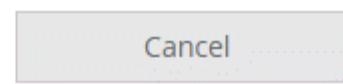
 Restore Backup to a new volume
Feb 7, 2020 02:56:10 PM UTC

Select Working Environment
Backup to S3

Volume Name
vol1_restore

Volume Info

Volume Size: 50 GB
Snapshot Policy: Default
NFS Protocol: Custom export policy, 192.168.0.0/16
Storage Efficiency: ON
Disk Type: GP2
Tiering: auto

Deleting backups

Backup to Cloud enables you to delete *all* backups of a specific volume. You can't delete *individual* backups.

You might do this if you deleted a volume or if you deleted a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. Backup to Cloud doesn't automatically delete backups when you delete a volume or when you delete a system.

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Backup**.
2. Click **View Backup List** for a volume.
3. Click the menu and select **Delete All Backups**.

Result

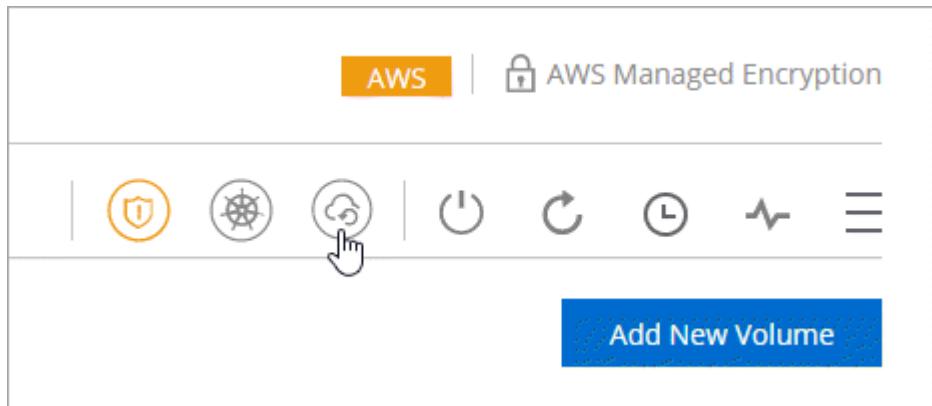
Cloud Manager deletes all backups for the selected volume.

Disabling Backup to Cloud

Disabling Backup to Cloud disables backups of each volume on the system. Any existing backups will not be deleted.

Steps

1. Open the working environment.
2. Click the backup settings icon.



3. Disable **Automatically back up all volumes** and then click **Save**.

Monitor performance

Learn about the Monitoring service

By leveraging the [NetApp Cloud Insights service](#), Cloud Manager gives you insights into the health and performance of your Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances and helps you troubleshoot and optimize the performance of your cloud storage environment.

Features

- Automatically monitor all volumes
- View volume performance data in terms of IOPS, throughput, and latency
- Identify performance issues to minimize impact on your users and apps

Supported cloud providers

The Monitoring service is supported with Cloud Volumes ONTAP for AWS.

Cost

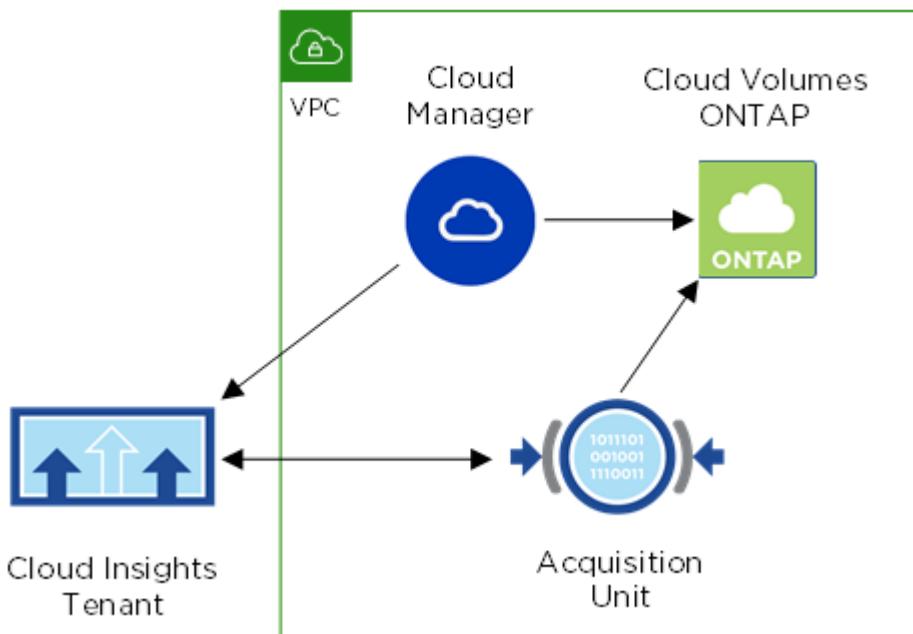
Monitoring is currently available as a Preview. Activation is free, but Cloud Manager launches a virtual machine in your VPC to facilitate monitoring. This VM results in charges from your cloud provider.

How Cloud Insights works with Cloud Manager

At a high-level, Cloud Insights integration with Cloud Manager works like this:

1. You enable the Monitoring service on Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
2. Cloud Manager configures your environment. It does the following:
 1. Creates a Cloud Insights tenant (also called *environment*) and associates all users in your Cloud Central account to the tenant.
 2. Enables a 30-day free trial of Cloud Insights.
 3. Deploys a virtual machine in your VPC called an Acquisition Unit, which facilitates monitoring of volumes (this is the VM mentioned in the Cost section above).
 4. Connects the Acquisition Unit to Cloud Volumes ONTAP and to the Cloud Insights tenant.
3. In Cloud Manager, you click Monitoring and use the performance data to troubleshoot and optimize performance.

The following image shows the relationship between these components:



The Acquisition Unit

When you enable Monitoring, Cloud Manager deploys an Acquisition Unit in the same subnet as Cloud Manager.

An *Acquisition Unit* collects performance data from Cloud Volumes ONTAP and sends it to the Cloud

Cloud Insights tenant. Cloud Manager then queries that data and presents it to you.

Note the following about the Acquisition Unit instance:

- The Acquisition Unit runs on a t3.xlarge instance with a 100 GB GP2 volume.
- The instance is named *AcquisitionUnit* with a generated hash (UUID) concatenated to it. For example: *AcquisitionUnit-FAN7FqeH*
- Only one Acquisition Unit is deployed per Cloud Manager system.
- The instance must be running to access performance information in the Monitoring tab.

Cloud Insights tenant

Cloud Manager sets up a *tenant* for you when you enable Monitoring. A Cloud Insights tenant enables you to access the performance data that the Acquisition Unit collects. The tenant is a secure data partition within the NetApp Cloud Insights service.

Cloud Insights web interface

The Monitoring tab in Cloud Manager provides basic performance data for your volumes. You can go to the Cloud Insights web interface from your browser to perform more in-depth monitoring and to configure alerts for your Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

Free trial and subscription

Cloud Manager enables a 30-day free trial of Cloud Insights to provide performance data within Cloud Manager and for you to explore the features that Cloud Insights Standard Edition has to offer.

You need to subscribe by the end of the free trial or your Cloud Insights tenant will eventually be deleted. You can subscribe to either the Basic, Standard, or Premium edition to continue using the Monitoring feature within Cloud Manager.

[Learn how to subscribe to Cloud Insights.](#)

Monitoring Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS

Complete a few steps to get started monitoring Cloud Volumes ONTAP performance.

Quick start

Get started quickly by following these steps or scroll down to the remaining sections for full details.



Verify support for your configuration

You need a new installation of Cloud Manager 3.8.4 or later in AWS, Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, and

you must be a new Cloud Insights customer.

2

Enable Monitoring on your new or existing system

- New working environments: Be sure to keep Monitoring enabled when you create the working environment (it's enabled by default).
- Existing working environments: Select a working environment and click **Start Monitoring**.

3

View performance data

Click **Monitoring** and view performance data for your volumes.

4

Subscribe to Cloud Insights

Subscribe before your 30-day free trial ends to continue seeing performance data within Cloud Manager and Cloud Insights. [Learn how to subscribe](#).

Requirements

Read the following requirements to make sure that you have a supported configuration.

Supported Cloud Manager versions

You need a new installation of Cloud Manager 3.8.4 or later. A new installation is needed because a new infrastructure is required to enable the Monitoring service. This infrastructure is available starting with new installations of Cloud Manager 3.8.4.

Supported Cloud Volumes ONTAP versions

Any version of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS.

Cloud Insights requirement

You must be a new Cloud Insights customer. Monitoring isn't supported if you already have a Cloud Insights tenant.

Email address for Cloud Central

The email address for your Cloud Central user account should be your business email address. Free email domains like gmail and hotmail aren't supported when creating a Cloud Insights tenant.

Networking for the Acquisition Unit

The Acquisition Unit uses 2-way/mutual authentication to connect to the Cloud Insights server. The client certificate must be passed to the Cloud Insights server to be authenticated. To accomplish this, the proxy must be set up to forward the http request to the Cloud Insights server without decrypting the data.

The Acquisition Unit uses the following two endpoints to communicate with Cloud Insights. If you have a firewall between the Acquisition Unit server and Cloud Insights, you need these endpoints when configuring firewall rules:

```
https://aulogin.<Cloud Insights Domain>  
https://<your-tenant-ID>.<Cloud Insights Domain>
```

For example:

```
https://aulogin.c01.cloudinsights.netapp.com  
https://cg0c586a-ee05-45rb-a5ac-333b5ae7718d7.c01.cloudinsights.netapp.com
```

Contact us through the in-product chat if you need help identifying your Cloud Insights domain and tenant ID.

Networking for Cloud Manager

Similar to the Acquisition Unit, Cloud Manager must have outbound connectivity to the Cloud Insights tenant. But the endpoint that Cloud Manager contacts is slightly different. It contacts the tenant host URL using the shortened tenant ID:

```
https://<your-short-tenant-ID>.<Cloud Insights Domain>
```

For example:

```
https://abcd12345.c01.cloudinsights.netapp.com
```

Again, you can contact us through the in-product chat if you need help identifying the tenant host URL.

Enabling monitoring on a new system

The Monitoring service is enabled by default in the working environment wizard. Be sure to keep the option enabled.

Steps

1. Click **Create Cloud Volumes ONTAP**.
2. Select Amazon Web Services as the cloud provider and then choose a single node or HA system.
3. Fill out the Details & Credentials page.
4. On the Services page, leave the service enabled and click **Continue**.



Monitoring



Quickly and effortlessly get performance insights for your Cloud Volumes ONTAP. By leveraging NetApp's Cloud Insights service, Cloud Manager gives you insights into the health and performance of all of your Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances and helps you troubleshoot and optimize the performance of your cloud storage environment.

ADVANTAGES

- ✓ Automatically monitor all volumes - no configuration is required
- ✓ Prevent performance issues from impacting your users and apps

CLARIFICATIONS

- Activation is free, but requires deploying a small-size cloud instance which will incur charges by your cloud provider
- Monitoring can be disabled at any time

Enabling monitoring on an existing system

Enable monitoring at any time from the working environment.

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Working Environments**.
2. Select a working environment.
3. In the pane on the right, click **Start Monitoring**.

The screenshot shows the Cloud Manager dashboard with the following details:

- CVO2**: Status is **On | AWS**. Action buttons: **i**, **:**, **X**.
- SERVICES** section:
 - Cloud Compliance**: Status is **Off**. Action button: **Enable Compliance**.
 - Backup to Cloud**: Status is **On**. Information: **1 Volume Backed Up**. Action button: **:**.
 - Kubernetes**: Status is **Off**. Action button: **Activate Kubernetes**.
 - Monitoring**: Status is **Off**. Action button: **Start Monitoring** (with a hand cursor icon).

Monitoring your volumes

Monitor performance by viewing IOPS, throughput, and latency for each of your volumes.

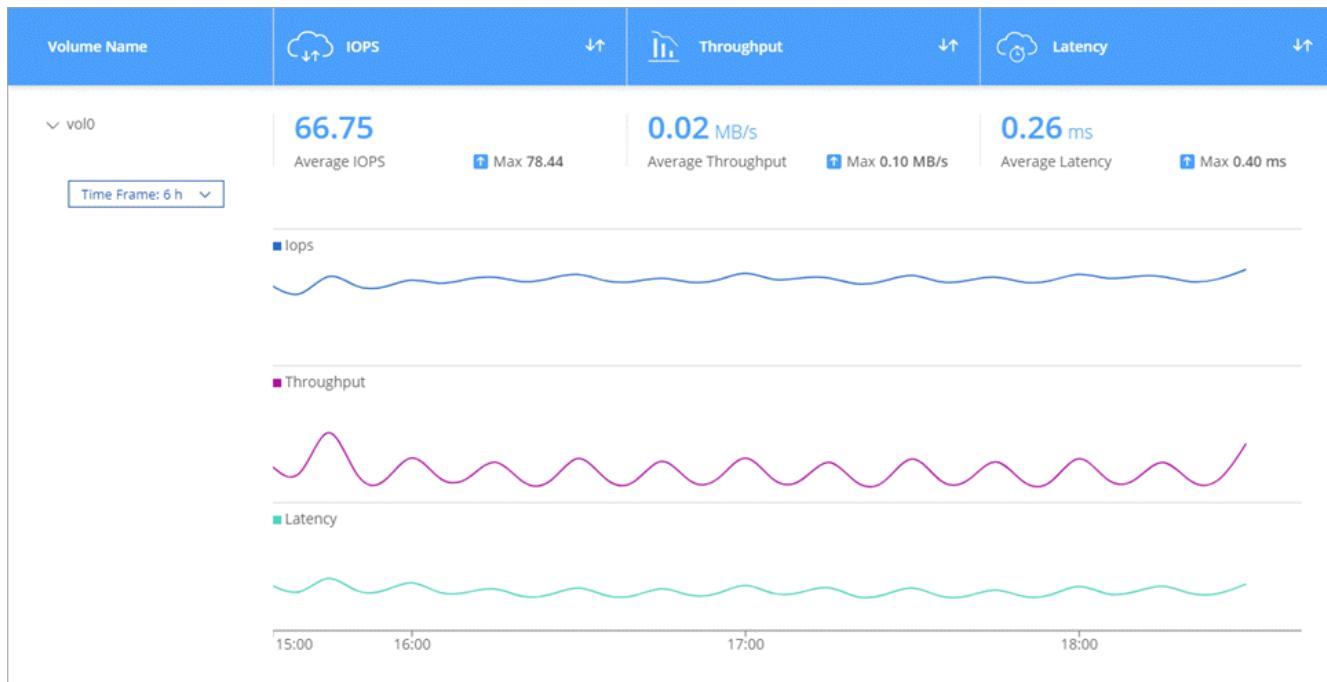
Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Monitoring**.
2. Filter the contents of the dashboard to get the information that you need.
 - Select a specific working environment.
 - Select a different timeframe.
 - Select a specific SVM.
 - Search for a specific volume.

The following image highlights each of these options:

The screenshot shows the Cloud Manager interface with the 'Monitoring' tab selected. At the top, there are two status cards: '0.02 MB/s Average Network Throughput' and '5.55 % Average CPU Utilization'. Below these are search and filter fields ('Time Frame: 6 h', 'SVM: All'). A table lists two volumes: 'vol0' and 'volaws2'. The table columns are 'Volume Name', 'IOPS', 'Throughput', and 'Latency'. For 'vol0', the values are 66.75 (Average IOPS), 0.02 MB/s (Average Throughput), and 0.26 ms (Average Latency). For 'volaws2', the values are 50.02 (Average IOPS), 12.60 MB/s (Average Throughput), and 0.19 ms (Average Latency).

- Click a volume in the table to expand the row and view a timeline for IOPS, throughput, and latency.



- Use the data to identify performance issues to minimize impact on your users and apps.

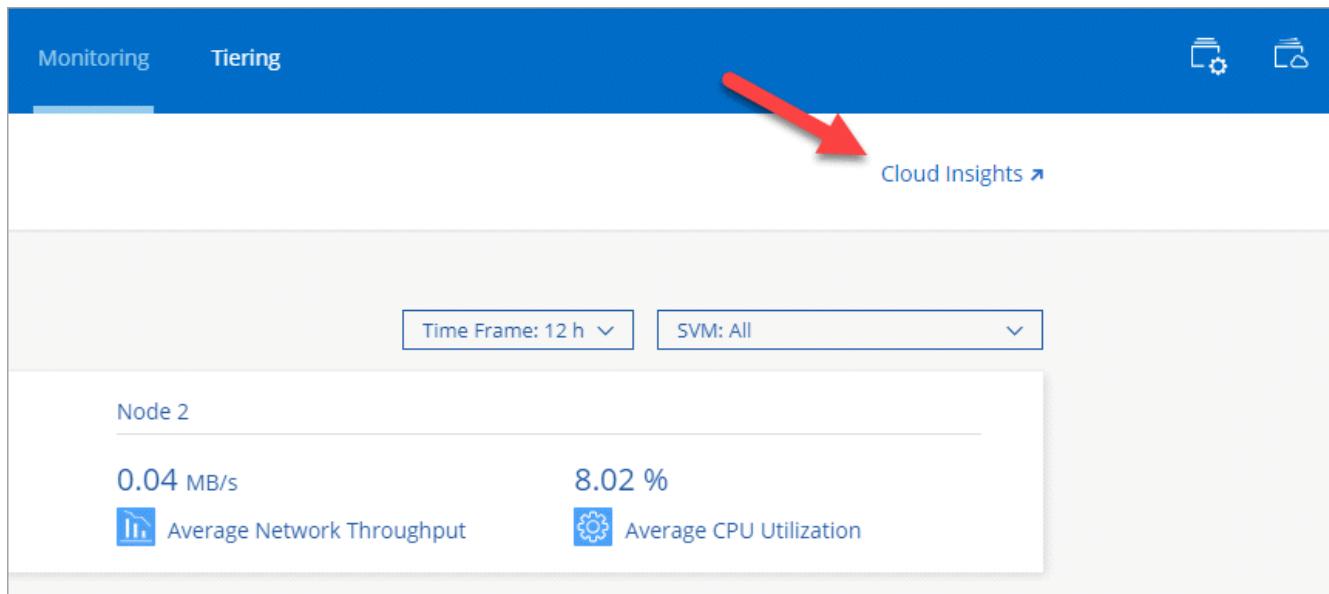
Getting more information from Cloud Insights

The Monitoring tab in Cloud Manager provides basic performance data for your volumes. You can go to the Cloud Insights web interface from your browser to perform more in-depth monitoring and to configure alerts for your Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems.

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Monitoring**.

2. Click the **Cloud Insights** link.



The screenshot shows the Cloud Manager dashboard. At the top, there are two tabs: 'Monitoring' (which is highlighted in blue) and 'Tiering'. In the top right corner, there are three icons: a gear, a cloud, and a refresh symbol. Below the tabs, a red arrow points from the left towards the 'Cloud Insights' link. The main content area has a light gray background. At the top of this area, there are two dropdown menus: 'Time Frame: 12 h' and 'SVM: All'. Below these, the word 'Node 2' is displayed in blue. Underneath 'Node 2', there are two data points: '0.04 MB/s' with a network throughput icon and '8.02 %' with a CPU utilization icon. Both of these lines have a small downward arrow at their ends.

Result

Cloud Insights open in a new browser tab. If you need help, refer to the [Cloud Insights documentation](#).

Disabling monitoring

If you no longer want to monitor Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you can disable the service at any time.



If you disable monitoring from each of your working environments, you'll need to delete the EC2 instance yourself. The instance is named *AcquisitionUnit* with a generated hash (UUID) concatenated to it. For example: *AcquisitionUnit-FAN7FqeH*

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Working Environments**.
2. Select a working environment.
3. In the pane on the right, click the icon and select **Deactivate Scan**.

Administer Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Connecting to Cloud Volumes ONTAP

If you need to perform advanced management of Cloud Volumes ONTAP, you can do so using OnCommand System Manager or the command line interface.

Connecting to OnCommand System Manager

You might need to perform some Cloud Volumes ONTAP tasks from OnCommand System Manager, which is a browser-based management tool that runs on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. For example, you need to use System Manager if you want to create LUNs.

Before you begin

The computer from which you are accessing Cloud Manager must have a network connection to Cloud Volumes ONTAP. For example, you might need to log in to Cloud Manager from a jump host in AWS or Azure.



When deployed in multiple AWS Availability Zones, Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configurations use a floating IP address for the cluster management interface, which means external routing is not available. You must connect from a host that is part of the same routing domain.

Steps

1. From the Working Environments page, double-click the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that you want to manage with System Manager.
2. Click the menu icon, and then click **Advanced > System Manager**.
3. Click **Launch**.

System Manager loads in a new browser tab.

4. At the login screen, enter **admin** in the User Name field, enter the password that you specified when you created the working environment, and then click **Sign In**.

Result

The System Manager console loads. You can now use it to manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Connecting to the Cloud Volumes ONTAP CLI

The Cloud Volumes ONTAP CLI enables you to execute all administrative commands and is a good choice for advanced tasks or if you are more comfortable using the CLI. You can connect to the CLI using Secure Shell (SSH).

Before you begin

The host from which you use SSH to connect to Cloud Volumes ONTAP must have a network connection to Cloud Volumes ONTAP. For example, you might need to use SSH from a jump host in AWS or Azure.



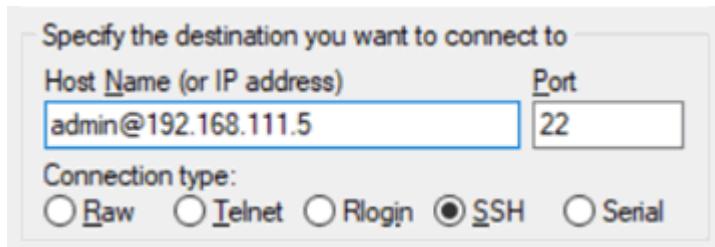
When deployed in multiple AZs, Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configurations use a floating IP address for the cluster management interface, which means external routing is not available. You must connect from a host that is part of the same routing domain.

Steps

1. In Cloud Manager, identify the IP address of the cluster management interface:
 - a. On the Working Environments page, select the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.
 - b. Copy the cluster management IP address that appears in the right pane.
2. Use SSH to connect to the cluster management interface IP address using the admin account.

Example

The following image shows an example using PuTTY:



3. At the login prompt, enter the password for the admin account.

Example



Updating Cloud Volumes ONTAP software

Cloud Manager includes several options that you can use to upgrade to the current Cloud Volumes ONTAP release or to downgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP to an earlier release. You should prepare Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems before you upgrade or downgrade the software.

Software updates must be completed by Cloud Manager

Upgrades of Cloud Volumes ONTAP must be completed from Cloud Manager. You should not upgrade Cloud Volumes ONTAP by using System Manager or the CLI. Doing so can impact system stability.

Ways to update Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Cloud Manager displays a notification in Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environments when a new version of Cloud Volumes ONTAP is available:

The screenshot shows the Cloud Manager interface for a single Cloud Volumes ONTAP environment named "cloudvolumesontap1" running on AWS. A red box highlights the "NOTIFICATIONS" section, which contains a message: "New version available". Below this, under "SERVICES", there are two sections: "Cloud Compliance" (status: On) and "Backup to S3" (status: On). The "Cloud Compliance" section includes a note: "No Personal Files Found".

You can start the upgrade process from this notification, which automates the process by obtaining the software image from an S3 bucket, installing the image, and then restarting the system. For details, see [Upgrading Cloud Volumes ONTAP from Cloud Manager notifications](#).



For HA systems in AWS, Cloud Manager might upgrade the HA mediator as part of the upgrade process.

Advanced options for software updates

Cloud Manager also provides the following advanced options for updating Cloud Volumes ONTAP software:

- Software updates using an image on an external URL

This option is helpful if Cloud Manager cannot access the S3 bucket to upgrade the software, if you were provided with a patch, or if you want to downgrade the software to a specific version.

For details, see [Upgrading or downgrading Cloud Volumes ONTAP by using an HTTP or FTP server](#).

- Software updates using the alternate image on the system

You can use this option to downgrade to the previous version by making the alternate software image the default image. This option is not available for HA pairs.

For details, see [Downgrading Cloud Volumes ONTAP by using a local image](#).

Preparing to update Cloud Volumes ONTAP software

Before performing an upgrade or downgrade, you must verify that your systems are ready and make any required configuration changes.

- [Planning for downtime](#)
- [Reviewing version requirements](#)
- [Verifying that automatic giveback is still enabled](#)
- [Suspending SnapMirror transfers](#)
- [Verifying that aggregates are online](#)

Planning for downtime

When you upgrade a single-node system, the upgrade process takes the system offline for up to 25 minutes, during which I/O is interrupted.

Upgrading an HA pair is nondisruptive and I/O is uninterrupted. During this nondisruptive upgrade process, each node is upgraded in tandem to continue serving I/O to clients.

Reviewing version requirements

The version of ONTAP that you can upgrade or downgrade to varies based on the version of ONTAP currently running on your system.

To understand version requirements, refer to [ONTAP 9 Documentation: Cluster update requirements](#).

Verifying that automatic giveback is still enabled

Automatic giveback must be enabled on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair (this is the default setting). If it isn't, then the operation will fail.

[ONTAP 9 Documentation: Commands for configuring automatic giveback](#)

Suspending SnapMirror transfers

If a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system has active SnapMirror relationships, it is best to suspend transfers before you update the Cloud Volumes ONTAP software. Suspending the transfers prevents SnapMirror

failures. You must suspend the transfers from the destination system.

About this task

These steps describe how to use System Manager for version 9.3 and later.

Steps

1. [Log in to System Manager](#) from the destination system.
2. Click **Protection > Relationships**.
3. Select the relationship and click **Operations > Quiesce**.

Verifying that aggregates are online

Aggregates for Cloud Volumes ONTAP must be online before you update the software. Aggregates should be online in most configurations, but if they are not, then you should bring them online.

About this task

These steps describe how to use System Manager for version 9.3 and later.

Steps

1. In the working environment, click the menu icon, and then click **Advanced > Advanced allocation**.
2. Select an aggregate, click **Info**, and then verify that the state is online.

The screenshot shows the 'Aggregate Info' page for 'aggr1'. It displays the following information:

Aggregate Capacity:	88.57 GB
Used Aggregate Capacity:	1.07 GB
Volumes:	2
AWS Disks:	1
State:	online

3. If the aggregate is offline, use System Manager to bring the aggregate online:
 - a. [Log in to System Manager](#).
 - b. Click **Storage > Aggregates & Disks > Aggregates**.

- c. Select the aggregate, and then click **More Actions > Status > Online**.

Upgrading Cloud Volumes ONTAP from Cloud Manager notifications

Cloud Manager notifies you when a new version of Cloud Volumes ONTAP is available. Click the notification to start the upgrade process.

Before you begin

Cloud Manager operations such as volume or aggregate creation must not be in progress for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

Steps

1. Click **Working Environments**.
2. Select a working environment.

A notification appears in the right pane if a new version is available:

The screenshot shows the Cloud Manager interface for a working environment named "cloudvolumesontap1" (status: On | AWS). A red box highlights the "NOTIFICATIONS" section, which contains a message: "New version available". Below this, the "SERVICES" section displays two services: "Cloud Compliance" (status: On) and "Backup to S3" (status: On). The "Cloud Compliance" service has a status message: "No Personal Files Found".

3. If a new version is available, click **Upgrade**.
4. In the Release Information page, click the link to read the Release Notes for the specified version, and then select the **I have read...** check box.

5. In the End User License Agreement (EULA) page, read the EULA, and then select **I read and approve the EULA**.
6. In the Review and Approve page, read the important notes, select **I understand...**, and then click **Go**.

Result

Cloud Manager starts the software upgrade. You can perform actions on the working environment once the software update is complete.

After you finish

If you suspended SnapMirror transfers, use System Manager to resume the transfers.

Upgrading or downgrading Cloud Volumes ONTAP by using an HTTP or FTP server

You can place the Cloud Volumes ONTAP software image on an HTTP or FTP server and then initiate the software update from Cloud Manager. You might use this option if Cloud Manager cannot access the S3 bucket to upgrade the software or if you want to downgrade the software.

Steps

1. Set up an HTTP server or FTP server that can host the Cloud Volumes ONTAP software image.
2. If you have a VPN connection to the virtual network, you can place the Cloud Volumes ONTAP software image on an HTTP server or FTP server in your own network. Otherwise, you must place the file on an HTTP server or FTP server in the cloud.
3. If you use your own security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP, ensure that the outbound rules allow HTTP or FTP connections so Cloud Volumes ONTAP can access the software image.



The predefined Cloud Volumes ONTAP security group allows outbound HTTP and FTP connections by default.

4. Obtain the software image from [the NetApp Support Site](#).
5. Copy the software image to the directory on the HTTP or FTP server from which the file will be served.
6. From the working environment in Cloud Manager, click the menu icon, and then click **Advanced > Update Cloud Volumes ONTAP**.
7. On the update software page, choose **Select an image available from a URL**, enter the URL, and then click **Change Image**.
8. Click **Proceed** to confirm.

Result

Cloud Manager starts the software update. You can perform actions on the working environment once the software update is complete.

After you finish

If you suspended SnapMirror transfers, use System Manager to resume the transfers.

Downgrading Cloud Volumes ONTAP by using a local image

Transitioning Cloud Volumes ONTAP to an earlier release in the same release family (for example, 9.5 to 9.4) is referred to as a downgrade. You can downgrade without assistance when downgrading new or test clusters, but you should contact technical support if you want to downgrade a production cluster.

Each Cloud Volumes ONTAP system can hold two software images: the current image that is running, and an alternate image that you can boot. Cloud Manager can change the alternate image to be the default image. You can use this option to downgrade to the previous version of Cloud Volumes ONTAP, if you are experiencing issues with the current image.

About this task

This downgrade process is available for single Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems only. It is not available for HA pairs.

Steps

1. From the working environment, click the menu icon, and then click **Advanced > Update Cloud Volumes ONTAP**.
2. On the update software page, select the alternate image, and then click **Change Image**.
3. Click **Proceed** to confirm.

Result

Cloud Manager starts the software update. You can perform actions on the working environment once the software update is complete.

After you finish

If you suspended SnapMirror transfers, use System Manager to resume the transfers.

Modifying Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems

You might need to change the configuration of Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances as your storage needs change. For example, you can change between pay-as-you-go configurations, change the instance or VM type, and move to an alternate subscription.

Installing license files on Cloud Volumes ONTAP BYOL systems

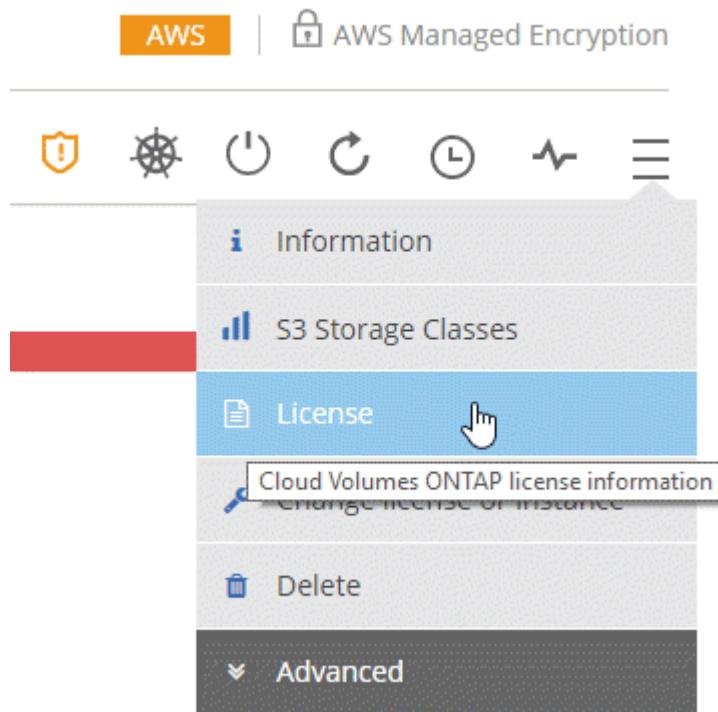
If Cloud Manager cannot obtain a BYOL license file from NetApp, you can obtain the file yourself and then manually upload the file to Cloud Manager so it can install the license on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

Steps

1. Go to the [NetApp License File Generator](#) and log in using your NetApp Support Site credentials.
2. Enter your password, choose your product, enter the serial number, confirm that you have read and accepted the privacy policy, and then click **Submit**.

Example

3. Choose whether you want to receive the serialnumber.NLF JSON file through email or direct download.
4. In Cloud Manager, open the Cloud Volumes ONTAP BYOL working environment.
5. Click the menu icon and then click **License**.



6. Click **Upload License File**.
7. Click **Upload** and then select the file.

Result

Cloud Manager installs the new license file on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

Changing the instance or machine type for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

You can choose from several instance or machine types when you launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS, Azure, or GCP. You can change the instance or machine type at any time if you determine that it is undersized or oversized for your needs.

About this task

- Automatic giveback must be enabled on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair (this is the default setting). If it isn't, then the operation will fail.

[ONTAP 9 Documentation: Commands for configuring automatic giveback](#)

- The operation restarts Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

For single node systems, I/O is interrupted.

For HA pairs, the change is nondisruptive. HA pairs continue to serve data.

- Changing the instance or machine type affects cloud provider service charges.

Steps

- From the working environment, click the menu icon, and then click **Change license or instance** for AWS, **Change license or VM** for Azure, or **Change license or machine** for GCP.
- If you are using a pay-as-you-go configuration, you can optionally choose a different license.
- Select an instance or machine type, select the check box to confirm that you understand the implications of the change, and then click **OK**.

Result

Cloud Volumes ONTAP reboots with the new configuration.

Changing between pay-as-you-go configurations

After you launch pay-as-you-go Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems, you can change between the Explore, Standard, and Premium configurations at any time by modifying the license. Changing the license increases or decreases the raw capacity limit and enables you to choose from different AWS instance types or Azure virtual machine types.



In GCP, a single machine type is available for each pay-as-you-go configuration. You can't choose between different machine types.

About this task

Note the following about changing between pay-as-you-go licenses:

- The operation restarts Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

For single node systems, I/O is interrupted.

For HA pairs, the change is nondisruptive. HA pairs continue to serve data.

- Changing the instance or machine type affects cloud provider service charges.

Steps

1. From the working environment, click the menu icon, and then click **Change license or instance** for AWS, **Change license or VM** for Azure, or **Change license or machine** for GCP.
2. Select a license type and an instance type or machine type, select the check box to confirm that you understand the implications of the change, and then click **OK**.

Result

Cloud Volumes ONTAP reboots with the new license, instance type or machine type, or both.

Moving to an alternate Cloud Volumes ONTAP configuration

If you want to move between a pay-as-you-go subscription and a BYOL subscription or between a single Cloud Volumes ONTAP system and an HA pair, you can deploy a new system and then replicate data from the existing system to the new system.

Steps

1. Create a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment.

[Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#)

[Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure](#)

[Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in GCP](#)

2. [Set up one-time data replication](#) between the systems for each volume that you must replicate.
3. Terminate the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that you no longer need by [deleting the original working environment](#).

Changing write speed to normal or high

Cloud Manager enables you to choose a write speed setting for single node Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems. The default write speed is normal. You can change to high write speed if fast write performance is required for your workload. Before you change the write speed, you should [understand the differences between the normal and high settings](#).

About this task

- Ensure that operations such as volume or aggregate creation are not in progress.
- Be aware that this change restarts Cloud Volumes ONTAP, which means I/O is interrupted.

Steps

1. From the working environment, click the menu icon, and then click **Advanced > Writing Speed**.
2. Select **Normal** or **High**.

If you choose High, then you'll need to read the "I understand..." statement and confirm by checking the box.

3. Click **Save**, review the confirmation message, and then click **Proceed**.

Modifying the storage virtual machine name

Cloud Manager automatically names the storage virtual machine (SVM) for Cloud Volumes ONTAP. You can modify the name of the SVM if you have strict naming standards. For example, you might want it to match how you name the SVMs for your ONTAP clusters.

Steps

1. From the working environment, click the menu icon, and then click **Information**.
2. Click the edit icon to the right of the SVM name.

Creation time:	Aug 26, 2015 10:31:45 am
SVM Name:	svm_Lab 

3. In the Modify SVM Name dialog box, modify the SVM name, and then click **Save**.

Changing the password for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Cloud Volumes ONTAP includes a cluster admin account. You can change the password for this account from Cloud Manager, if needed.

 You should not change the password for the admin account through System Manager or the CLI. The password will not be reflected in Cloud Manager. As a result, Cloud Manager cannot monitor the instance properly.

Steps

1. From the working environment, click the menu icon, and then click **Advanced > Set password**.
2. Enter the new password twice and then click **Save**.

The new password must be different than one of the last six passwords that you used.

Changing the network MTU for c4.4xlarge and c4.8xlarge instances

By default, Cloud Volumes ONTAP is configured to use 9,000 MTU (also called jumbo frames) when you choose the c4.4xlarge instance or the c4.8xlarge instance in AWS. You can change the network MTU to 1,500 bytes if that is more appropriate for your network configuration.

About this task

A network maximum transmission unit (MTU) of 9,000 bytes can provide the highest maximum network throughput possible for specific configurations.

9,000 MTU is a good choice if clients in the same VPC communicate with the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system and some or all of those clients also support 9,000 MTU. If traffic leaves the VPC, packet

fragmentation can occur, which degrades performance.

A network MTU of 1,500 bytes is a good choice if clients or systems outside of the VPC communicate with the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

Steps

1. From the working environment, click the menu icon and then click **Advanced > Network Utilization**.
2. Select **Standard or Jumbo Frames**.
3. Click **Change**.

Changing route tables associated with HA pairs in multiple AWS AZs

You can modify the AWS route tables that include routes to the floating IP addresses for an HA pair. You might do this if new NFS or CIFS clients need to access an HA pair in AWS.

Steps

1. From the working environment, click the menu icon and then click **Information**.
2. Click **Route Tables**.
3. Modify the list of selected route tables and then click **Save**.

Result

Cloud Manager sends an AWS request to modify the route tables.

Managing the state of Cloud Volumes ONTAP

You can stop and start Cloud Volumes ONTAP from Cloud Manager to manage your cloud compute costs.

Scheduling automatic shutdowns of Cloud Volumes ONTAP

You might want to shut down Cloud Volumes ONTAP during specific time intervals to lower your compute costs. Rather than do this manually, you can configure Cloud Manager to automatically shut down and then restart systems at specific times.

About this task

When you schedule an automatic shutdown of your Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, Cloud Manager postpones the shutdown if an active data transfer is in progress. Cloud Manager shuts down the system after the transfer is complete.

This task schedules automatic shutdowns of both nodes in an HA pair.

Steps

1. From the working environment, click the clock icon:



2. Specify the shutdown schedule:

- Choose whether you want to shut down the system every day, every weekday, every weekend, or any combination of the three options.
- Specify when you want to turn off the system and for how long you want it turned off.

Example

The following image shows a schedule that instructs Cloud Manager to shut down the system every Saturday at 12:00 a.m. for 48 hours. Cloud Manager restarts the system every Monday at 12:00 a.m.

<input type="checkbox"/> Turn off every weekday Mon, Tue, Wed, Thu, Fri	turn off at	08	:	00	PM	for	12	Hours (1-24)
<hr/>								
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Turn off every weekend Sat	turn off at	12	:	00	AM	for	48	Hours (1-48)

3. Click **Save**.

Result

Cloud Manager saves the schedule. The clock icon changes to indicate that a schedule is set:



Stopping Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Stopping Cloud Volumes ONTAP saves you from accruing compute costs and creates snapshots of the root and boot disks, which can be helpful for troubleshooting.

About this task

When you stop an HA pair, Cloud Manager shuts down both nodes.

Steps

- From the working environment, click the **Turn off** icon.



- Keep the option to create snapshots enabled because the snapshots can enable system recovery.
- Click **Turn Off**.

It can take up to a few minutes to stop the system. You can restart systems at a later time from the working environment page.

Monitoring AWS resource costs

Cloud Manager enables you to view the resource costs associated with running Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS. You can also see how much money you saved by using NetApp features that can reduce storage costs.

About this task

Cloud Manager updates the costs when you refresh the page. You should refer to AWS for final cost details.

Step

1. Verify that Cloud Manager can obtain cost information from AWS:
 - a. Ensure that the IAM policy that provides Cloud Manager with permissions includes the following actions:

```
"ce:GetReservationUtilization",
"ce:GetDimensionValues",
"ce:GetCostAndUsage",
"ce:GetTags"
```

These actions are included in the latest [Cloud Manager policy](#). New systems deployed from NetApp Cloud Central automatically include these permissions.

- b. [Activate the WorkingEnvironmentId tag](#).

To track your AWS costs, Cloud Manager assigns a cost allocation tag to Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances. After you create your first working environment, activate the **WorkingEnvironmentId** tag. User-defined tags don't appear on AWS billing reports until you activate them in the Billing and Cost Management console.

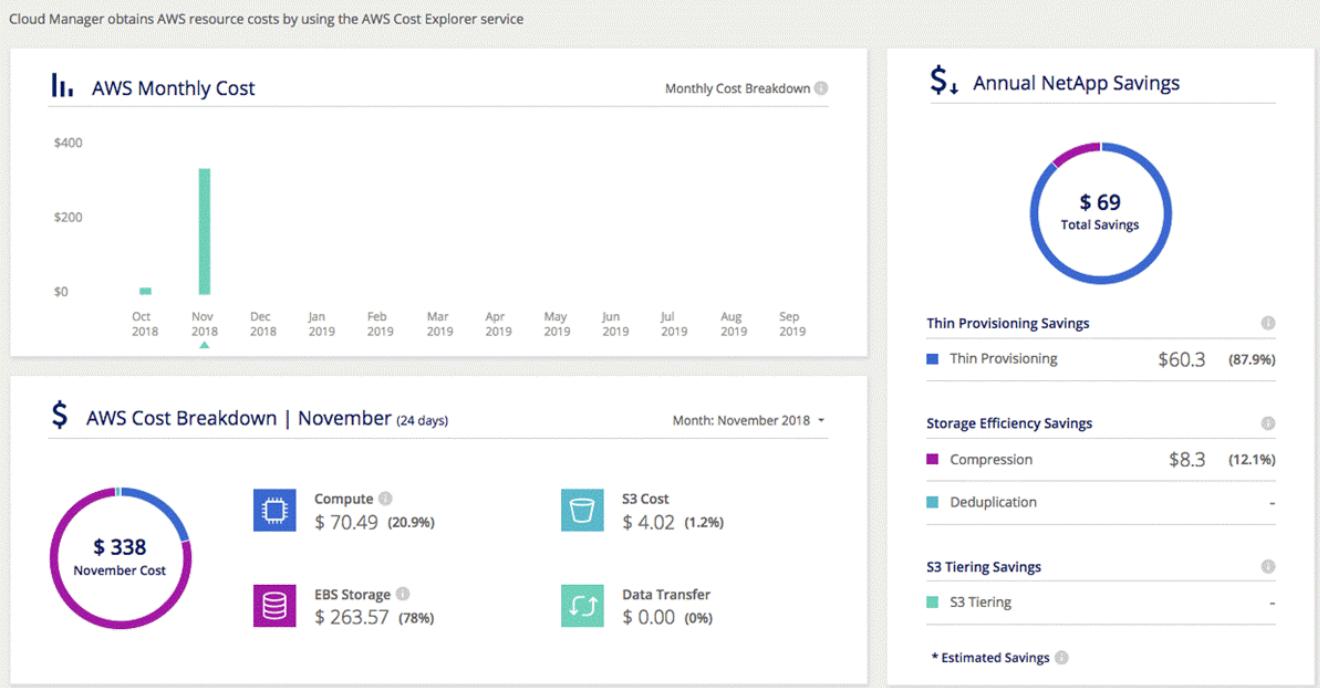
2. On the Working Environments page, select a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment and then click **Cost**.

The Cost page displays costs for the current and previous months and shows your annual NetApp savings, if you enabled NetApp's cost-saving features on volumes.

The following image shows a sample Cost page:

AWS Resource Costs

Learn how we calculate the costs and savings

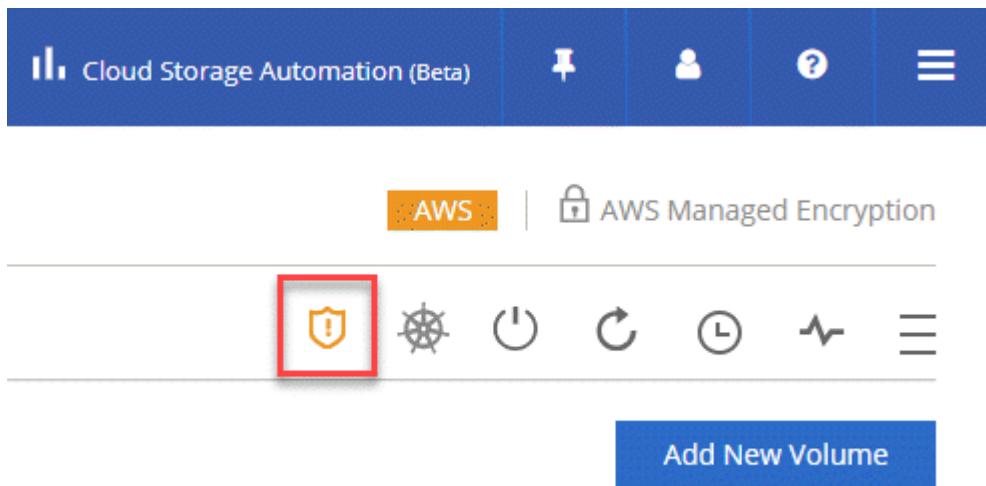


Improving protection against ransomware

Ransomware attacks can cost a business time, resources, and reputation. Cloud Manager enables you to implement the NetApp solution for ransomware, which provides effective tools for visibility, detection, and remediation.

Steps

1. From the working environment, click the **Ransomware** icon.



2. Implement the NetApp solution for ransomware:

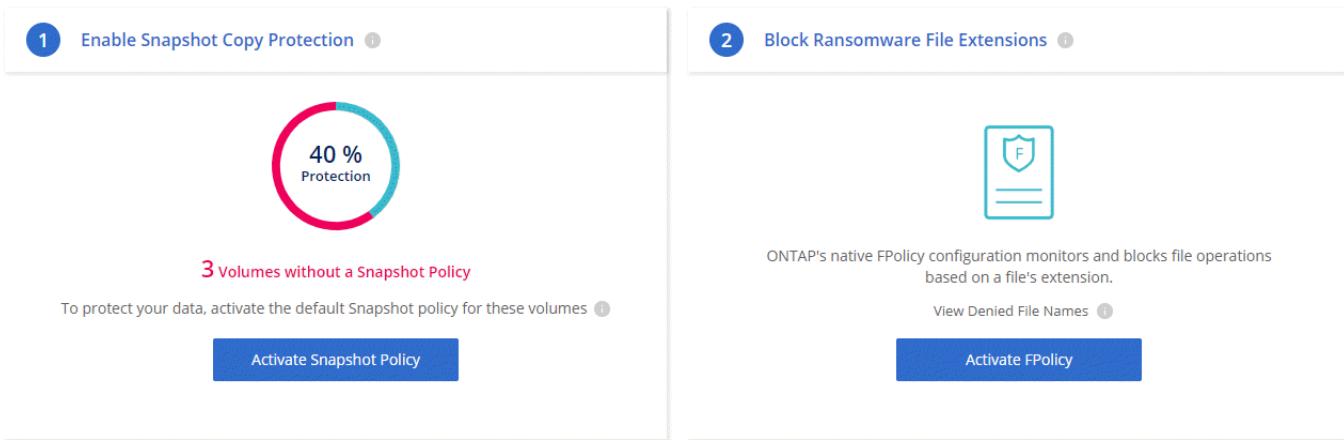
- a. Click **Activate Snapshot Policy**, if you have volumes that do not have a Snapshot policy

enabled.

NetApp Snapshot technology provides the industry's best solution for ransomware remediation. The key to a successful recovery is restoring from uninfected backups. Snapshot copies are read-only, which prevents ransomware corruption. They can also provide the granularity to create images of a single file copy or a complete disaster recovery solution.

- b. Click **Activate FPolicy** to enable ONTAP's FPolicy solution, which can block file operations based on a file's extension.

This preventative solution improves protection from ransomware attacks by blocking common ransomware file types.



Adding existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems to Cloud Manager

You can discover and add existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems to Cloud Manager. You might do this if you deployed a new Cloud Manager system.

Before you begin

You must know the password for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP admin user account.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, click **Discover** and select **Cloud Volumes ONTAP**.
2. Select the cloud provider in which the system resides.
3. On the Region page, choose the region where the instances are running, and then select the instances.
4. On the Credentials page, enter the password for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP admin user, and then click **Go**.

Result

Cloud Manager adds the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances to the workspace.

Deleting a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment

It is best to delete Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems from Cloud Manager, rather than from your cloud provider's console. For example, if you terminate a licensed Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance from AWS, then you can't use the license key for another instance. You must delete the working environment from Cloud Manager to release the license.

About this task

When you delete a working environment, Cloud Manager terminates instances, deletes disks, and snapshots.



Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances have termination protection enabled to help prevent accidental termination from AWS. However, if you do terminate a Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance from AWS, you must go to the AWS CloudFormation console and delete the instance's stack. The stack name is the name of the working environment.

Steps

1. From the working environment, click menu icon and then click **Delete**.
2. Type the name of the working environment and then click **Delete**.

It can take up to 5 minutes to delete the working environment.

Manage ONTAP clusters

Discovering ONTAP clusters

Cloud Manager can discover the ONTAP clusters in your on-premises environment, in a NetApp Private Storage configuration, and in the IBM Cloud. Discovering an ONTAP cluster enables you to provision storage, replicate data, and tier cold data from an on-prem cluster to the cloud.

Before you begin

You must have the cluster management IP address and the password for the admin user account to add the cluster to Cloud Manager.

Cloud Manager discovers ONTAP clusters using HTTPS. If you use custom firewall policies, they must meet the following requirements:

- The Cloud Manager host must allow outbound HTTPS access through port 443.

If Cloud Manager is in AWS, all outbound communication is allowed by the predefined security group.

- The ONTAP cluster must allow inbound HTTPS access through port 443.

The default "mgmt" firewall policy allows inbound HTTPS access from all IP addresses. If you modified this default policy, or if you created your own firewall policy, you must associate the HTTPS protocol with that policy and enable access from the Cloud Manager host.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, click **Discover** and select **ONTAP Cluster**.
2. On the **ONTAP Cluster Details** page, enter the cluster management IP address, the password for the admin user account, and the location of the cluster.

[ONTAP Cluster Details](#)

Provide a few details about your ONTAP cluster so Cloud Manager can discover it.

Cluster Details

Cluster management IP address

User name

Password

Cluster Location

On Premises  IBM Cloud  Microsoft Azure  Amazon Web Services  Google Cloud

3. On the Details page, enter a name and description for the working environment, and then click **Go**.

Result

Cloud Manager discovers the cluster. You can now create volumes, replicate data to and from the cluster, and launch OnCommand System Manager to perform advanced tasks.

Provisioning storage for ONTAP clusters

After you discover your ONTAP cluster from Cloud Manager, you can open the working environment to provision storage.

Creating volumes for ONTAP clusters

Cloud Manager enables you to provision NFS and CIFS volumes on ONTAP clusters.

Before you begin

NFS or CIFS must be set up on the cluster. You can set up NFS and CIFS using System Manager or the CLI.

About this task

You can create volumes on existing aggregates. You cannot create new aggregates from Cloud Manager.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, double-click the name of the ONTAP cluster on which you want to provision volumes.
2. Click **Add New Volume**.
3. On the Create New Volume page, enter details for the volume, and then click **Create**.

Some of the fields in this page are self-explanatory. The following table describes fields for which you might need guidance:

Field	Description
Size	The maximum size that you can enter largely depends on whether you enable thin provisioning, which enables you to create a volume that is bigger than the physical storage currently available to it.
Access control (for NFS only)	An export policy defines the clients in the subnet that can access the volume. By default, Cloud Manager enters a value that provides access to all instances in the subnet.
Permissions and Users / Groups (for CIFS only)	These fields enable you to control the level of access to a share for users and groups (also called access control lists or ACLs). You can specify local or domain Windows users or groups, or UNIX users or groups. If you specify a domain Windows user name, you must include the user's domain using the format domain\username.

Field	Description
Usage Profile	Usage profiles define the NetApp storage efficiency features that are enabled for a volume.
Snapshot Policy	A Snapshot copy policy specifies the frequency and number of automatically created NetApp Snapshot copies. A NetApp Snapshot copy is a point-in-time file system image that has no performance impact and requires minimal storage. You can choose the default policy or none. You might choose none for transient data: for example, tempdb for Microsoft SQL Server.

Replicating data

You can replicate data between Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems and ONTAP clusters by choosing a one-time data replication, which can help you move data to and from the cloud, or a recurring schedule, which can help with disaster recovery or long-term retention.

[Click here for more details.](#)

Using ONTAP as persistent storage

Cloud Manager can automate the deployment of NetApp Trident on Kubernetes clusters so you can use ONTAP as persistent storage for containers.

[Click here for more details.](#)

Tier on-prem data to the cloud

Learn about Cloud Tiering

NetApp's Cloud Tiering service extends your data center to the cloud by automatically tiering inactive data from ONTAP clusters to object storage. This frees valuable space on the cluster for more workloads, without making changes to the application layer. Cloud Tiering can reduce costs in your data center and enables a switch from a CAPEX model to an OPEX model.

The Cloud Tiering service leverages the capabilities of *FabricPool*. FabricPool is a NetApp Data Fabric technology that enables automated tiering of data to low-cost object storage. Active data remains on high-performance SSDs, while inactive data is tiered to low-cost object storage while preserving ONTAP data efficiencies.

Features

Cloud Tiering offers automation, monitoring, reports, and a common management interface:

- Automation makes it easier to set up and manage data tiering from ONTAP clusters to the cloud
- A single pane of glass removes the need to independently manage FabricPool across several clusters
- Reports show the amount of active and inactive data on each cluster
- A tiering health status helps you identify and correct issues as they occur

For more details about the value that Cloud Tiering provides, [check out the Cloud Tiering page on NetApp Cloud Central](#).



While Cloud Tiering can significantly reduce storage footprints, it is not a backup solution.

Supported object storage providers

You can tier inactive data from an ONTAP cluster to Amazon S3, Microsoft Azure Blob storage, Google Cloud Storage, or StorageGRID.

Cost

Pay for Cloud Tiering through a pay-as-you-go subscription, an ONTAP tiering license called *FabricPool*, or a combination of both. A 30-day free trial is available for your first cluster if you don't have a license. [Learn how licensing works](#).

There are no charges when tiering data to StorageGRID. Neither a BYOL license or PAYGO registration is required.

Cloud Tiering integration with Cloud Manager

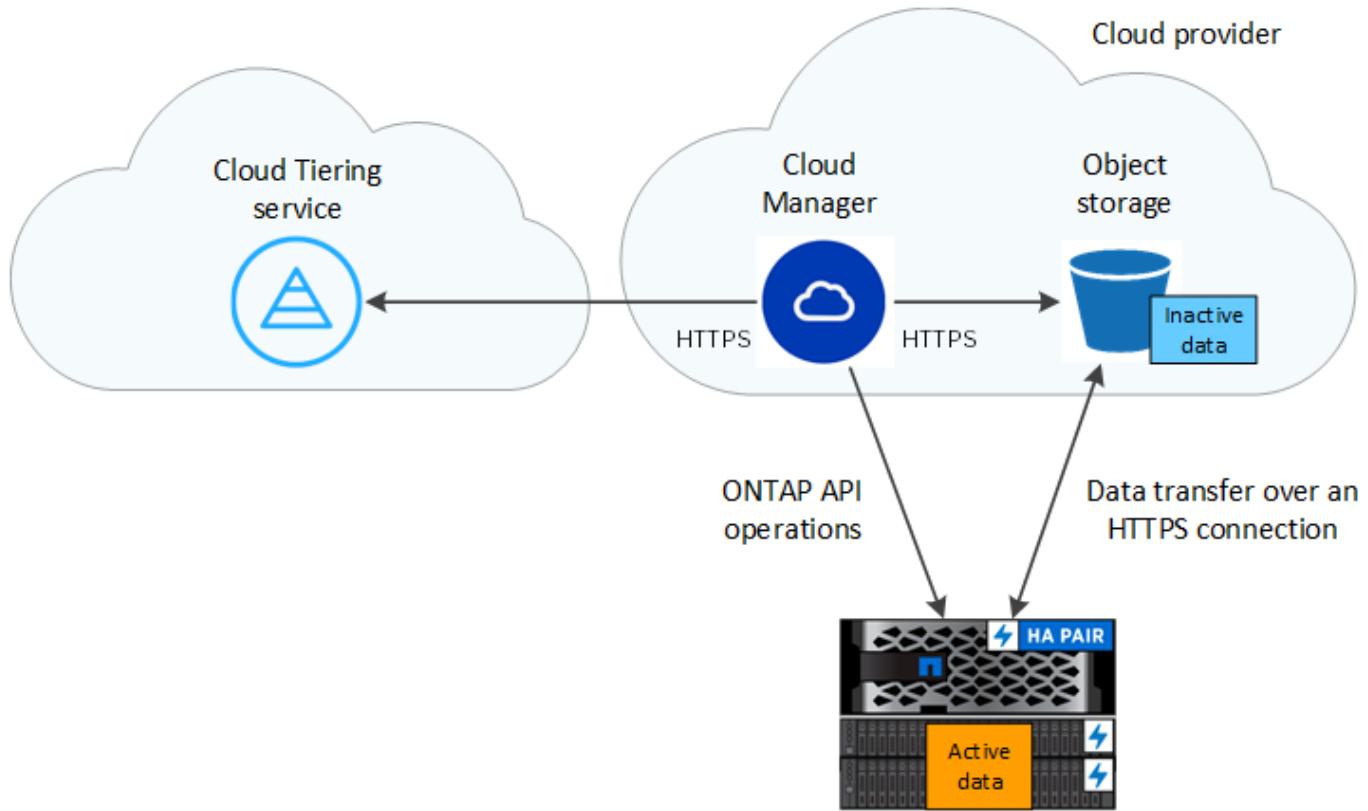
The Cloud Tiering service is available from [NetApp Cloud Central](#) as a standalone service. But it's also integrated into Cloud Manager to make it easier for you to manage your hybrid cloud storage from a single interface. The integration with Cloud Manager also reduces complexity because there's no need to deploy the NetApp Service Connector because it's part of Cloud Manager.

If you switch between Cloud Manager and [the interface for Cloud Tiering](#), you'll see the same set of clusters. Think of it as the same application presented through different interfaces.

How Cloud Tiering works

Cloud Tiering is a NetApp-managed service that uses FabricPool technology to automatically tier inactive (cold) data from your on-premises ONTAP clusters to object storage in your public cloud or private cloud. Connections to ONTAP take place from Cloud Manager.

The following image shows the relationship between each component:



At a high level, Cloud Tiering works like this:

1. You discover your on-prem cluster from Cloud Manager.
2. You set up tiering by providing details about your object storage, including the bucket/container and a storage class or access tier.
3. Cloud Manager configures ONTAP to use the object storage provider and discovers the amount of active and inactive data on the cluster.
4. You choose the volumes to tier and the tiering policy to apply to those volumes.
5. ONTAP starts tiering inactive data to the object store, as soon as the data has reached the thresholds to be considered inactive (see [Volume tiering policies](#)).

Object storage

Each ONTAP cluster tiers inactive data to a single object store. When you set up data tiering, you have the choice to add a new bucket/container or to select an existing bucket/container, along with a storage class or access tier.

- [Learn about supported S3 storage classes](#)
- [Learn about supported Azure Blob access tiers](#)
- [Learn about supported Google Cloud storage classes](#)

Volume tiering policies

When you select the volumes that you want to tier, you choose a *volume tiering policy* to apply to each volume. A tiering policy determines when or whether the user data blocks of a volume are moved to the cloud.

No tiering policy

Keeps the data on a volume in the performance tier, preventing it from being moved to the cloud.

Cold snapshots (Snapshot only)

ONTAP tiers cold Snapshot blocks in the volume that are not shared with the active file system to object storage. If read, cold data blocks on the cloud tier become hot and are moved to the performance tier.

Data is tiered only after an aggregate has reached 50% capacity and when the data has reached the cooling period. The default number of cooling days is 2, but you can adjust the number of days.



Writes from the cloud tier to the performance tier are disabled if performance tier capacity is greater than 70%. If this occurs, blocks are accessed directly from the cloud tier.

Cold user data (Auto)

ONTAP tiers all cold blocks in the volume (not including metadata) to object storage. The cold data includes not just Snapshot copies but also cold user data from the active file system.

If read by random reads, cold data blocks on the cloud tier become hot and are moved to the performance tier. If read by sequential reads, such as those associated with index and antivirus scans, cold data blocks on the cloud tier stay cold and are not written to the performance tier.

Data is tiered only after an aggregate has reached 50% capacity and when the data has reached the cooling period. The cooling period is the time that user data in a volume must remain inactive for the data to be considered "cold" and moved to the object store. The default number of cooling days is 31, but you can adjust the number of days.



Writes from the cloud tier to the performance tier are disabled if performance tier capacity is greater than 70%. If this occurs, blocks are accessed directly from the cloud tier.

All user data (All)

All data (not including metadata) is *immediately* moved to the cloud tier. There is no need to wait 48 hours for new blocks in a volume to become cold. Note that blocks located in the volume prior to the All policy being set require 48 hours to become cold.

If read, cold data blocks on the cloud tier stay cold and are not written back to the performance tier. This policy is available starting with ONTAP 9.6.

Take the following into consideration before you choose this tiering policy:

- Tiering data immediately reduces storage efficiencies (inline only).
- You should use this policy only if you are confident that cold data on the volume will not change.
- Object storage is not transactional and will result in significant fragmentation if subjected to change.
- Consider the impact of SnapMirror transfers before assigning the All tiering policy to source volumes in data protection relationships.

Because data is tiered immediately, SnapMirror will read data from the cloud tier rather than the performance tier. This will result in slower SnapMirror operations—possibly slowing other SnapMirror operations later in queue—even if they are using different tiering policies.

All DP user data (Backup)

All data on a data protection volume (not including metadata) is immediately moved to the cloud tier. If read, cold data blocks on the cloud tier stay cold and are not written back to the performance tier (starting with ONTAP 9.4).



This policy is available for ONTAP 9.5 or earlier. It was replaced with the **All** tiering policy starting with ONTAP 9.6.

Tiering data from on-premises ONTAP clusters to Amazon S3

Free space on your on-prem ONTAP clusters by tiering data to Amazon S3. Data tiering is powered by NetApp's Cloud Tiering service.

Quick start

Get started quickly by following these steps or scroll down to the remaining sections for full details.



1 Prepare to tier data to Amazon S3

You need the following:

- An AFF or FAS system with all-SSD aggregates that's running ONTAP 9.2 or later and has an HTTPS connection to Amazon S3.
- An AWS account that has an access key and [the required permissions](#) so the ONTAP cluster can tier inactive data in and out of S3.
- Cloud Manager installed in an AWS VPC or on your premises.
- Networking for Cloud Manager that enables an outbound HTTPS connection to the ONTAP cluster, to S3 storage, and to the Cloud Tiering service.

2

Set up tiering

Select an on-prem working environment, click **Setup Tiering** and follow the prompts to tier data to Amazon S3.

3

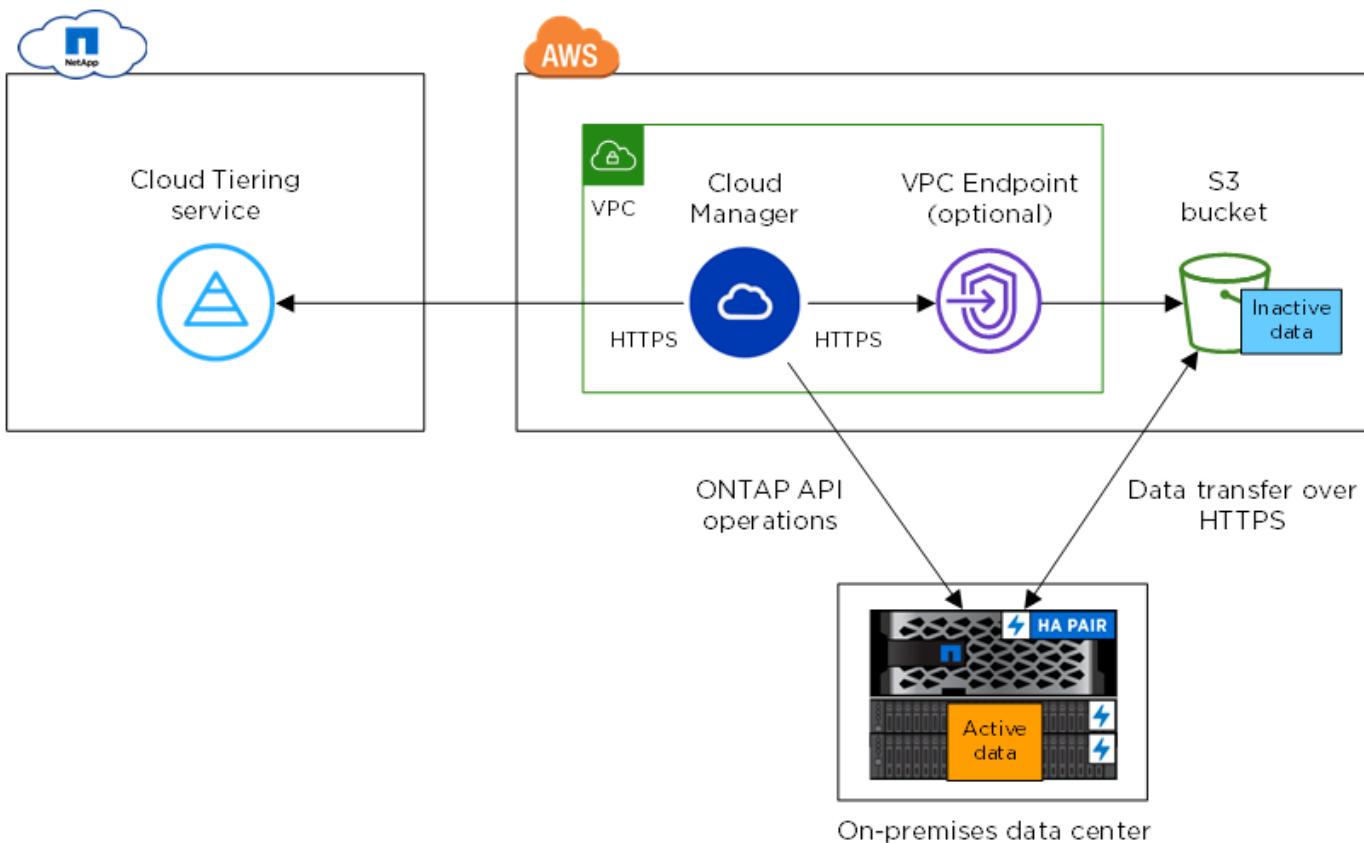
Set up licensing

Pay for Cloud Tiering through a pay-as-you-go subscription, an ONTAP tiering license, or a combination of both. Licensing isn't available from within Cloud Manager, [but you can go directly to the Cloud Tiering service to set it up](#).

Requirements

Verify support for your ONTAP cluster, set up your networking, and prepare your object storage.

The following image shows each component and the connections that you need to prepare between them:



Communication between Cloud Manager and S3 is for object storage setup only. Cloud Manager can reside on your premises, instead of in the cloud.

Preparing your ONTAP clusters

Your ONTAP clusters must meet the following requirements when tiering data to Amazon S3.

Supported ONTAP platforms

Cloud Tiering supports AFF systems and all-SSD aggregates on FAS systems.

Supported ONTAP version

ONTAP 9.2 or later

Cluster networking requirements

- The ONTAP cluster initiates an HTTPS connection over port 443 to Amazon S3.

ONTAP reads and writes data to and from object storage. The object storage never initiates, it just responds.

Although AWS Direct Connect provides better performance and lower data transfer charges, it's not required between the ONTAP cluster and S3. Because performance is significantly better when using AWS Direct Connect, doing so is the recommended best practice.

- An inbound connection is required from Cloud Manager, which can reside in an AWS VPC or on your premises.

A connection between the cluster and the Cloud Tiering service is not required.

- An intercluster LIF is required on each ONTAP node that hosts tiered volumes. The LIF must be associated with the *IPspace* that ONTAP should use to connect to object storage.

IPspaces enable network traffic segregation, allowing for separation of client traffic for privacy and security. [Learn more about IPspaces](#).

When you set up data tiering, Cloud Tiering prompts you for the IPspace to use. You should choose the IPspace that each LIF is associated with. That might be the "Default" IPspace or a custom IPspace that you created.

Supported volumes and aggregates

The total number of volumes that Cloud Tiering can tier might be less than the number of volumes on your ONTAP system. That's because volumes can't be tiered from some aggregates. For example, you can't tier data from SnapLock volumes or from MetroCluster configurations. Refer to ONTAP documentation for [functionality or features not supported by FabricPool](#).



Cloud Tiering supports FlexGroup volumes, starting with ONTAP 9.5. Setup works the same as any other volume.

Preparing networking for Cloud Manager

Ensure that Cloud Manager has the required networking connections. Cloud Manager can be installed on-prem or in AWS.

Steps

1. Ensure that the network where Cloud Manager is installed enables the following connections:
 - An outbound internet connection to the Cloud Tiering service over port 443 (HTTPS)
 - An HTTPS connection over port 443 to S3
 - An HTTPS connection over port 443 to your ONTAP clusters
2. If needed, enable a VPC Endpoint to S3.

A VPC Endpoint to S3 is recommended if you have a Direct Connect or VPN connection from your ONTAP cluster to the VPC and you want communication between Cloud Manager and S3 to stay in your AWS internal network.

Preparing Amazon S3

When you set up data tiering to a new cluster, you're prompted to create an S3 bucket or to select an existing S3 bucket in the AWS account where Cloud Manager is set up.

The AWS account must have permissions and an access key that you can enter in Cloud Tiering. The ONTAP cluster uses the access key to tier data in and out of S3.

Steps

1. Provide the following permissions to the IAM user:

```
"s3>ListAllMyBuckets",
"s3>ListBucket",
"s3:GetBucketLocation",
"s3:GetObject",
"s3:PutObject",
"s3>DeleteObject"
```

[AWS Documentation: Creating a Role to Delegate Permissions to an IAM User](#)

2. Create or locate an access key.

Cloud Tiering passes the access key on to the ONTAP cluster. The credentials are not stored in the Cloud Tiering service.

[AWS Documentation: Managing Access Keys for IAM Users](#)

Tiering inactive data from your first cluster to Amazon S3

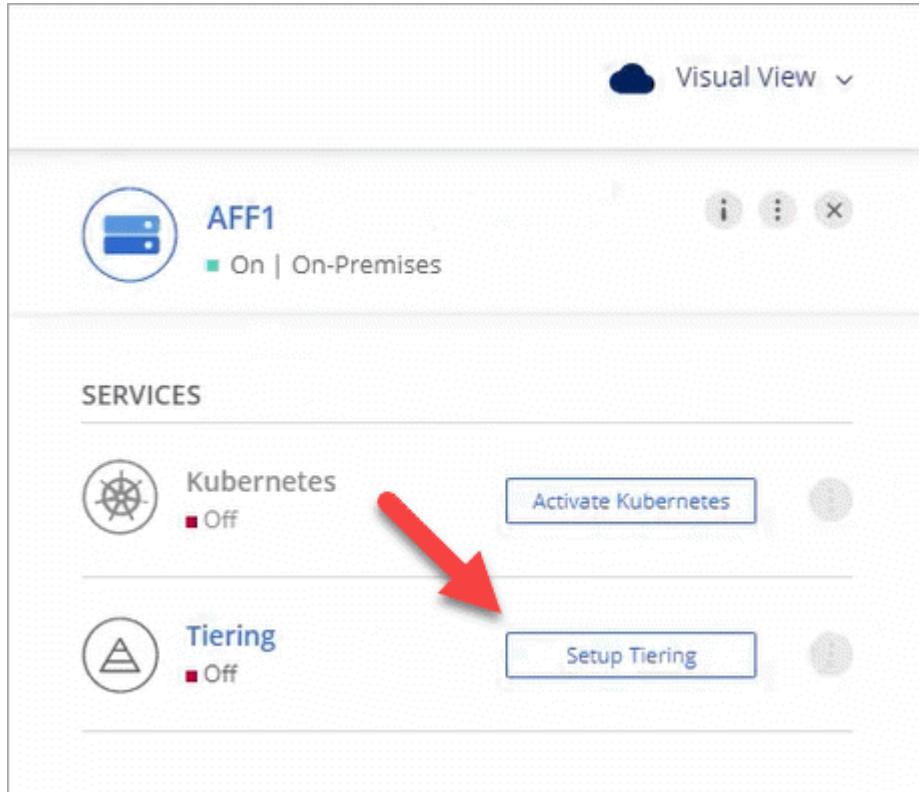
After you prepare your AWS environment, start tiering inactive data from your first cluster.

What you'll need

- An on-premises working environment.
- An AWS access key for an IAM user who has the required S3 permissions.

Steps

1. Select an on-prem cluster.
2. Click **Setup Tiering**.



You're now on the Tiering dashboard.

3. Click **Set up Tiering** next to the cluster.
4. Complete the steps on the **Tiering Setup** page:
 - a. **S3 Bucket:** Add a new S3 bucket or select an existing S3 bucket that starts with the prefix *fabric-pool* and click **Continue**.

The *fabric-pool* prefix is required because the IAM policy for the Service Connector enables the instance to perform S3 actions on buckets named with that exact prefix.

For example, you could name the S3 bucket *fabric-pool-AFF1*, where *AFF1* is the name of the cluster.

- b. **Storage Class:** Select the S3 storage class that you want to transition the data to after 30 days and click **Continue**.

If you choose Standard, then the data remains in that storage class.

- c. **Credentials:** Enter the access key ID and secret key for an IAM user who has the required S3 permissions.

The IAM user must be in the same AWS account as the bucket that you selected or created on the **S3 Bucket** page.

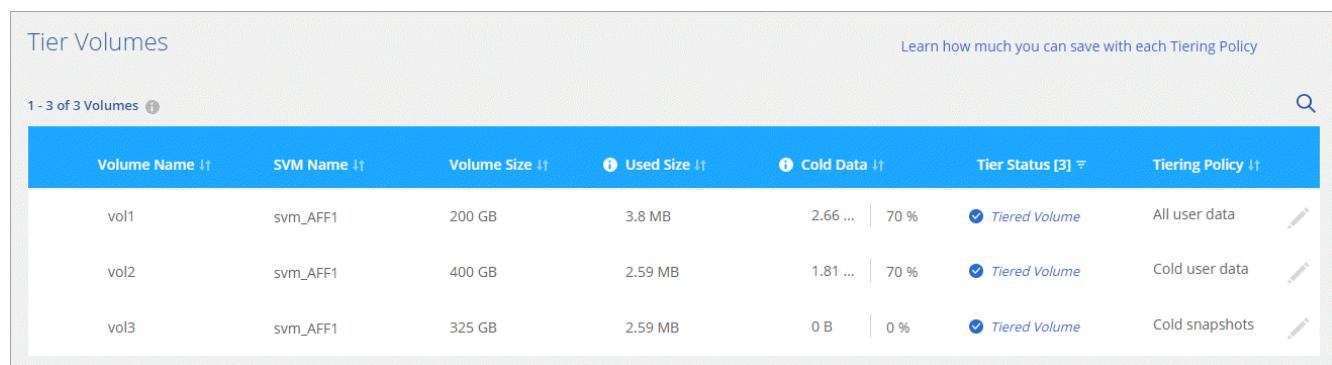
- d. **Cluster Network:** Select the IPspace that ONTAP should use to connect to object storage and click **Continue**.

Selecting the correct IPspace ensures that Cloud Tiering can set up a connection from ONTAP to your cloud provider's object storage.

5. Click **Continue** to select the volumes that you want to tier.

6. On the **Tier Volumes** page, set up tiering for each volume. Click the  icon, select a tiering policy, optionally adjust the cooling days, and click **Apply**.

[Learn more about volume tiering policies.](#)



Volume Name	SVM Name	Volume Size	Used Size	Cold Data	Tier Status	Tiering Policy	Action
vol1	svm_AFF1	200 GB	3.8 MB	2.66 ...	70 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	All user data
vol2	svm_AFF1	400 GB	2.59 MB	1.81 ...	70 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	Cold user data
vol3	svm_AFF1	325 GB	2.59 MB	0 B	0 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	Cold snapshots

Result

You've successfully set up data tiering from volumes on the cluster to S3 object storage.

What's next?

[Be sure to subscribe from the Cloud Tiering service.](#)

You can also add additional clusters or review information about the active and inactive data on the cluster. For details, see [Managing data tiering from your clusters](#).

Tiering data from on-premises ONTAP clusters to Azure Blob storage

Free space on your on-prem ONTAP clusters by tiering data to Azure Blob storage. Data tiering is powered by NetApp's Cloud Tiering service.

Quick start

Get started quickly by following these steps or scroll down to the remaining sections for full details.

1

Prepare to tier data to Azure Blob storage

You need the following:

- An AFF or FAS system with all-SSD aggregates that's running ONTAP 9.4 or later and has an HTTPS connection to Azure Blob storage.
- Cloud Manager installed in an Azure VNet.
- Networking for Cloud Manager that enables an outbound HTTPS connection to the ONTAP cluster in your data center, to Azure Blob storage, and to the Cloud Tiering service.

2

Set up tiering

Log in to [NetApp Cloud Central](#), start a free trial of the Cloud Tiering service, and click **Let's Start, Discover Your First Cluster**.

3

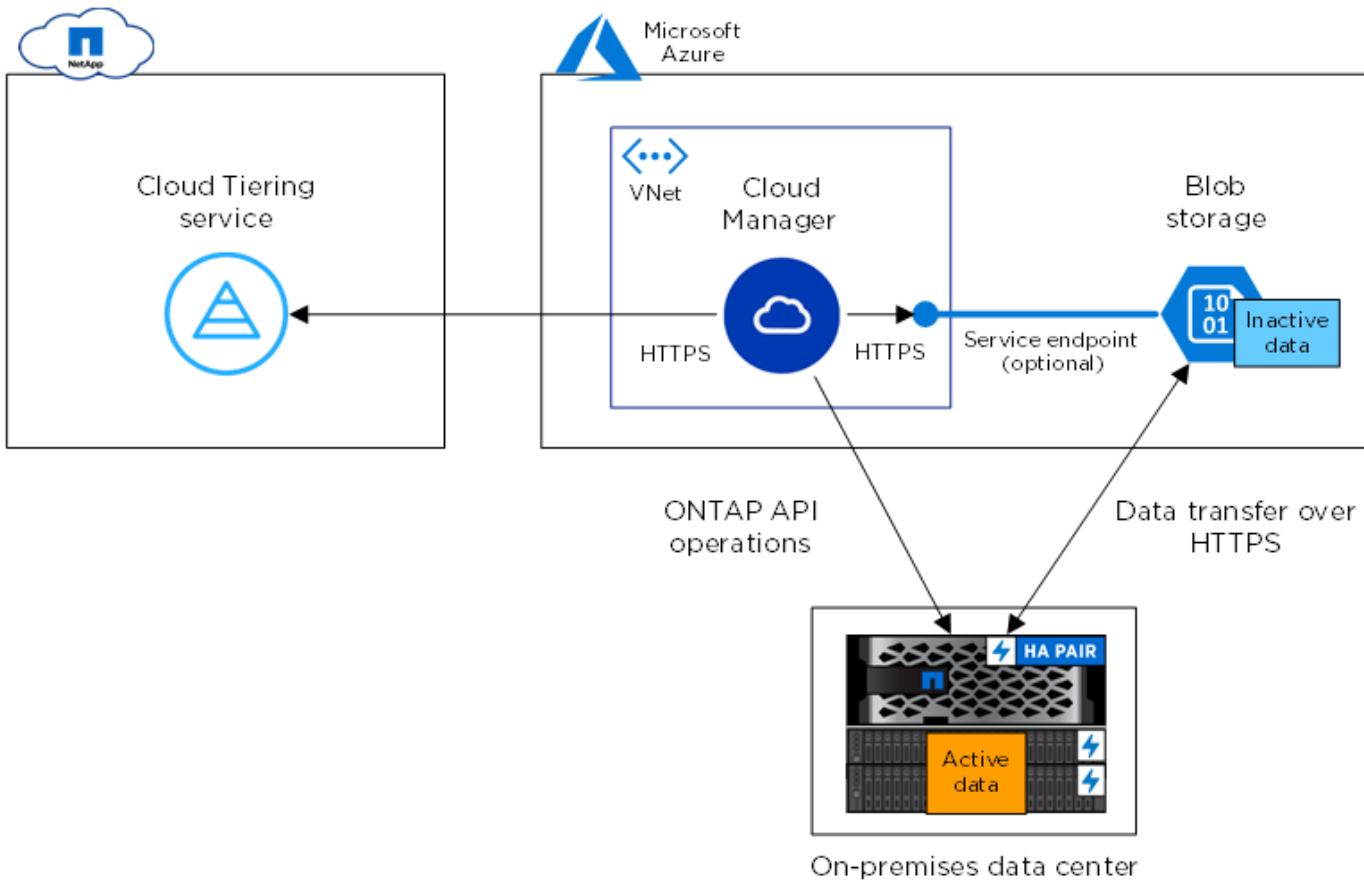
Set up licensing

Pay for Cloud Tiering through a pay-as-you-go subscription, an ONTAP tiering license, or a combination of both. Licensing isn't available from within Cloud Manager, [but you can go directly to the Cloud Tiering service to set it up](#).

Requirements

Verify support for your ONTAP cluster, set up your networking, and prepare your object storage.

The following image shows each component and the connections that you need to prepare between them:



Communication between Cloud Manager and Blob storage is for object storage setup only.

Preparing your ONTAP clusters

Your ONTAP clusters must meet the following requirements when tiering data to Azure Blob storage.

Supported ONTAP platforms

Cloud Tiering supports AFF systems and all-SSD aggregates on FAS systems.

Supported ONTAP version

ONTAP 9.4 or later

Cluster networking requirements

- The ONTAP cluster initiates an HTTPS connection over port 443 to Azure Blob storage.

ONTAP reads and writes data to and from object storage. The object storage never initiates, it just responds.

Although ExpressRoute provides better performance and lower data transfer charges, it's not required between the ONTAP cluster and Azure Blob storage. Because performance is significantly better when using ExpressRoute, doing so is the recommended best practice.

- An inbound connection is required from the NetApp Service Connector, which resides in an Azure VNet.

A connection between the cluster and the Cloud Tiering service is not required.

- An intercluster LIF is required on each ONTAP node that hosts tiered volumes. The LIF must be associated with the *IPspace* that ONTAP should use to connect to object storage.

IPspaces enable network traffic segregation, allowing for separation of client traffic for privacy and security. [Learn more about IPspaces](#).

When you set up data tiering, Cloud Tiering prompts you for the IPspace to use. You should choose the IPspace that each LIF is associated with. That might be the "Default" IPspace or a custom IPspace that you created.

Supported volumes and aggregates

The total number of volumes that Cloud Tiering can tier might be less than the number of volumes on your ONTAP system. That's because volumes can't be tiered from some aggregates. For example, you can't tier data from SnapLock volumes or from MetroCluster configurations. Refer to ONTAP documentation for [functionality or features not supported by FabricPool](#).



Cloud Tiering supports FlexGroup volumes, starting with ONTAP 9.5. Setup works the same as any other volume.

Preparing networking for Cloud Manager

Ensure that Cloud Manager has the required networking connections.

Steps

1. Ensure that the VNet where Cloud Manager is installed enables the following connections:
 - An outbound internet connection to the Cloud Tiering service over port 443 (HTTPS)
 - An HTTPS connection over port 443 to Azure Blob storage
 - An HTTPS connection over port 443 to your ONTAP clusters
2. If needed, enable a VNet service endpoint to Azure storage.

A VNet service endpoint to Azure storage is recommended if you have an ExpressRoute or VPN connection from your ONTAP cluster to the VNet and you want communication between Cloud Manager and Blob storage to stay in your virtual private network.

Tiering inactive data from your first cluster to Azure Blob storage

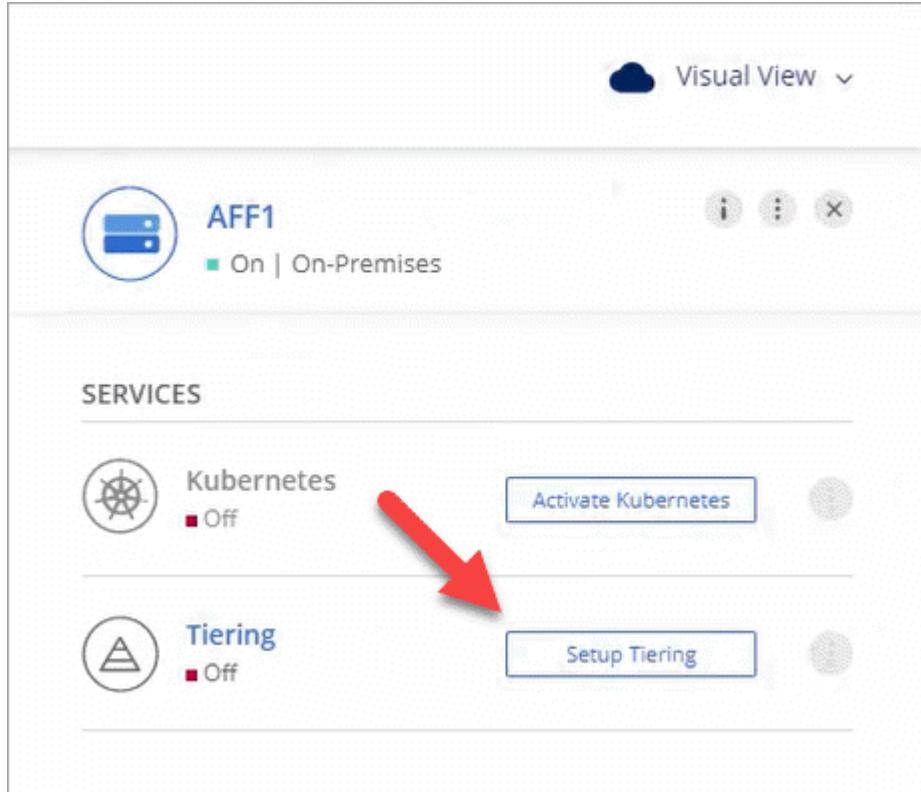
After you prepare your Azure environment, start tiering inactive data from your first cluster.

What you'll need

An on-premises working environment.

Steps

1. Select an on-prem cluster.
2. Click **Setup Tiering**.



You're now on the Tiering dashboard.

3. Click **Set up Tiering** next to the cluster.
4. Complete the steps on the **Tiering Setup** page:
 - a. **Azure Container:** Add a new Blob container or select an existing container and click **Continue**.
 - b. **Access Tier:** Select the access tier that you want to use for the tiered data and click **Continue**.
 - c. **Cluster Network:** Select the IPspace that ONTAP should use to connect to object storage and click **Continue**.
5. Click **Continue** to select the volumes that you want to tier.
6. On the **Tier Volumes** page, set up tiering for each volume. Click the icon, select a tiering policy, optionally adjust the cooling days, and click **Apply**.

[Learn more about volume tiering policies.](#)

Tier Volumes							Learn how much you can save with each Tiering Policy
Volume Name	SVM Name	Volume Size	Used Size	Cold Data	Tier Status	Tiering Policy	
vol1	svm_AFF1	200 GB	3.8 MB	2.66 ...	70 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	All user data
vol2	svm_AFF1	400 GB	2.59 MB	1.81 ...	70 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	Cold user data
vol3	svm_AFF1	325 GB	2.59 MB	0 B	0 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	Cold snapshots

Result

You've successfully set up data tiering from volumes on the cluster to Azure Blob object storage.

What's next?

[Be sure to subscribe from the Cloud Tiering service.](#)

You can also add additional clusters or review information about the active and inactive data on the cluster. For details, see [Managing data tiering from your clusters](#).

Tiering data from on-premises ONTAP clusters to Google Cloud Storage

Free space on your on-prem ONTAP clusters by tiering data to Google Cloud Storage. Data tiering is powered by NetApp's Cloud Tiering service.

Quick start

Get started quickly by following these steps or scroll down to the remaining sections for full details.

1

Prepare to tier data to Google Cloud Storage

You need the following:

- An AFF or FAS system with all-SSD aggregates that's running ONTAP 9.6 or later and has an HTTPS connection to Google Cloud Storage.
- A service account that has the predefined Storage Admin role and storage access keys.
- Cloud Manager installed in a Google Cloud Platform VPC.
- Networking for Cloud Manager that enables an outbound HTTPS connection to the ONTAP cluster in your data center, to Google Cloud Storage, and to the Cloud Tiering service.

2

Set up tiering

Select an on-prem working environment, click **Setup Tiering** and follow the prompts to tier data to

Google Cloud Storage.

3

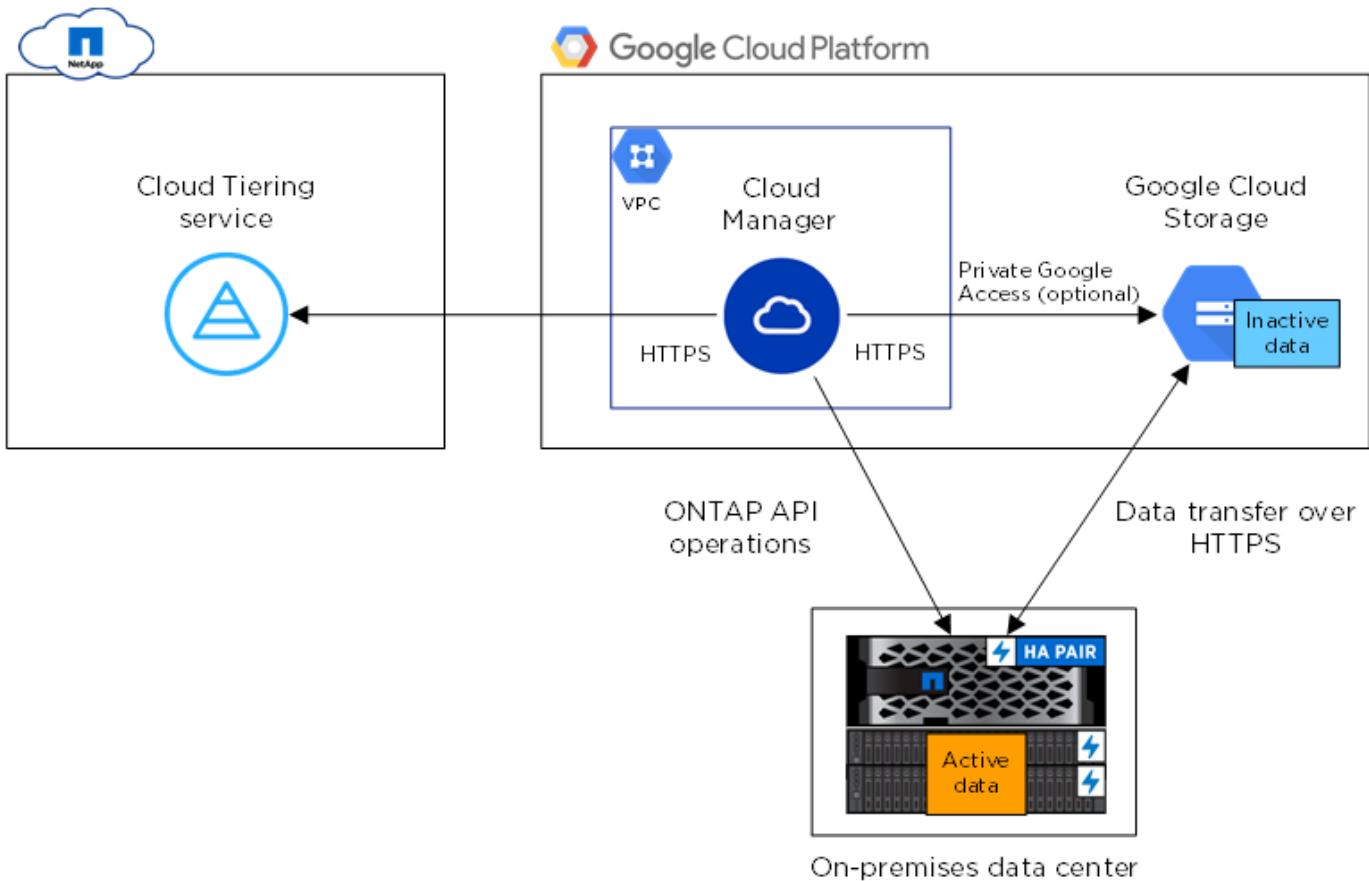
Set up licensing

Pay for Cloud Tiering through a pay-as-you-go subscription, an ONTAP tiering license, or a combination of both. Licensing isn't available from within Cloud Manager, [but you can go directly to the Cloud Tiering service to set it up](#).

Requirements

Verify support for your ONTAP cluster, set up your networking, and prepare your object storage.

The following image shows each component and the connections that you need to prepare between them:



Communication between Cloud Manager and Google Cloud Storage is for object storage setup only.

Preparing your ONTAP clusters

Your ONTAP clusters must meet the following requirements when tiering data to Google Cloud Storage.

Supported ONTAP platforms

Cloud Tiering supports AFF systems and all-SSD aggregates on FAS systems.

Supported ONTAP versions

ONTAP 9.6 or later

Cluster networking requirements

- The ONTAP cluster initiates an HTTPS connection over port 443 to Google Cloud Storage.

ONTAP reads and writes data to and from object storage. The object storage never initiates, it just responds.

Although a Google Cloud Interconnect provides better performance and lower data transfer charges, it's not required between the ONTAP cluster and Google Cloud Storage. Because performance is significantly better when using Google Cloud Interconnect, doing so is the recommended best practice.

- An inbound connection is required from the NetApp Service Connector, which resides in an Google Cloud Platform VPC.

A connection between the cluster and the Cloud Tiering service is not required.

- An intercluster LIF is required on each ONTAP node that hosts tiered volumes. The LIF must be associated with the *IPspace* that ONTAP should use to connect to object storage.

IPspaces enable network traffic segregation, allowing for separation of client traffic for privacy and security. [Learn more about IPspaces](#).

When you set up data tiering, Cloud Tiering prompts you for the IPspace to use. You should choose the IPspace that each LIF is associated with. That might be the "Default" IPspace or a custom IPspace that you created.

Supported volumes and aggregates

The total number of volumes that Cloud Tiering can tier might be less than the number of volumes on your ONTAP system. That's because volumes can't be tiered from some aggregates. For example, you can't tier data from SnapLock volumes or from MetroCluster configurations. Refer to ONTAP documentation for [functionality or features not supported by FabricPool](#).



Cloud Tiering supports FlexGroup volumes. Setup works the same as any other volume.

Preparing networking for Cloud Manager

Ensure that Cloud Manager has the required networking connections.

Steps

1. Ensure that the VPC where Cloud Manager is installed enables the following connections:
 - An outbound internet connection to the Cloud Tiering service over port 443 (HTTPS)
 - An HTTPS connection over port 443 to Google Cloud Storage
 - An HTTPS connection over port 443 to your ONTAP clusters
2. Optional: Enable Private Google Access on the subnet where you plan to deploy the Service Connector.

[Private Google Access](#) is recommended if you have a direct connection from your ONTAP cluster to the VPC and you want communication between Cloud Manager and Google Cloud Storage to stay in your virtual private network. Note that Private Google Access works with VM instances that have only internal (private) IP addresses (no external IP addresses).

Preparing Google Cloud Storage for data tiering

When you set up tiering, you need to provide storage access keys for a service account that has Storage Admin permissions. A service account enables Cloud Tiering to authenticate and access Cloud Storage buckets used for data tiering. The keys are required so that Google Cloud Storage knows who is making the request.

Steps

1. [Create a service account that has the predefined Storage Admin role.](#)
2. Go to [GCP Storage Settings](#) and create access keys for the service account:
 - a. Select a project, and click **Interoperability**. If you haven't already done so, click **Enable interoperability access**.
 - b. Under **Access keys for service accounts**, click **Create a key for a service account**, select the service account that you just created, and click **Create Key**.

You'll need to [enter the keys in Cloud Tiering](#) later when you set up tiering.

Tiering inactive data from your first cluster to Google Cloud Storage

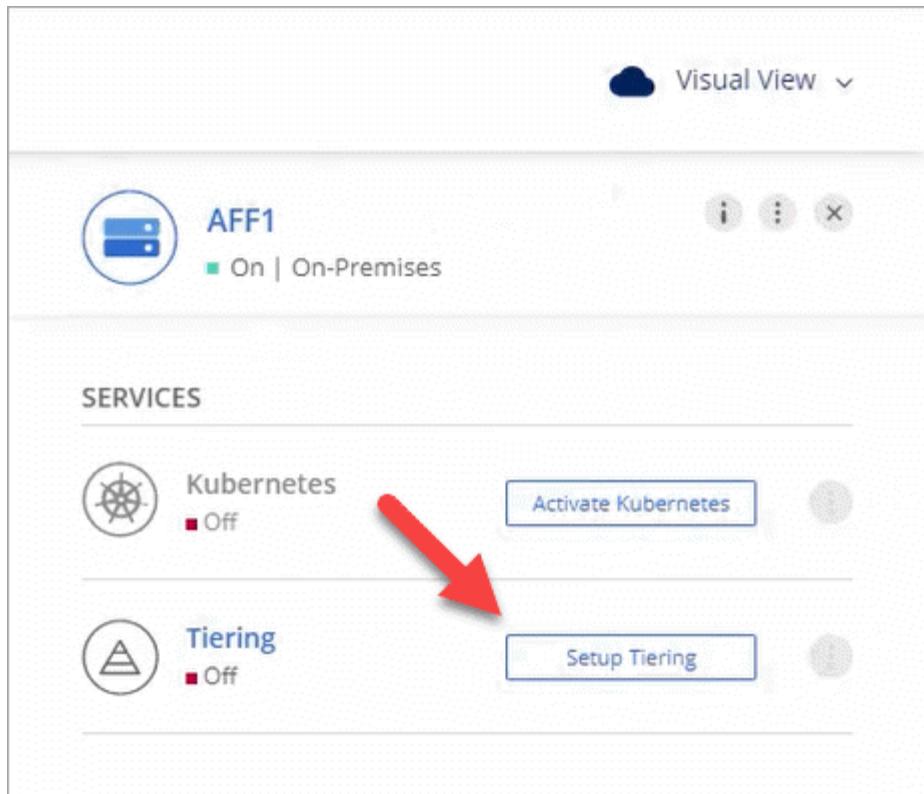
After you prepare your Google Cloud environment, start tiering inactive data from your first cluster.

What you'll need

- [An on-premises working environment.](#)
- Storage access keys for a service account that has the Storage Admin role.

Steps

1. Select an on-prem cluster.
2. Click **Setup Tiering**.



You're now on the Tiering dashboard.

3. Click **Set up Tiering** next to the cluster.
4. Complete the steps on the **Tiering Setup** page:
 - a. **Bucket:** Add a new Google Cloud Storage bucket or select an existing bucket and click **Continue**.
 - b. **Storage Class:** Select the storage class that you want to use for the tiered data and click **Continue**.
 - c. **Credentials:** Enter the storage access key and secret key for a service account that has the Storage Admin role.
 - d. **Cluster Network:** Select the IPspace that ONTAP should use to connect to object storage and click **Continue**.
5. Click **Continue** to select the volumes that you want to tier.
6. On the **Tier Volumes** page, set up tiering for each volume. Click the icon, select a tiering policy, optionally adjust the cooling days, and click **Apply**.

[Learn more about volume tiering policies.](#)

Tier Volumes							Learn how much you can save with each Tiering Policy
1 - 3 of 3 Volumes		Tier Status [3]					Search
Volume Name	SVM Name	Volume Size	Used Size	Cold Data	Tier Status	Tiering Policy	
vol1	svm_AFF1	200 GB	3.8 MB	2.66 ... 70 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	All user data	
vol2	svm_AFF1	400 GB	2.59 MB	1.81 ... 70 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	Cold user data	
vol3	svm_AFF1	325 GB	2.59 MB	0 B 0 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	Cold snapshots	

Result

You've successfully set up data tiering from volumes on the cluster to Google Cloud object storage.

What's next?

[Be sure to subscribe from the Cloud Tiering service.](#)

You can also add additional clusters or review information about the active and inactive data on the cluster. For details, see [Managing data tiering from your clusters](#).

Tiering data from on-premises ONTAP clusters to StorageGRID

Free space on your on-prem ONTAP clusters by tiering data to StorageGRID. Data tiering is powered by NetApp's Cloud Tiering service.

Quick start

Get started quickly by following these steps or scroll down to the remaining sections for full details.

1

Prepare to tier data to StorageGRID

You need the following:

- An AFF or FAS system with all-SSD aggregates that's running ONTAP 9.4 or later, and a connection over a user-specified port to StorageGRID.
- StorageGRID 10.3 or later with AWS access keys that have S3 permissions.
- Cloud Manager installed on your premises.
- Networking for Cloud Manager that enables an outbound HTTPS connection to the ONTAP cluster, to StorageGRID, and to the Cloud Tiering service.

2

Set up tiering

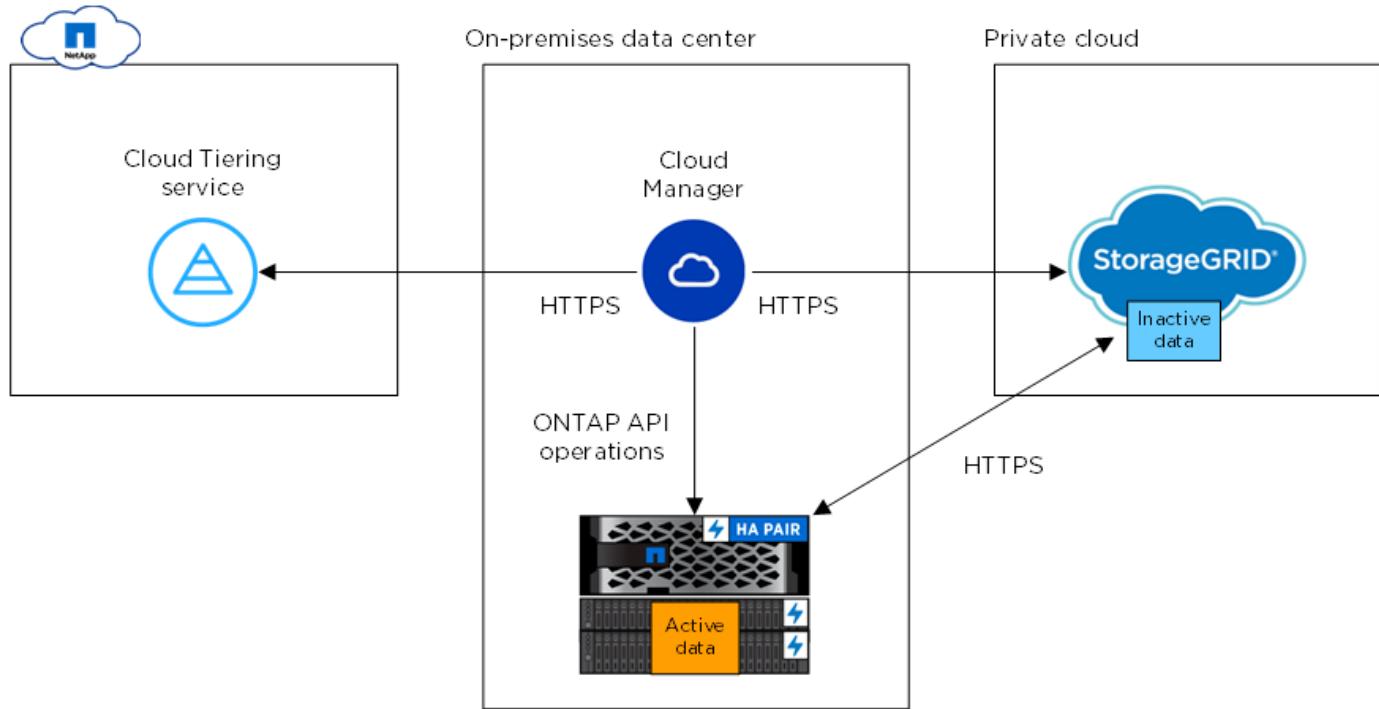
Select an on-prem working environment, click **Setup Tiering** and follow the prompts to tier data to

StorageGRID.

Requirements

Verify support for your ONTAP cluster, set up your networking, and prepare your object storage.

The following image shows each component and the connections that you need to prepare between them:



Communication between Cloud Manager and StorageGRID is for object storage setup only.

Preparing your ONTAP clusters

Your ONTAP clusters must meet the following requirements when tiering data to StorageGRID.

Supported ONTAP platforms

Cloud Tiering supports AFF systems and all-SSD aggregates on FAS systems.

Supported ONTAP version

ONTAP 9.4 or later

Licensing

A FabricPool license isn't required on the ONTAP cluster when tiering data to StorageGRID.

Cluster networking requirements

- The ONTAP cluster initiates an HTTPS connection over a user-specified port to StorageGRID (the port is configurable during tiering setup).

ONTAP reads and writes data to and from object storage. The object storage never initiates, it just responds.

- An inbound connection is required from Cloud Manager, which must reside on your premises.
A connection between the cluster and the Cloud Tiering service is not required.
- An intercluster LIF is required on each ONTAP node that hosts tiered volumes. The LIF must be associated with the *IPspace* that ONTAP should use to connect to object storage.

IPspaces enable network traffic segregation, allowing for separation of client traffic for privacy and security. [Learn more about IPspaces](#).

When you set up data tiering, Cloud Tiering prompts you for the IPspace to use. You should choose the IPspace that each LIF is associated with. That might be the "Default" IPspace or a custom IPspace that you created.

Supported volumes and aggregates

The total number of volumes that Cloud Tiering can tier might be less than the number of volumes on your ONTAP system. That's because volumes can't be tiered from some aggregates. For example, you can't tier data from SnapLock volumes or from MetroCluster configurations. Refer to ONTAP documentation for [functionality or features not supported by FabricPool](#).



Cloud Tiering supports FlexGroup volumes, starting with ONTAP 9.5. Setup works the same as any other volume.

Preparing StorageGRID

StorageGRID must meet the following requirements.

Supported StorageGRID versions

StorageGRID 10.3 and later are supported.

S3 credentials

When you set up tiering to StorageGRID, you need to provide Cloud Tiering with an S3 access key and secret key. Cloud Tiering uses the keys to access your buckets.

These access keys must be associated with a user who has the following permissions:

```
"s3>ListAllMyBuckets",
"s3>ListBucket",
"s3GetObject",
"s3PutObject",
"s3DeleteObject",
"s3CreateBucket"
```

Object versioning

You must not enable StorageGRID object versioning on the object store bucket.

Preparing networking for Cloud Manager

Ensure that Cloud Manager has the required networking connections.

Steps

1. Ensure that the network where Cloud Manager is installed enables the following connections:
 - An outbound internet connection to the Cloud Tiering service over port 443 (HTTPS)
 - An HTTPS connection over port 443 to StorageGRID
 - An HTTPS connection over port 443 to your ONTAP clusters

Tiering inactive data from your first cluster to StorageGRID

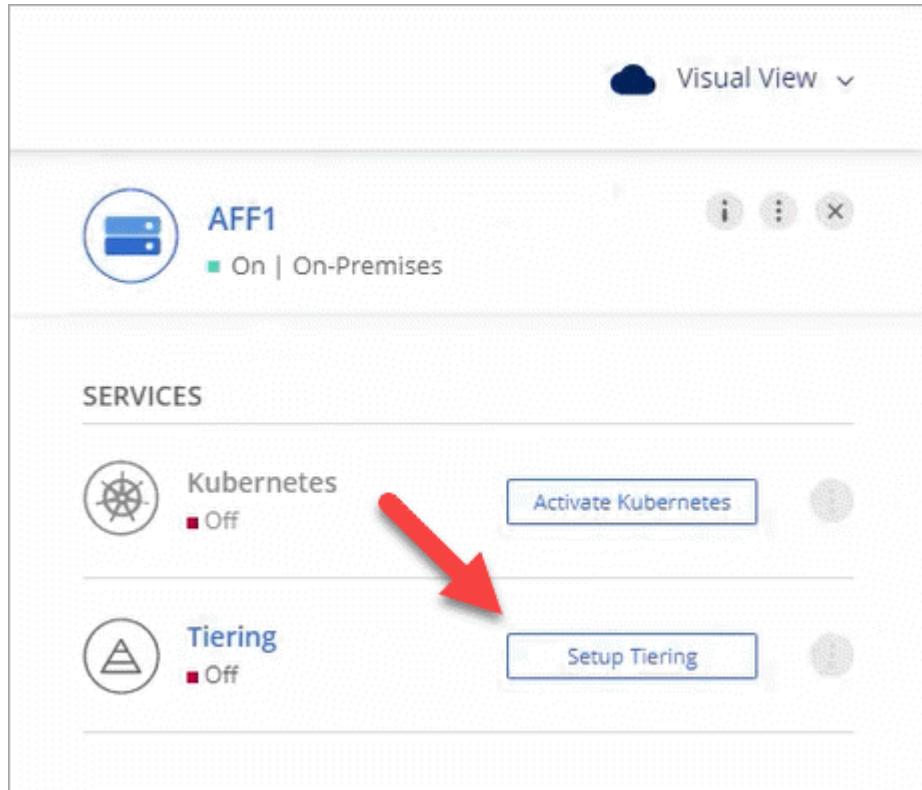
After you prepare your environment, start tiering inactive data from your first cluster.

What you'll need

- [An on-premises working environment.](#)
- An AWS access key that has the required S3 permissions.

Steps

1. Select an on-prem cluster.
2. Click **Setup Tiering**.



You're now on the Tiering dashboard.

3. Click **Set up Tiering** next to the cluster.
4. Complete the steps on the **Tiering Setup** page:
 - a. **Choose your provider:** Select StorageGRID.
 - b. **Server:** Enter the FQDN of the StorageGRID server, enter the port that ONTAP should use for HTTPS communication with StorageGRID, and enter the access key and secret key for an AWS account that has the required S3 permissions.
 - c. **Bucket:** Add a new bucket or select an existing bucket for the tiered data.
 - d. **Cluster Network:** Select the IPspace that ONTAP should use to connect to object storage and click **Continue**.

Selecting the correct IPspace ensures that Cloud Tiering can set up a connection from ONTAP to your cloud provider's object storage.

5. Click **Continue** to select the volumes that you want to tier.
6. On the **Tier Volumes** page, set up tiering for each volume. Click the  icon, select a tiering policy, optionally adjust the cooling days, and click **Apply**.

[Learn more about volume tiering policies.](#)

Tier Volumes							Learn how much you can save with each Tiering Policy
1 - 3 of 3 Volumes		Tier Status [3]					Search
Volume Name	SVM Name	Volume Size	Used Size	Cold Data	Tier Status	Tiering Policy	
vol1	svm_AFF1	200 GB	3.8 MB	2.66 ...	70 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	All user data
vol2	svm_AFF1	400 GB	2.59 MB	1.81 ...	70 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	Cold user data
vol3	svm_AFF1	325 GB	2.59 MB	0 B	0 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	Cold snapshots

Result

You've successfully set up data tiering from volumes on the cluster to StorageGRID.

What's next?

You can add additional clusters or review information about the active and inactive data on the cluster. For details, see [Managing data tiering from your clusters](#).

Set up licensing for Cloud Tiering

Pay for Cloud Tiering through a pay-as-you-go subscription, an ONTAP tiering license called *FabricPool*, or a combination of both. [Learn how licensing works](#).

If a FabricPool license is already installed on your cluster, then you're all set—there's nothing else that you need to do. If you'd like to purchase a FabricPool license, [learn how to get one and install it on the cluster](#).

If you want to pay-as-you-go, then you'll need to set up licensing directly from the Cloud Tiering service, which is accessible from Cloud Central. Licensing for Cloud Tiering isn't available through Cloud Manager at this time.



There are no charges when tiering data to StorageGRID. Neither a BYOL license or PAYGO registration is required.

Steps to set up a PAYGO subscription

1. Log in to [NetApp Cloud Central](#).
2. From the Fabric View, click **Go to Cloud Tiering**.
3. Now that you're in the Cloud Tiering service, [follow the steps in the Cloud Tiering documentation](#) to subscribe from your cloud provider's marketplace.

Managing data tiering from your clusters

Now that you've set up data tiering from your ONTAP clusters, you can tier data from additional volumes, change a volume's tiering policy, and more.

Tiering data from additional volumes

Set up data tiering for additional volumes at any time—for example, after creating a new volume.

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **OnPrem Tiering**.
2. From the **Cluster Dashboard**, click **Tier Volumes** for the cluster.
3. For each volume, click the icon, select a tiering policy, optionally adjust the cooling days, and click **Apply**.

[Learn more about volume tiering policies.](#)

Tier Volumes							Learn how much you can save with each Tiering Policy
1 - 3 of 3 Volumes		Tier Status [3]					Search
Volume Name	SVM Name	Volume Size	Used Size	Cold Data	Tier Status	Tiering Policy	
vol1	svm_AFF1	200 GB	3.8 MB	2.66 ...	70 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	All user data
vol2	svm_AFF1	400 GB	2.59 MB	1.81 ...	70 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	Cold user data
vol3	svm_AFF1	325 GB	2.59 MB	0 B	0 %	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Tiered Volume	Cold snapshots



You don't need to configure the object storage because it was already configured when you initially set up tiering for the cluster. ONTAP will tier inactive data from these volumes to the same object store.

- When you're done, click **Close**.

Changing a volume's tiering policy

Changing the tiering policy for a volume changes how ONTAP tiers cold data to object storage. The change starts from the moment that you change the policy—it changes only the subsequent tiering behavior for the volume.

Steps

- At the top of Cloud Manager, click **OnPrem Tiering**.
- From the **Cluster Dashboard**, click **Tier Volumes** for the cluster.
- Click the icon, select a tiering policy, optionally adjust the cooling days, and click **Apply**.

[Learn more about volume tiering policies.](#)

Reviewing tiering info for a cluster

You might want to see how much data is in the cloud tier and how much data is on disks. Or, you might want to see the amount of hot and cold data on the cluster's disks. Cloud Tiering provides this information for each cluster.

Steps

- At the top of Cloud Manager, click **OnPrem Tiering**.
- From the **Cluster Dashboard**, click **More info** for a cluster.

Cluster Dashboard

6 Clusters i

AFF1 More Info >



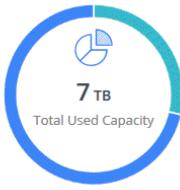
Operational Health

✓ Active Cluster

3. Review details about the cluster.

Here's an example:

Total Used Capacity



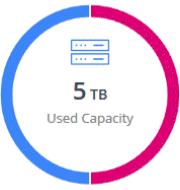
7 TB
Total Used Capacity

2 TB 5 TB
S3 Tiered Capacity Cluster Used Capacity

Current Savings

2 TB | \$ 9,677

Cluster Used Capacity



5 TB
Used Capacity

2.5 TB 2.5 TB
Hot Data Cold Data

Cold Data Saving Opportunity

2 TB

TIER VOLUMES

Cluster Info

IP	172.31.20.236
ONTAP Version	9.7.0
Tiered Volumes	5 / 5

Object Storage Info

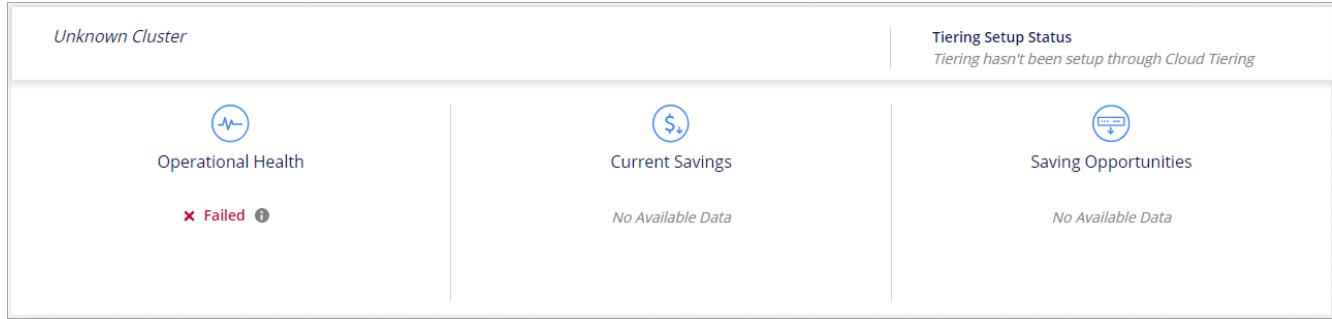
Provider	 aws
S3 Bucket	fabric-poolaff
Storage Class	Standard-Infrequent ...

Fixing operational health

Failures can happen. When they do, Cloud Tiering displays a "Failed" operational health status on the Cluster Dashboard. The health reflects the status of the ONTAP system and Cloud Manager.

Steps

1. Identify any clusters that have an operational health of "Failed."



2. Hover over the ⓘ icon to see the failure reason.
3. Correct the issue:
 - a. Verify that the ONTAP cluster is operational and that it has an inbound and outbound connection to your object storage provider.
 - b. Verify that Cloud Manager has outbound connections to the Cloud Tiering service, to the object store, and to the ONTAP clusters that it discovers.

Cloud Tiering technical FAQ

This FAQ can help if you're just looking for a quick answer to a question.

ONTAP

The following questions relate to ONTAP.

What are the requirements for my ONTAP cluster?

It depends on where you tier the cold data. Refer to the following:

- [Tiering data from on-premises ONTAP clusters to Amazon S3](#)
- [Tiering data from on-premises ONTAP clusters to Azure Blob storage](#)
- [Tiering data from on-premises ONTAP clusters to Google Cloud Storage](#)
- [Tiering data from on-premises ONTAP clusters to StorageGRID](#)

Does Cloud Tiering enable inactive data reporting?

Yes, Cloud Tiering enables inactive data reporting on each aggregate. This setting enables us to identify the amount of inactive data that can be tiered to low-cost object storage.

Can I tier data from NAS volumes and SAN volumes?

You can use Cloud Tiering to tier data from NAS volumes to the public cloud and from SAN volumes to a private cloud using StorageGRID.

Object storage

The following questions relate to object storage.

Which object storage providers are supported?

Amazon S3, Azure Blob storage, Google Cloud Storage, and StorageGRID using the S3 protocol are supported.

Can I use my own bucket/container?

Yes, you can. When you set up data tiering, you have the choice to add a new bucket/container or to select an existing bucket/container.

Which regions are supported?

- [Supported AWS regions](#)
- [Supported Azure regions](#)
- [Supported Google Cloud regions](#)

Which S3 storage classes are supported?

Cloud Tiering supports data tiering to the *Standard*, *Standard-Infrequent Access*, *One Zone-IA*, or *Intelligent* storage class. See [Supported S3 storage classes](#) for more details.

Which Azure Blob access tiers are supported?

Cloud Tiering automatically uses the *Hot* access tier for your inactive data.

Which storage classes are supported for Google Cloud Storage?

Cloud Tiering uses the *Standard* storage class for inactive data.

Does Cloud Tiering use one object store for the entire cluster or one per aggregate?

One object store for the entire cluster.

Can I apply policies to my object store to move data around independent of tiering?

No, Cloud Tiering does not support object lifecycle management rules that move or delete data from object stores.

Cloud Manager

The following questions relate to Cloud Manager.

Where does Cloud Manager need to be installed?

- When tiering data to S3, Cloud Manager can reside in an AWS VPC or on your premises.
- When tiering data to Blob storage, Cloud Manager must reside in an Azure VNet.
- When tiering data to Google Cloud Storage, Cloud Manager must reside in a Google Cloud Platform VPC.
- When tiering data to StorageGRID, Cloud Manager must reside on an on-premises Linux host.

What's the difference between Cloud Manager and a Service Connector?

There's no difference, really. A Service Connector is part of Cloud Manager.

You might be familiar with the Service Connector term if you've accessed the Cloud Tiering service directly from NetApp Cloud Central. Cloud Tiering prompts you to deploy a Service Connector to discover your on-prem clusters. That's not necessary when you use Cloud Tiering from within Cloud Manager because Cloud Manager acts as the Service Connector—it communicates with ONTAP clusters to discover information about active and inactive data, and to set up data tiering.

Networking

The following questions relate to networking.

What are the networking requirements?

- The ONTAP cluster initiates an HTTPS connection over port 443 to your object storage provider.
ONTAP reads and writes data to and from object storage. The object storage never initiates, it just responds.
- For StorageGRID, the ONTAP cluster initiates an HTTPS connection over a user-specified port to StorageGRID (the port is configurable during tiering setup).
- Cloud Manager needs an outbound HTTPS connection over port 443 to your ONTAP clusters, to the object store, and to the Cloud Tiering service.

For more details, see:

- [Tiering data from on-premises ONTAP clusters to Amazon S3](#)
- [Tiering data from on-premises ONTAP clusters to Azure Blob storage](#)
- [Tiering data from on-premises ONTAP clusters to Google Cloud Storage](#)
- [Tiering data from on-premises ONTAP clusters to StorageGRID](#)

Permissions

The following questions relate to permissions.

What permissions are required in AWS?

Permissions are required [to manage the S3 bucket](#).

What permissions are required in Azure?

No extra permissions are needed outside of the permissions that you need to provide to Cloud Manager.

What permissions are required in Google Cloud Platform?

Storage Admin permissions are needed for a service account that has storage access keys.

What permissions are required for StorageGRID?

[S3 permissions are needed.](#)

Reference

Supported S3 storage classes and regions

Cloud Tiering supports several S3 storage classes and most regions.

Supported S3 storage classes

Cloud Tiering can apply a lifecycle rule so the data transitions from the *Standard* storage class to another storage class after 30 days. You can choose from the following storage classes:

- Standard-Infrequent Access
- One Zone-IA
- Intelligent

If you choose Standard, then the data remains in that storage class.

[Learn about S3 storage classes.](#)

Supported AWS regions

Cloud Tiering supports the following AWS regions.

Asia Pacific

- Mumbai
- Seoul

- Singapore
- Sydney
- Tokyo

Europe

- Frankfurt
- Ireland
- London
- Paris
- Stockholm

North America

- Canada Central
- GovCloud (US-West) – starting with ONTAP 9.3
- US East (N. Virginia)
- US East (Ohio)
- US West (N. California)
- US West (Oregon)

South America

- São Paulo

Supported Azure Blob access tiers and regions

Cloud Tiering supports the *Hot* access tier and most regions.

Supported Azure Blob access tiers

When you set up data tiering to Azure, Cloud Tiering automatically uses the *Hot* access tier for your inactive data.

Supported Azure regions

Cloud Tiering supports the following Azure regions.

Africa

- South Africa North

Asia Pacific

- Australia East
- Australia Southeast
- East Asia
- Japan East
- Japan West
- Korea Central
- Korea South
- Southeast Asia

Europe

- France Central
- Germany Central
- Germany Northeast
- North Europe
- UK South
- UK West
- West Europe

North America

- Canada Central
- Canada East
- Central US
- East US
- East US 2
- North Central US
- South Central US
- West US
- West US 2
- West Central US

South America

- Brazil South

Supported Google Cloud storage classes and regions

Cloud Tiering supports the Standard storage class and most Google Cloud regions.

Supported access tiers

Cloud Tiering uses the *Standard* access tier for your inactive data.

Supported Google Cloud regions

Cloud Tiering supports the following regions.

Americas

- Iowa
- Los Angeles
- Montreal
- N. Virginia
- Oregon
- Sao-Paulo
- South Carolina

Asia Pacific

- Hong Kong
- Mumbai
- Osaka
- Singapore
- Sydney
- Taiwan
- Tokyo

Europe

- Belgium
- Finland
- Frankfurt
- London
- Netherlands
- Zurich

Provision volumes for file services

Managing volumes for Azure NetApp Files

Cloud Manager enables you to manage volumes for [Azure NetApp Files](#) directly from its interface. You can view volumes, create NFS volumes, migrate data to Azure NetApp Files from an NFS or SMB server, and scan Azure NetApp Files using Cloud Compliance.

Setting up your configuration

Your configuration needs to meet a few requirements before you can manage volumes for Azure NetApp Files from Cloud Manager.

1. Azure NetApp Files must be set up by completing the following from the Azure portal:
 - [Register for Azure NetApp Files](#)
 - [Create a NetApp account](#)
 - [Set up a capacity pool](#)
 - [Delegate a subnet to Azure NetApp Files](#)
2. Cloud Manager must be set up as follows:
 - Cloud Manager must be running in Azure, in the account where Azure NetApp Files was set up.
 - The Cloud Manager virtual machine must receive permissions through a [managed identity](#).

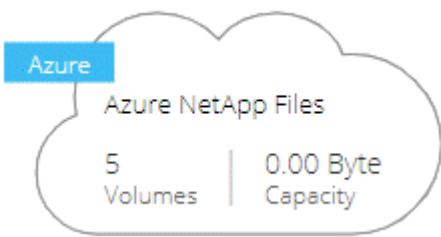
If you deployed Cloud Manager from Cloud Central, then you're all set. Cloud Central automatically enables a system-assigned managed identity on the Cloud Manager virtual machine.

If you deployed Cloud Manager from the Azure Marketplace, then you should have followed [instructions to enable a managed identity](#).

- The Azure role assigned to the Cloud Manager virtual machine must include the permissions listed in the latest [Cloud Manager policy for Azure](#):

```
"Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/read",
"Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/read",
"Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/volumes/write",
"Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/volumes/read",
"Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/volumes/delete",
"Microsoft.Insights/Metrics/Read"
```

When your configuration is set up, Cloud Manager automatically displays Azure NetApp Files on the Working Environments page:



Provisioning volumes

Manage volumes for Azure NetApp Files directly from Cloud Manager.

Creating NFS volumes

Cloud Manager enables you to create NFSv3 volumes for Azure NetApp Files.

Steps

1. Open the working environment.
2. Click **Add New Volume**.
3. Enter basic details about the volume in the **Account Information** page:
 - a. Select an Azure subscription and Azure NetApp Files account.
 - b. Enter a name for the volume.
 - c. Select a capacity pool and specify a quota, which is the amount of logical storage that's allocated to the volume.

Account Information

Azure Subscription	Volume Name	
<input type="text" value="OCCM QA1"/>	<input type="text" value="vol10"/>	
Azure NetApp Files Account	Capacity pool	Quota (GiB)
<input type="text" value="vadimAnf"/>	<input type="text" value="test2 (5.0 TiB)"/>	<input type="text" value="200"/> ⓘ

4. Fill out the **Location & Export Policy** page:
 - a. Select a VNet and subnet.
 - b. Configure an export policy to control access to the volume.

Location & Export Policy

Location	Export Policy
Vnet	Allowed Clients i
TomerANFrg-vnet	172.70.2.0/32
Subnet	
default 172.20.1.0/28	

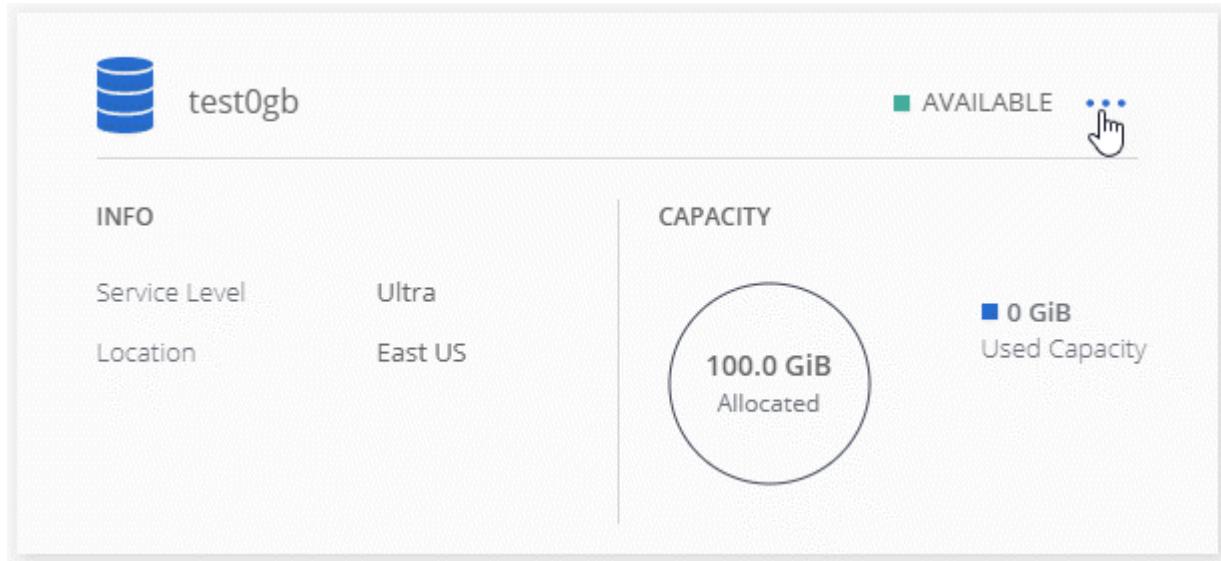
5. Click **Go**.

Getting a volume's mount path

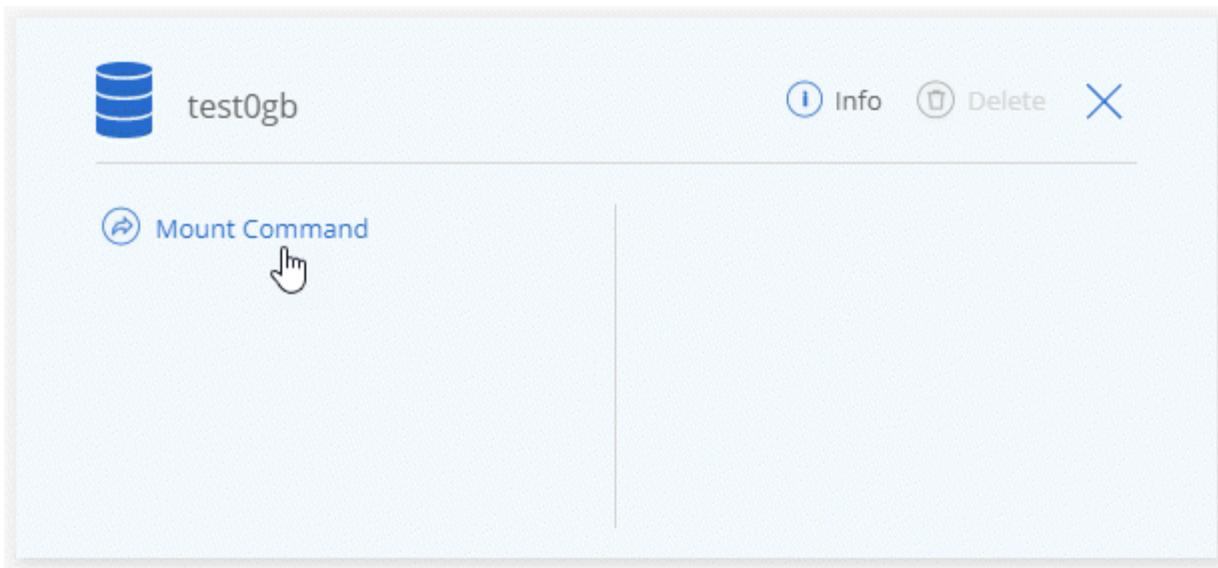
Copy the mount path for a volume so you can mount the volume to a Linux machine.

Steps

1. Open the working environment.
2. Hover over the volume and click the menu.



3. Click **Mount Command**.



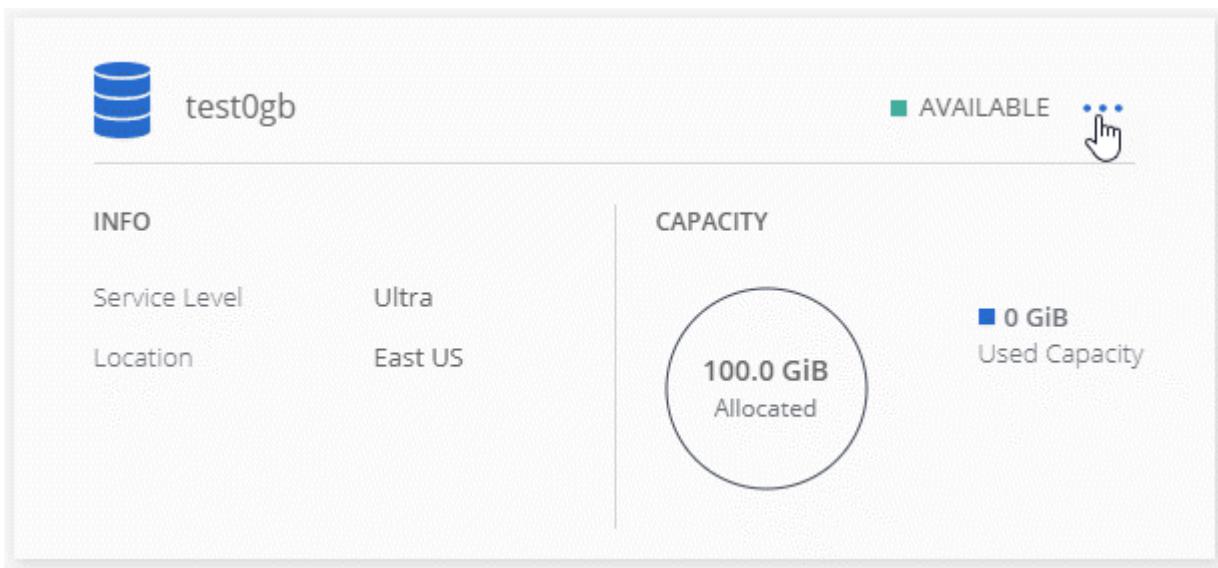
4. Copy the mount path and use the copied text to mount the volume to a Linux machine.

Deleting volumes

Delete the volumes that you no longer need.

Steps

1. Open the working environment.
2. Hover over the volume and click the menu.



3. Click **Delete**.
4. Confirm that you want to delete the volume.

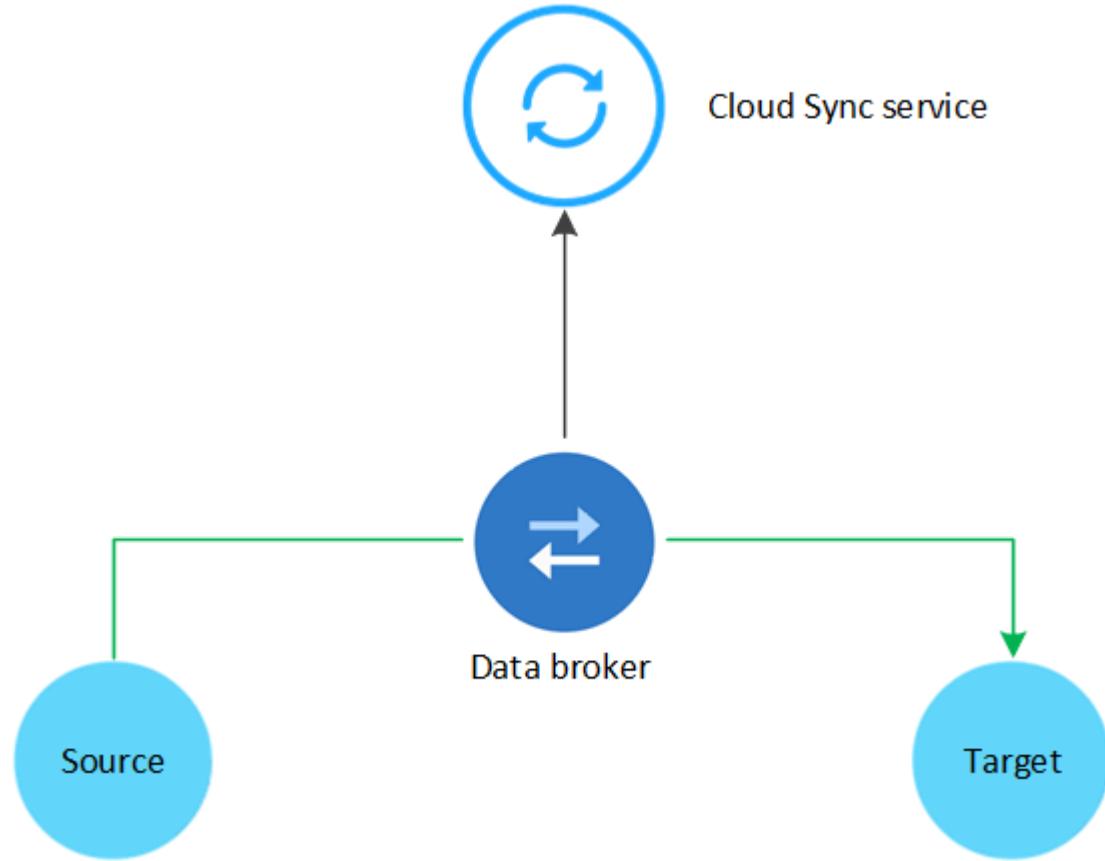
Migrating data to Azure NetApp Files

You can migrate NFS or SMB data to Azure NetApp Files directly from Cloud Manager. Just select the

working environment and click **Sync**. Data migrations are powered by NetApp's Cloud Sync service.

Overview

Cloud Sync is NetApp's service for rapid and secure data synchronization. Cloud Sync is a software-as-a-service (SaaS) platform that consists of a data broker, a cloud-based portal, and a source and target.



At this time, Cloud Sync's integration with Cloud Manager enables you to migrate data from a source NFS or SMB server to Azure NetApp Files through a one-time copy. Azure NetApp Files is supported as a target only. The target must be a volume that uses the [Ultra service level](#). No other service levels are supported.

When you set up a data sync to Azure NetApp Files, you need to deploy a data broker in Azure. The NetApp data broker software syncs data from a source to a target (this is called a *sync relationship*). You can use a single data broker for multiple sync relationships.

Cost

NetApp doesn't charge you to sync data to Azure NetApp Files.

Requirements

Prepare to sync data by verifying that your source and target are supported and setup.

Networking requirements

Networking for Cloud Sync includes connectivity between the data broker and the source and target locations, and an outbound internet connection from the data broker over port 443.

- The source and target must have a network connection to the data broker, which you'll deploy in an Azure VNet.

For example, if an NFS server is in your data center and the data broker is in Azure, then you need a network connection (VPN or ExpressRoute) from your network to the Azure VNet and from the Azure VNet to the Azure NetApp Files location.

- The data broker needs an outbound internet connection so it can poll the Cloud Sync service for tasks over port 443.

When Cloud Sync deploys the data broker in Azure, it creates a security group that enables the required outbound communication.

If you need to limit outbound connectivity, [see the list of endpoints that the data broker contacts](#).

- NetApp recommends configuring the source, target, and data broker to use a Network Time Protocol (NTP) service. The time difference between the three components should not exceed 5 minutes.

NFS and SMB server requirements

- The server can be a NetApp system or a non-NetApp system.
- The file server must allow the data broker host to access the exports.
- NFS versions 3, 4.0, 4.1, and 4.2 are supported.
- SMB versions 1.0, 2.0, 2.1, and 3.0 are supported.

The desired version must be enabled on the server.

Migrating data

When you create a sync relationship, the Cloud Sync service copies files from the source to the target volume. The schedule for the sync relationship is a one-time copy—there are no additional syncs in the schedule. You can sync the data again by [managing the relationship](#).

The target volume in Azure NetApp Files must be a volume that uses the [Ultra service level](#). No other service levels are supported.

Steps

1. Select the Azure NetApp Files working environment.
2. Click **Sync Data**.

Azure NetApp Files

On

INFORMATION

2.83 TiB Allocated Capacity	0.00 B Used Capacity
3 Locations	23 Volumes

SERVICES

Sync Off	Sync Data
Cloud Compliance Off	Enable Compliance

3. Click **Log in to Azure**.

When prompted, sign in and accept the permissions request from Microsoft. The form is owned and hosted by Microsoft. Your credentials are not provided to NetApp.

4. Select an Azure subscription.

This is the subscription that includes the volume to which you want to sync the data.

5. Select a volume and click **Continue**.

This is the volume to which the data will be tiered.

The target volume must be a volume that uses the **Ultra service level**. No other service levels are supported.

6. If you selected an SMB volume, enter Active Directory credentials for the volume and click

Continue.

7. Follow the steps in the Sync Data Wizard.

- a. **Data Broker:** Select an existing data broker or provide information to deploy a new data broker and click **Continue**.

The screenshot shows the 'Data Broker' configuration page of the Sync Data Wizard. At the top, there are five tabs: 1 Data Broker, 2 Target Directories, 3 NFS Server, 4 Directories, and 5 Review. The 'Data Broker' tab is selected. Below the tabs, the title 'Data Broker' is displayed, followed by the instruction 'Create a data broker that has connectivity to the source and target.' A button bar at the top right includes 'Existing Data Broker' (disabled) and 'New Data Broker' (highlighted). The main form is divided into two sections: 'Location' on the left and 'Virtual Machine' on the right. In the 'Location' section, fields include 'Subscription' (OCCM Dev), 'Azure Region' (West US), 'VNet' (Vnet1), and 'Subnet' (Subnet1). In the 'Virtual Machine' section, fields include 'VM Name' (netapp-databroker), 'User Name' (databroker), 'Authentication Method' (radio buttons for Password and Public Key, with Password selected), 'Enter Password' (*****), and 'Resource Group' (radio buttons for Generate a new group and Use an existing group, with Generate a new group selected).

Keep the page open until the deployment is complete. It can take up to 5 minutes to deploy a new data broker.

- b. **Target Shares/Directories:** Select the share or directory to which you want to sync the data and then click **Continue**.
- c. **SMB/NFS Server:** Now you need to provide details about the source server that contains the data that you want to migrate. Select an existing SMB or NFS server that you previously entered, or enter information about a new source server and click **Continue**.
- d. **Shares/Directories:** Select the source share or directory that you want to sync to Azure NetApp Files.
- e. **Review:** Review details about the sync relationship and then click **Sync**.

- f. Click **View in Dashboard** to view details about the sync relationship.

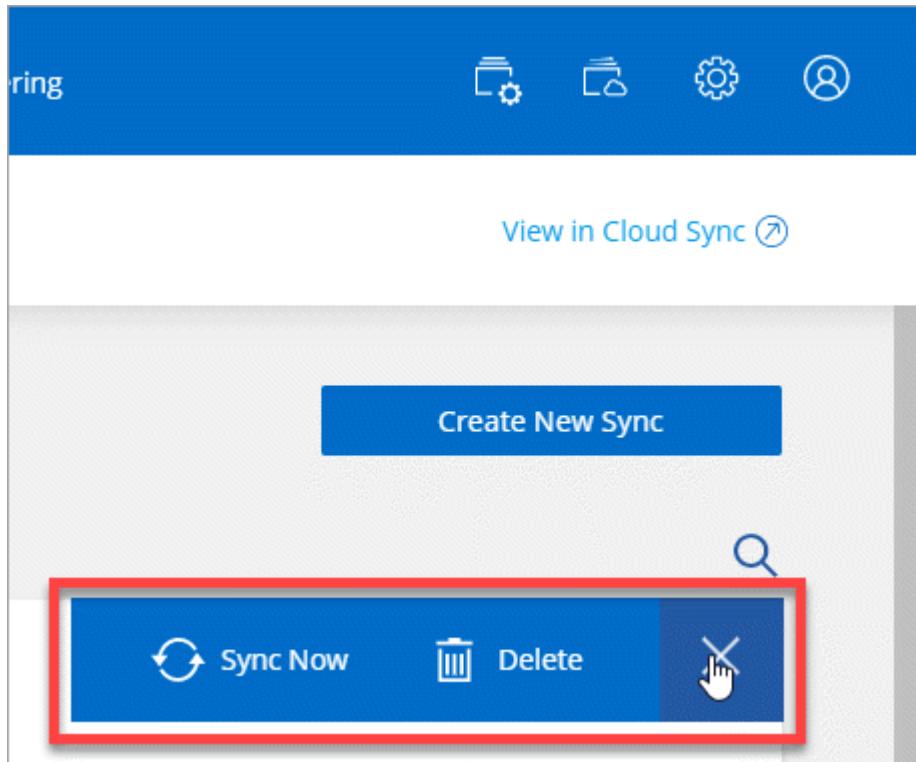
Managing sync relationships

A few actions are available from within Cloud Manager to manage your existing sync relationships. You can immediately sync the data again and you can delete relationships.

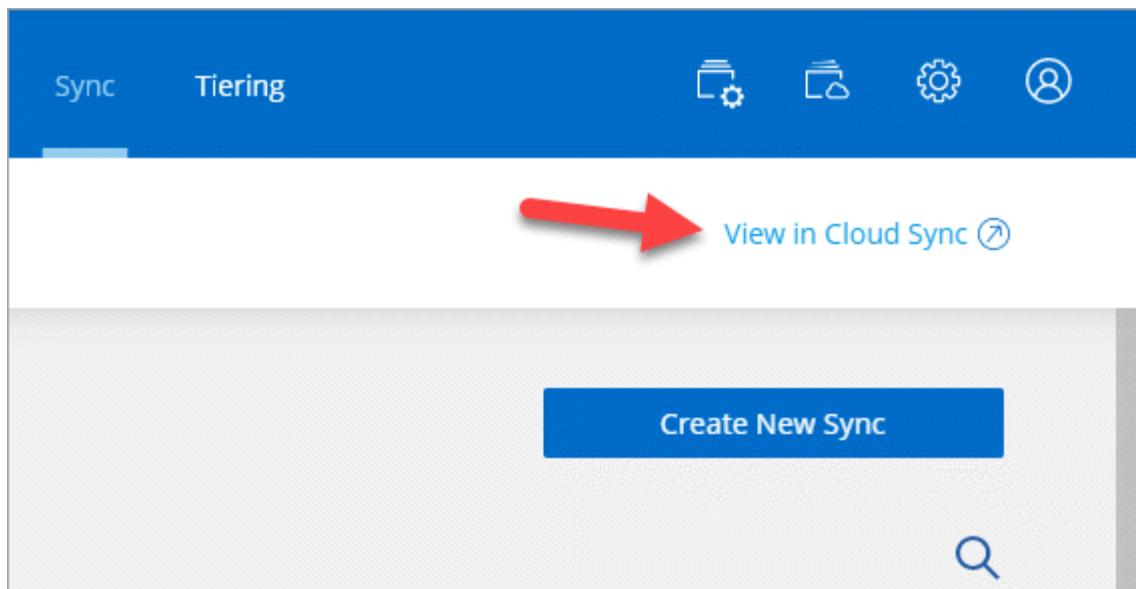
If needed, you can click a link to go directly to the Cloud Sync service where you can access additional actions, such as managing sync settings or accelerating performance.

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Sync**.
2. Hover over the sync relationship and click the action menu.
3. Select one of the available options.



4. If you want to access additional options, click **View in Cloud Sync**.



The Cloud Sync service opens in another browser tab. If you can't see your sync relationships, then make sure that you're viewing the right Cloud Central account. [Learn more about accounts](#).

Scanning volumes for data privacy compliance

Using Artificial Intelligence (AI) driven technology, Cloud Compliance can help you understand data context and identify sensitive data that resides in your Azure NetApp Files accounts. [Learn more](#).

Getting help

For technical support issues associated with Azure NetApp Files, use the Azure portal to log a support request to Microsoft. Select your associated Microsoft subscription and select the **Azure NetApp Files** service name under **Storage**. Provide the remaining information required to create your Microsoft support request.

For issues related to Cloud Sync and Azure NetApp Files, you can start with NetApp using your Cloud Sync serial number directly from the Cloud Sync service. You will need to access the Cloud Sync service through the link in Cloud Manager. [View the process to enable Cloud Sync support](#).

Limitations

- Cloud Manager can create NFSv3 volumes for Azure NetApp Files. It doesn't support creating SMB volumes.
- Cloud Manager doesn't enable you to manage capacity pools or volume snapshots.
- You can create volumes with an initial size and single export policy. Editing a volume must be done from the Azure NetApp Files interface in the Azure portal.
- Cloud Manager doesn't support data replication to or from Azure NetApp Files.

Related links

- [NetApp Cloud Central: Azure NetApp Files](#)
- [Azure NetApp Files documentation](#)
- [Cloud Sync documentation](#)

Managing Cloud Volumes Service for AWS

Cloud Manager enables you to discover the NFS cloud volumes in your [Cloud Volumes Service for AWS](#) subscription. After discovery, you can add additional NFS cloud volumes directly from Cloud Manager.



Cloud Manager does not support SMB or dual-protocol volumes with Cloud Volumes Service for AWS.

Before you get started

- Cloud Manager enables discovery of *existing* Cloud Volumes Service for AWS subscriptions. See the [NetApp Cloud Volumes Service for AWS Account Setup Guide](#) if you haven't set up your subscription yet.

You must follow this setup process for each region and provision your first volume from Cloud Volumes Service before you can discover the region in Cloud Manager.

- You need to obtain the Cloud Volumes API key and secret key so you can provide them to Cloud Manager. [For instructions, refer to Cloud Volumes Service for AWS documentation.](#)

Discovering your Cloud Volumes Service for AWS subscription

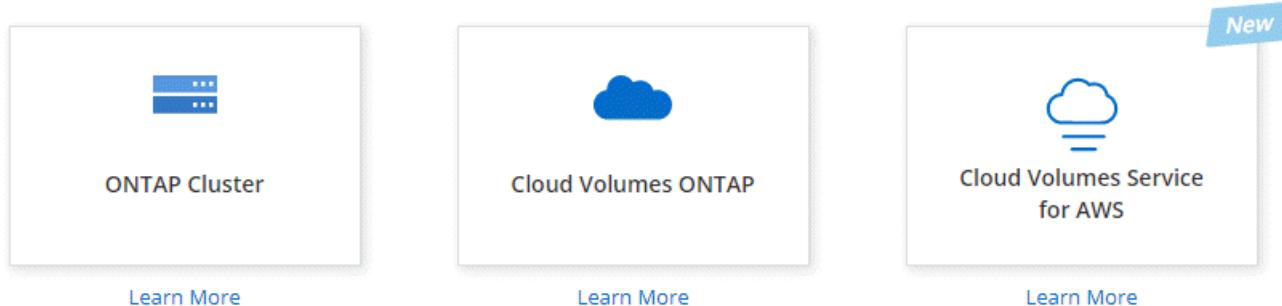
To get started, you need to discover the cloud volumes in an AWS region. You can discover additional regions later.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, click **Discover**.
2. Select **Cloud Volumes Service for AWS**.

Discover

Select the storage that you'd like to discover: an ONTAP cluster, an existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP system, or the cloud volumes in your Cloud Volumes Service for AWS subscription.



3. Provide information about your Cloud Volumes Service subscription:

- a. Select the AWS region where your cloud volumes reside.
- b. Enter the Cloud Volumes API key and secret key. [For instructions, refer to Cloud Volumes Service for AWS documentation.](#)
- c. Click **Go**.

Cloud Volumes Service Details

Provide a few details about your Cloud Volumes Service subscription so Cloud Manager can discover your cloud volumes.

Location

AWS Region

US West | Oregon

Credentials

Cloud Volumes Service API Key

[REDACTED]

Cloud Volumes Service Secret Key

[REDACTED]

Result

Cloud Manager should now display your Cloud Volumes Service for AWS configuration on the Working Environments page.



Discovering additional regions

If you have cloud volumes in additional regions, you need to discover each individual region.

Steps

1. On the Working Environments page, select the working environment (but don't open it by double-clicking).
2. In the right pane, click **Discover Cloud Volumes Service in another region**.

Cloud Volumes Service for AWS

1.85 TiB
Allocated Capacity

15.05 GiB
Used Capacity

1 Regions 15 Volumes



Add New Volume

Discover Cloud Volumes Service in another region

View Volumes

3. Provide information about your Cloud Volumes Service subscription:

- a. Select the AWS region where your cloud volumes reside.
- b. Enter the Cloud Volumes API key and secret key. [For instructions, refer to Cloud Volumes Service for AWS documentation.](#)
- c. Click **Go**.

Result

Cloud Manager discovers information about the cloud volumes in the selected region.

Creating cloud volumes

Cloud Manager enables you to create NFSv3 cloud volumes. You can only create cloud volumes with an initial size and single export policy. Editing the volume must be done from the Cloud Volume Service

user interface.

1. Open the working environment.
2. Click **Add New Volume**.
3. Enter details about the volume:
 - a. Enter a name for the volume.
 - b. Specify a size within the range of 100 GiB to 90,000 GiB (equivalent to 88 TiBs).



Cloud Manager displays volumes in GiB, while the Cloud Volumes Service displays volumes in GB.

- c. Specify a service level: Standard, Premium, or Extreme.

[Learn more about these service levels.](#)

- d. Choose a region. You can create the volume in a region that Cloud Manager has discovered.
- e. Restrict client access by specifying an IP address or Classless Inter-Domain Routing (CIDR).

Details		Export Policy
Volume Name	Size (GiB)	Allowed Clients
vol1	800	10.10.5.0/32
Service Level		
Premium	▾	
AWS Region	us-west-2 US West (Oregon) ▾	

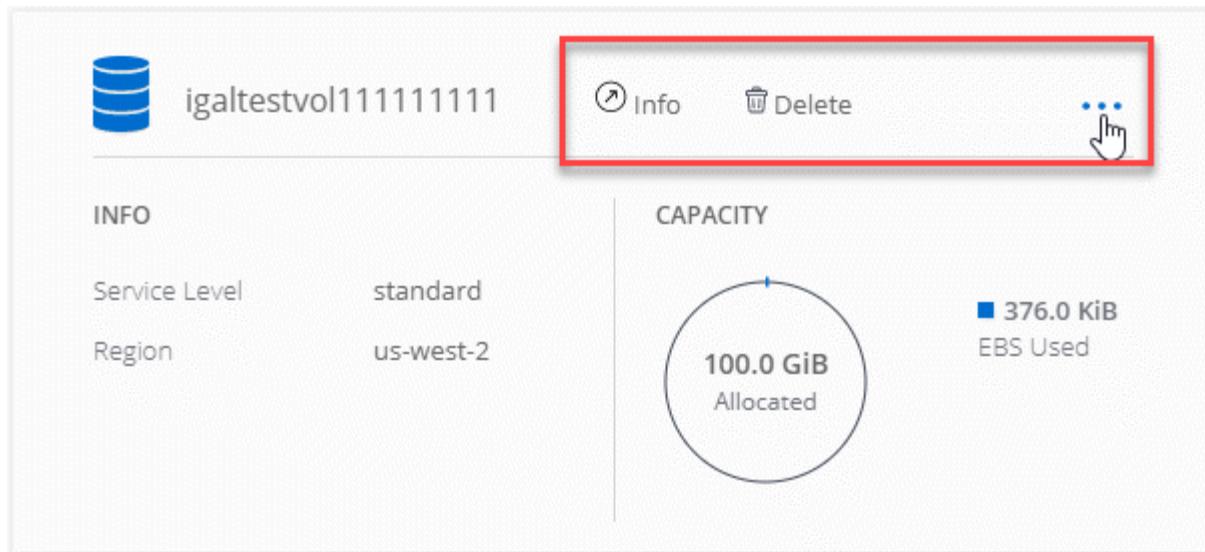
4. Click **Go**.

Deleting cloud volumes

Delete the cloud volumes that you no longer need.

Steps

1. Open the working environment.
2. Hover over the volume and click the menu. Click **Delete**.



3. Confirm that you want to delete the volume.

Getting help

Use the Cloud Manager chat for general service questions.

For technical support issues associated with your cloud volumes, use your 20 digit “930” serial number located in the "Support" tab of the Cloud Volumes Service user interface. Use this support ID when opening a web ticket or calling for support. Be sure to activate your Cloud Volumes Service serial number for support from the Cloud Volumes Service user interface. [Those steps are explained here.](#)

Limitations

- Cloud Manager does not support SMB or dual-protocol volumes.
- You can only create cloud volumes with an initial size and single export policy. Editing the volume must be done from the Cloud Volume Service user interface.
- Cloud Manager doesn't support data replication to or from a Cloud Volumes Service for AWS subscription.
- Removing your Cloud Volumes Service for AWS subscription from Cloud Manager isn't supported. There are no charges to discover a region from Cloud Manager.

Related links

- [NetApp Cloud Central: Cloud Volumes Service for AWS](#)
- [NetApp Cloud Volumes Service for AWS documentation](#)

Viewing your Amazon S3 buckets

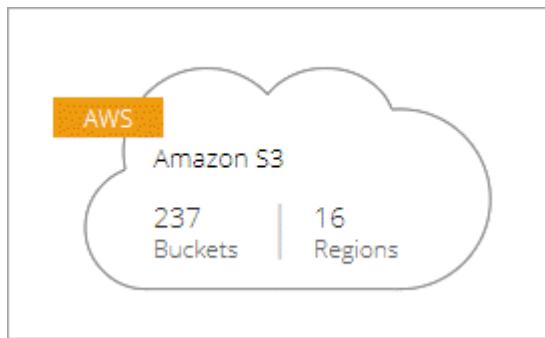
Cloud Manager can automatically discover information about the Amazon S3 buckets that reside in the AWS account where it's installed.

You can see details about your S3 buckets, including the region, access level, storage class, and whether the bucket is used with Cloud Volumes ONTAP for backups or data tiering. And you can scan the S3 buckets with Cloud Compliance.

Steps

1. Install Cloud Manager in the AWS account where you want to view your Amazon S3 buckets.

You should automatically see an Amazon S3 working environment shortly after.



2. Click the working environment and select an action from the right pane.

The screenshot shows the AWS Cloud Compliance interface for the Amazon S3 service. At the top, there is a status summary for Amazon S3, indicating it is turned On. Below this, the 'INFORMATION' section displays two metrics: 241 Buckets and 15 Regions. The 'SERVICES' section contains a Cloud Compliance entry, which is currently Off and has an 'Enable Compliance' button. At the bottom, there is a large blue 'View Buckets' button.

Amazon S3

On

INFORMATION

241	15
Buckets	Regions

SERVICES

 Cloud Compliance	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Off	Enable Compliance	
--	---	-----------------------------------	---

[View Buckets](#)

3. Click **Enable Compliance** to scan the S3 buckets for personal and sensitive data.

For more details, see [Getting started with Cloud Compliance for Amazon S3](#).

4. Click **View Buckets** to view details about the S3 buckets in your AWS account.

Gain insight into data privacy

Learn about Cloud Compliance

Cloud Compliance is a data privacy and compliance service for Azure NetApp Files and Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Using Artificial Intelligence (AI) driven technology, Cloud Compliance helps organizations understand data context and identify sensitive data.

Cloud Compliance is currently available as a Controlled Availability release.

[Learn about the use cases for Cloud Compliance.](#)

Features

Cloud Compliance provides several tools that can help you with your compliance efforts. You can use Cloud Compliance to:

- Identify Personal Identifiable Information (PII)
- Identify a wide scope of sensitive information as required by GDPR, CCPA, PCI, and HIPAA privacy regulations
- Respond to Data Subject Access Requests (DSAR)

Supported working environments

Cloud Compliance can scan data from the following types of working environments:

- Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS and Azure
- Amazon S3
- Azure NetApp Files

For Azure NetApp Files, Cloud Compliance can scan volumes that are in the same region as Cloud Manager. When you activate compliance scans on an Azure NetApp Files working environment, Cloud Compliance scans *all* of the volumes in the region.

Cost

The cost to use Cloud Compliance depends on the type of working environment that you're scanning.

Cloud Volumes ONTAP and Azure NetApp Files

Cloud Compliance is an add-on service provided by NetApp at no extra cost. Activating Cloud

Compliance requires deploying a cloud instance, which results in charges from your cloud provider.

Data transfer costs depend on your setup. If Cloud Compliance and Cloud Volumes ONTAP are in the same Availability Zone and region, then there are no data transfer costs. But if Cloud Volumes ONTAP is in a *different* Availability Zone or region, then you'll be charged by your cloud provider for data transfer costs. See these links for more details:

- [AWS: Amazon EC2 Pricing](#)
- [Microsoft Azure: Bandwidth Pricing Details](#)

Amazon S3

You need to pay to scan your Amazon S3 buckets. [Learn about pricing](#).

A 30-day free trial is available to scan Amazon S3 data with Cloud Compliance. A subscription to the AWS Marketplace is required to continue scanning Amazon S3 after the free trial ends. [Learn how to subscribe](#).

How Cloud Compliance works

At a high-level, Cloud Compliance works like this:

1. You enable Cloud Compliance on one or more working environments.
2. Cloud Compliance scans the data using an AI learning process.
3. In Cloud Manager, you click **Compliance** and use the provided dashboard and reporting tools to help you in your compliance efforts.

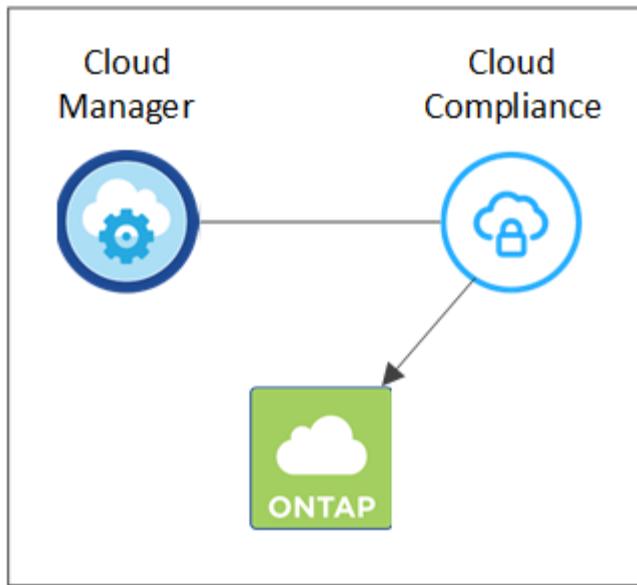
The Cloud Compliance instance

When you enable Cloud Compliance, Cloud Manager deploys a Cloud Compliance instance in the same subnet as Cloud Manager.



If Cloud Manager is installed on-prem, it deploys the Cloud Compliance instance in the same VPC or VNet as the first Cloud Volumes ONTAP system in the request.

VPC or VNet



Note the following about the instance:

- In Azure, Cloud Compliance runs on a Standard_D16s_v3 VM with a 512 GB disk.
- In AWS, Cloud Compliance runs on an m5.4xlarge instance with a 500 GB GP2 disk.

In regions where m5.4xlarge isn't available, Cloud Compliance runs on an m4.4xlarge instance instead.



Changing or resizing the instance/VM type isn't supported. You need to use the default size that's provided.

- The instance is named *CloudCompliance* with a generated hash (UUID) concatenated to it. For example: *CloudCompliance-16bb6564-38ad-4080-9a92-36f5fd2f71c7*
- Only one Cloud Compliance instance is deployed per Cloud Manager system.
- Upgrades of Cloud Compliance software is automated—you don't need to worry about it.



The instance should remain running at all times because Cloud Compliance continuously scans the data on volumes.

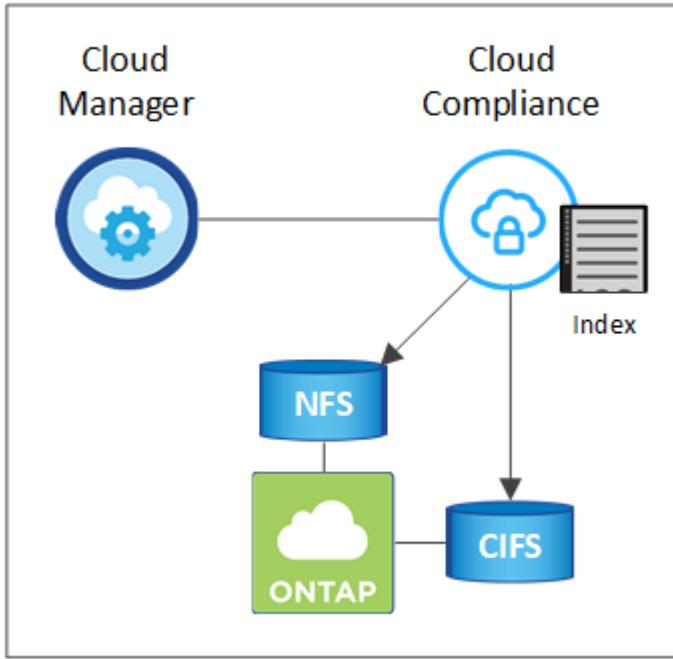
How scans work

After you enable Cloud Compliance, it immediately starts scanning your data to identify personal and sensitive data.

Cloud Compliance connects to the data like any other client by mounting NFS and CIFS volumes. NFS volumes are automatically accessed as read-only, while you need to provide Active Directory credentials to scan CIFS volumes.

Cloud Compliance scans the unstructured data on each volume for a range of personal information. It maps your organizational data, categorizes each file, and identifies and extracts entities and predefined patterns in the data. The result of the scan is an index of personal information, sensitive personal information, and data categories.

VPC or VNet



After the initial scan, Cloud Compliance continuously scans each volume to detect incremental changes (this is why it's important to keep the instance running).

You can turn scans on and off at the working environment level, but not at the volume level. [Learn how](#).

Information that Cloud Compliance indexes

Cloud Compliance collects, indexes, and assigns categories to unstructured data (files). The data that Cloud Compliance indexes includes the following:

Standard metadata

Cloud Compliance collects standard metadata about files: the file type, its size, creation and modification dates, and so on.

Personal data

Personally identifiable information such as email addresses, identification numbers, or credit card numbers. [Learn more about personal data](#).

Sensitive personal data

Special types of sensitive information, such as health data, ethnic origin, or political opinions, as defined by GDPR and other privacy regulations. [Learn more about sensitive personal data](#).

Categories

Cloud Compliance takes the data that it scanned and divides it into different types of categories. Categories are topics based on AI analysis of the content and metadata of each file. [Learn more about categories.](#)

Name entity recognition

Cloud Compliance uses AI to extract natural persons' names from documents. [Learn about responding to Data Subject Access Requests.](#)

Networking overview

Cloud Manager deploys the Cloud Compliance instance with a private IP address and a security group that enables inbound HTTP connections from Cloud Manager. This connection enables you to access the Cloud Compliance dashboard from the Cloud Manager interface.

Outbound rules are completely open. The instance connects to the internet through a proxy from Cloud Manager. Internet access is needed to upgrade the Cloud Compliance software and to send usage metrics.

If you have strict networking requirements, [learn about the endpoints that Cloud Compliance contacts.](#)



The indexed data never leaves the Cloud Compliance instance—the data isn't relayed outside of your virtual network and it isn't sent to Cloud Manager.

User access to compliance information

Cloud Manager Admins can view compliance information for all working environments.

Workspace Admins can view compliance information only for systems that they have permissions to access. If a Workspace Admin can't access a working environment in Cloud Manager, then they can't see any compliance information for the working environment in the Compliance tab.

[Learn more about Cloud Manager roles.](#)

Get started

Getting started with Cloud Compliance

Complete a few steps to get started with Cloud Compliance for Cloud Volumes ONTAP or Azure NetApp Files.

Quick start

Get started quickly by following these steps or scroll down to the remaining sections for full details.

1

Review prerequisites

Ensure that your cloud environment can meet the prerequisites, which includes 16 vCPUs for the Cloud Compliance instance, outbound internet access for the instance, connectivity between Cloud Manager and Cloud Compliance over port 80, and more. [See the complete list.](#)

2

Enable Cloud Compliance

- New working environments: Be sure to keep Cloud Compliance enabled when you create the working environment (it's enabled by default).
- Existing working environments: Click **Compliance**, optionally edit the list of working environments, and click **Show Compliance Dashboard**.

3

Ensure access to volumes

Now that Cloud Compliance is enabled, ensure that it can access volumes.

- The Cloud Compliance instance needs a network connection to each Cloud Volumes ONTAP subnet or Azure NetApp Files subnet.
- Security groups for Cloud Volumes ONTAP must allow inbound connections from the Cloud Compliance instance.
- NFS Volume export policies must allow access from the Cloud Compliance instance.
- Cloud Compliance needs Active Directory credentials to scan CIFS volumes.

Click **Compliance > Scan Configuration > Edit CIFS Credentials** and provide the credentials. The credentials can be read-only, but providing admin credentials ensures that Cloud Compliance can read data that requires elevated permissions.

Reviewing prerequisites

Review the following prerequisites to make sure that you have a supported configuration before you enable Cloud Compliance. You'll need to ensure connectivity to volumes after you enable Cloud Compliance. That's covered below.

Enable outbound internet access

Cloud Compliance requires outbound internet access. If your virtual network uses a proxy server for internet access, ensure that the Cloud Compliance instance has outbound internet access to contact the following endpoints. Note that Cloud Manager deploys the Cloud Compliance instance in the same subnet as Cloud Manager.

Endpoints	Purpose
https://cloudmanager.cloud.netapp.com	Communication with the Cloud Manager service, which includes Cloud Central accounts.
https://netapp-cloud-account.auth0.com https://auth0.com	Communication with NetApp Cloud Central for centralized user authentication.
https://cloud-compliance-support-netapp.s3.us-west-2.amazonaws.com https://hub.docker.com https://auth.docker.io https://registry-1.docker.io https://index.docker.io/ https://dseasb33srnrrn.cloudfront.net/ https://production.cloudflare.docker.com/	Provides access to software images, manifests, and templates.
https://kinesis.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	Enables NetApp to stream data from audit records.
https://cognito-idp.us-east-1.amazonaws.com https://cognito-identity.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	Enables Cloud Compliance to access and download manifests and templates, and to send logs and metrics.

Ensure that Cloud Manager has the required permissions

Ensure that Cloud Manager has permissions to deploy resources and create security groups for the Cloud Compliance instance. You can find the latest Cloud Manager permissions in [the policies provided by NetApp](#).

Check your vCPU limits

Ensure that your cloud provider's vCPU limit allows for the deployment of an instance with 16 cores. You'll need to verify the vCPU limit for the relevant instance family in the region where Cloud Manager is running.

In AWS, the instance family is *On-Demand Standard instances*. In Azure, the instance family is *Standard DSv3 Family*.

For more details on vCPU limits, see the following:

- [AWS documentation: Amazon EC2 Service Limits](#)
- [Azure documentation: Virtual machine vCPU quotas](#)

Ensure that Cloud Manager can access Cloud Compliance

Ensure connectivity between Cloud Manager and the Cloud Compliance instance:

- The security group for Cloud Manager must allow inbound and outbound traffic over port 80 to and from the Cloud Compliance instance.

This connection enables deployment of the Cloud Compliance instance and enables you to view information in the Compliance tab.

- If your AWS network doesn't use a NAT or proxy for internet access, modify the security group for Cloud Manager to allow inbound traffic over TCP port 3128 from the Cloud Compliance instance.

This is required because the Cloud Compliance instance uses Cloud Manager as a proxy to access the internet.



This port is open by default on all new Cloud Manager instances, starting with version 3.7.5. It's not open on Cloud Manager instances created prior to that.

Set up discovery of Azure NetApp Files

Before you can scan volumes for Azure NetApp Files, [Cloud Manager must be set up to discover the configuration](#).

Ensure that you can keep Cloud Compliance running

The Cloud Compliance instance needs to stay on to continuously scan your data.

Ensure web browser connectivity to Cloud Compliance

After Cloud Compliance is enabled, ensure that users access the Cloud Manager interface from a host that has a connection to the Cloud Compliance instance.

The Cloud Compliance instance uses a private IP address to ensure that the indexed data isn't accessible to the internet. As a result, the web browser that you use to access Cloud Manager must have a connection to that private IP address. That connection can come from a direct connection to AWS or Azure (for example, a VPN), or from a host that's inside the same network as the Cloud Compliance instance.



If you're accessing Cloud Manager from a public IP address, then your web browser probably isn't running on a host inside the network.

Enabling Cloud Compliance on a new working environment

Cloud Compliance is enabled by default in the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment wizard. Be sure to keep the option enabled.

Steps

1. Click **Create Cloud Volumes ONTAP**.
2. Select Amazon Web Services or Microsoft Azure as the cloud provider and then choose a single node or HA system.
3. Fill out the Details & Credentials page.
4. On the Services page, leave Cloud Compliance enabled and click **Continue**.



Cloud Compliance



Easily demonstrate data compliance and address privacy regulations across all Cloud Volumes ONTAP implementations

ADVANTAGES

- ✓ Automatically scan this Working Environment, no configuration required.
- ✓ Control your sensitive data.

CLARIFICATIONS

- Activation is free but requires deploying a cloud instance, which will incur charges by your cloud provider.
- Cloud Compliance scan can be disabled at any time.

5. Complete the pages in the wizard to deploy the system.

For help, see [Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS](#) and [Launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure](#).

Result

Cloud Compliance is enabled on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. If this is the first time that you enabled Cloud Compliance, Cloud Manager deploys the Cloud Compliance instance in your cloud provider.

As soon as the instance is available, Cloud Compliance starts scanning the data in the working environment. Results will be available in the Compliance dashboard as soon as Cloud Compliance finishes the initial scans.

Enabling Cloud Compliance on existing working environments

If you haven't enabled Cloud Compliance yet, enable it on existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP or Azure NetApp Files working environments from the **Compliance** tab in Cloud Manager.

Another option is to enable Cloud Compliance from the **Working Environments** tab by selecting each working environment individually.

Steps for multiple working environments (first time only)

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Compliance**.
2. If you want to enable Cloud Compliance on specific working environments, click the edit icon.

Otherwise, Cloud Manager is set to enable Cloud Compliance on all working environments to which you have access.

Always on Privacy & Compliance Controls



Automatic Compliance Reports

- Generate compliance reports for privacy regulations: GDPR, CCPA, PCI, HIPAA, and more.
- Identify sensitive data in your organization.



Reduce TCO

- Reduce expensive data compliance overhead on long collaboration processes.
- Cloud Compliance is provided by NetApp at no extra cost.

Activation requires deploying a cloud instance, which will incur charges from your cloud provider.



Fully Secure

- There's no impact to your data.
- Uses an agentless solution.

[Show Compliance Dashboard](#)

All working environments will be scanned 

3. Click **Show Compliance Dashboard**.

Steps for a single working environment

- At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Working Environments**.
- Select a working environment.
- In the pane on the right, click **Enable Compliance**.



CloudVolumesONTAP1

On | AWS

SERVICES



Cloud Compliance

Off

 Off[Enable Compliance](#) 

Result

If this is the first time that you enabled Cloud Compliance, Cloud Manager deploys the Cloud Compliance instance in your cloud provider.

As soon as the instance is available, Cloud Compliance starts scanning the data on each working environment. Results will be available in the Compliance dashboard as soon as Cloud Compliance finishes the initial scans. The time that it takes depends on the amount of data—it could be a few minutes or hours.

Verifying that Cloud Compliance has access to volumes

Make sure that Cloud Compliance can access volumes by checking your networking, security groups, and export policies. You'll need to provide Cloud Compliance with CIFS credentials so it can access CIFS volumes.

Steps

1. Make sure that there's a network connection between the Cloud Compliance instance and each network that includes volumes for Cloud Volumes ONTAP or Azure NetApp Files.

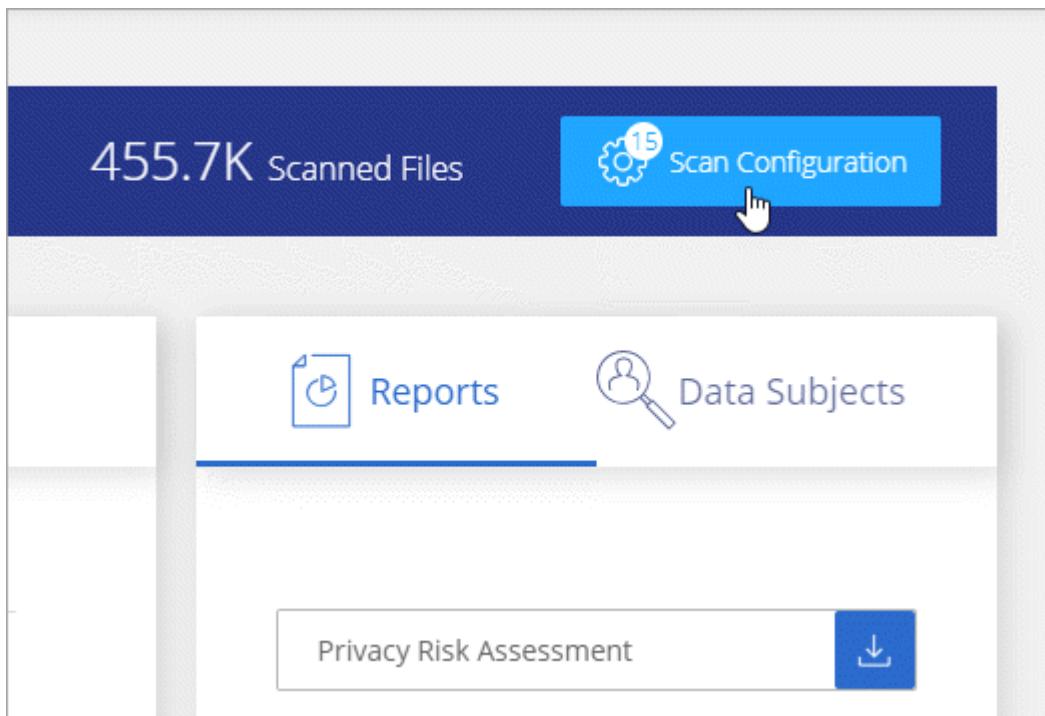


For Azure NetApp Files, Cloud Compliance can only scan volumes that are in the same region as Cloud Manager.

2. Ensure that the security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP allows inbound traffic from the Cloud Compliance instance.

You can either open the security group for traffic from the IP address of the Cloud Compliance instance, or you can open the security group for all traffic from inside the virtual network.

3. Ensure that NFS volume export policies include the IP address of the Cloud Compliance instance so it can access the data on each volume.
4. If you use CIFS, provide Cloud Compliance with Active Directory credentials so it can scan CIFS volumes.
 - a. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Compliance**.
 - b. In the top right, click **Scan Configuration**.



- c. For each working environment, click **Edit CIFS Credentials** and enter the user name and

password that Cloud Compliance needs to access CIFS volumes on the system.

The credentials can be read-only, but providing admin credentials ensures that Cloud Compliance can read any data that requires elevated permissions. The credentials are stored on the Cloud Compliance instance.

After you enter the credentials, you should see a message that all CIFS volumes were authenticated successfully.

The screenshot shows the 'Scan Status' page for 'Cloud Volumes ONTAP'. At the top, there's a back button and a title 'Scan Status'. Below that, a section for 'Cloud Volumes ONTAP' displays the following information:

Name:	Volumes:	CIFS Credentials Status:
Newdatastore	• 12 Continuously Scanning • 8 Not Scanning	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Valid CIFS credentials for all accessible volumes

Buttons for 'View Details' and 'Edit CIFS Credentials' are also present.

5. On the **Scan Configuration** page, click **View Details** to review the status for each CIFS and NFS volume and correct any errors.

For example, the following image shows three volumes; one of which Cloud Compliance can't scan due to network connectivity issues between the Cloud Compliance instance and the volume.

The screenshot shows the 'Newdatastore Scan Configuration' page. It lists three volumes with their names, protocols, and statuses:

Name	Protocol	Status	Required Action
10.160.7.6/yuval22	NFS	• Continuously Scanning	
10.160.7.6/yuvalnewtarget	NFS	• Continuously Scanning	
\10.160.7.6\Danny_share	CIFS	• No Access	The CIFS credentials that you provided have expired. Edit the CIFS credential...

A search bar and an 'Edit CIFS Credentials' button are visible at the top right.

Getting started with Cloud Compliance for Amazon S3

Cloud Compliance can scan your Amazon S3 buckets to identify the personal and sensitive data that resides in S3 object storage. Cloud Compliance can scan any bucket in the account, regardless if it was created for a NetApp solution.

Pricing

You need to pay to scan your Amazon S3 buckets. [Learn about pricing](#).

A 30-day free trial is available to scan Amazon S3 data with Cloud Compliance. A subscription to the AWS Marketplace is required to continue scanning Amazon S3 after the free trial ends. [Learn how to](#)

[subscribe](#).

Quick start

Get started quickly by following these steps, or scroll down to the remaining sections for full details.



Deploy Cloud Manager in AWS

If you haven't already done so, log in to [Cloud Central](#) and deploy Cloud Manager in AWS.

Cloud Manager automatically discovers the S3 buckets in this AWS account and displays them in an Amazon S3 working environment.



Set up your cloud environment

Ensure that your cloud environment can meet the requirements for Cloud Compliance, which includes preparing an IAM role, setting up connectivity from Cloud Compliance to S3, and more. [See the complete list](#).



Subscribe from the AWS Marketplace

A subscription to the AWS Marketplace is required to scan Amazon S3 after the 30-day free trial ends.

Click **Settings > Credentials** and click **Add Subscription** for the Instance Profile.



Enable Cloud Compliance

Select the Amazon S3 working environment, click **Enable Compliance**, and select an IAM role that includes the required permissions.



Configure buckets

Select the buckets that you'd like to scan and Cloud Compliance will start scanning them.

Reviewing prerequisites

Review the following prerequisites to make sure that you have a supported configuration before you enable Cloud Compliance.

Requirements specific to S3

The first two requirements are specific to scanning S3 buckets.

Set up an IAM role for the Cloud Compliance instance

Cloud Compliance needs permissions to connect to the S3 buckets in your account and to scan them. Set up an IAM role that includes the permissions listed below. Cloud Manager prompts you to select an IAM role when you enable Cloud Compliance on the Amazon S3 working environment.

```
{  
    "Version": "2012-10-17",  
    "Statement": [  
        {  
            "Effect": "Allow",  
            "Action": [  
                "s3:Get*",  
                "s3>List*",  
                "s3:HeadBucket"  
            ],  
            "Resource": "*"  
        },  
        {  
            "Effect": "Allow",  
            "Action": [  
                "iam:GetPolicyVersion",  
                "iam:GetPolicy",  
                "iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies"  
            ],  
            "Resource": [  
                "arn:aws:iam::*:policy/*",  
                "arn:aws:iam::*:role/*"  
            ]  
        }  
    ]  
}
```

Provide connectivity from Cloud Compliance to Amazon S3

Cloud Compliance needs a connection to Amazon S3. The best way to provide that connection is through a VPC Endpoint to the S3 service. For instructions, see [AWS Documentation: Creating a Gateway Endpoint](#).

When you create the VPC Endpoint, be sure to select the region, VPC, and route table that corresponds to the Cloud Compliance instance. You must also modify the security group to add an outbound HTTPS rule that enables traffic to the S3 endpoint. Otherwise, Cloud Compliance can't connect to the S3 service.

If you experience any issues, see [AWS Support Knowledge Center: Why can't I connect to an S3 bucket using a gateway VPC endpoint?](#)

An alternative is to provide the connection by using a NAT Gateway.



You can't use a proxy to get to S3 over the internet.

General requirements

The requirements in this section apply to Cloud Compliance in general, whether you're scanning Amazon S3, Cloud Volumes ONTAP, or Azure NetApp Files. If you've already enabled Cloud Compliance (for Cloud Volumes ONTAP or Azure NetApp Files), then you can skip these requirements and [Subscribe from the AWS Marketplace](#).

Enable outbound internet access

Cloud Compliance requires outbound internet access. If your virtual network uses a proxy server for internet access, ensure that the Cloud Compliance instance has outbound internet access to contact the following endpoints. Note that Cloud Manager deploys the Cloud Compliance instance in the same subnet as Cloud Manager.

Endpoints	Purpose
https://cloudmanager.cloud.netapp.com	Communication with the Cloud Manager service, which includes Cloud Central accounts.
https://netapp-cloud-account.auth0.com https://auth0.com	Communication with NetApp Cloud Central for centralized user authentication.
https://cloud-compliance-support-netapp.s3.us-west-2.amazonaws.com https://hub.docker.com https://auth.docker.io https://registry-1.docker.io https://index.docker.io/ https://dseasb33srnrrn.cloudfront.net/ https://production.cloudflare.docker.com/	Provides access to software images, manifests, and templates.
https://kinesis.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	Enables NetApp to stream data from audit records.
https://cognito-idp.us-east-1.amazonaws.com https://cognito-identity.us-east-1.amazonaws.com	Enables Cloud Compliance to access and download manifests and templates, and to send logs and metrics.

Ensure that Cloud Manager has the required permissions

Ensure that Cloud Manager has permissions to deploy resources and create security groups for the Cloud Compliance instance. You can find the latest Cloud Manager permissions in [the policies provided by NetApp](#).

Check your vCPU limits

Ensure that your cloud provider's vCPU limit allows for the deployment of an instance with 16 cores. You'll need to verify the vCPU limit for the relevant instance family in the region where Cloud

Manager is running.

In AWS, the instance family is *On-Demand Standard instances*. In Azure, the instance family is *Standard DSv3 Family*.

For more details on vCPU limits, see the following:

- [AWS documentation: Amazon EC2 Service Limits](#)
- [Azure documentation: Virtual machine vCPU quotas](#)

Ensure that Cloud Manager can access Cloud Compliance

Ensure connectivity between Cloud Manager and the Cloud Compliance instance:

- The security group for Cloud Manager must allow inbound and outbound traffic over port 80 to and from the Cloud Compliance instance.

This connection enables deployment of the Cloud Compliance instance and enables you to view information in the Compliance tab.

- If your AWS network doesn't use a NAT or proxy for internet access, modify the security group for Cloud Manager to allow inbound traffic over TCP port 3128 from the Cloud Compliance instance.

This is required because the Cloud Compliance instance uses Cloud Manager as a proxy to access the internet.



This port is open by default on all new Cloud Manager instances, starting with version 3.7.5. It's not open on Cloud Manager instances created prior to that.

Ensure that you can keep Cloud Compliance running

The Cloud Compliance instance needs to stay on to continuously scan your data.

Ensure web browser connectivity to Cloud Compliance

After Cloud Compliance is enabled, ensure that users access the Cloud Manager interface from a host that has a connection to the Cloud Compliance instance.

The Cloud Compliance instance uses a private IP address to ensure that the indexed data isn't accessible to the internet. As a result, the web browser that you use to access Cloud Manager must have a connection to that private IP address. That connection can come from a direct connection to AWS or Azure (for example, a VPN), or from a host that's inside the same network as the Cloud Compliance instance.



If you're accessing Cloud Manager from a public IP address, then your web browser probably isn't running on a host inside the network.

Subscribing from the AWS Marketplace

A 30-day free trial is available to scan Amazon S3 data with Cloud Compliance. A subscription to the AWS Marketplace is required to continue scanning Amazon S3 after the free trial ends.

These steps must be completed by a user who has the *Account Admin* role.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **Credentials**.



2. Find the credentials for the AWS Instance Profile.

The subscription must be added to the Instance Profile. Charging won't work otherwise.

If you already have a subscription, then you're all set—there's nothing else that you need to do.

aws Instance Profile		Credential Type: AWS Keys
AWS Account ID		OCCM IAM Role
Subscription	metering service subscription QA !!!!	0 Working Environments

3. If you don't have a subscription yet, hover over the credentials and click the action menu.
4. Click **Add Subscription**.

aws Instance Profile		+ Add Subscription	Edit	Delete	X
AWS Account ID		OCCM IAM Role			
Subscription	No Subscription	0 Working Environments			

5. Click **Add Subscription**, click **Continue**, and follow the steps.

► https://docs.netapp.com/us-en/occm/media/video_subscribing_aws.mp4 (video)

Enabling Cloud Compliance

Enable Cloud Compliance on Amazon S3 after you verify the prerequisites.

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Working Environments**.
2. Select the Amazon S3 working environment.



3. In the pane on the right, click **Enable Compliance**.

A screenshot of the Cloud Manager environment details pane for the Amazon S3 environment. The pane is titled "Amazon S3".
Status: On (represented by a green square icon)
Information section:
240 Buckets | 15 Regions
Services section:
Cloud Compliance: Off (represented by a red square icon) | Enable Compliance button (highlighted in blue)
A close button (X) is located in the top right corner of the pane.

- When prompted, assign an IAM role to the Cloud Compliance instance that has [the required permissions](#).

Assign an AWS IAM Role for Cloud Compliance

To enable Cloud Compliance on Amazon S3 buckets, select an existing IAM role. Make sure that your AWS IAM role has the permission defined in the [Policy Requirements](#).

Select IAM Role

NetAppCloudCompliance ▾

VPC Endpoint for Amazon S3 Required

A VPC endpoint to the Amazon S3 service is required so Cloud Compliance can securely scan the data. Alternatively, ensure that the Cloud Compliance instance has direct access to the internet via a NAT Gateway or Internet Gateway.

Enable Compliance **Cancel**

- Click **Enable Compliance**.



You can also enable compliance scans for a working environment from the Scan Configuration page by clicking the icon and selecting **Activate Compliance**.

Result

If the Cloud Compliance instance hasn't been deployed yet, Cloud Manager deploys it. If it has been deployed, Cloud Manager assigns the IAM role to the instance.

Configuring buckets

After Cloud Manager enables Cloud Compliance on Amazon S3, the next step is to configure the buckets that you want to scan.

When Cloud Manager is running in the AWS account that has the S3 buckets you want to scan, it discovers those buckets and displays them in an Amazon S3 working environment.

Cloud Compliance can also [scan S3 buckets that are in different AWS accounts](#).

Steps

1. Select the Amazon S3 working environment.
2. In the pane on the right, click **Configure Buckets**.

The screenshot shows the Amazon S3 service configuration pane. At the top, there's a circular icon with a trash can symbol and the text "Amazon S3" followed by a green square icon labeled "On". Below this is a section titled "INFORMATION" with two rows of data: "246 Buckets" and "16 Regions". Under the "SERVICES" section, there's a "Cloud Compliance" entry with a cloud and padlock icon, also labeled "On". A blue button labeled "Configure Buckets" is next to it, and a three-dot menu icon is to the right. A prominent message below says "Free Trial for Cloud Compliance" with a note about using a free trial version for a controlled availability period.

3. Enable compliance on the buckets that you want to scan.

The screenshot shows the "Amazon S3 Scan Configuration" page. It has a header with a back arrow, the title, and a search icon. Below is a sub-header stating "15/28 Buckets in Scan Scope. Toggle ON/OFF to enable Compliance per Bucket". A table lists three buckets: "BucketName1" (status: Not Scanning, action: Add Credentials), "BucketName2" (status: Continuously Scanning), and "BucketName3" (status: Not Scanning). The table has columns for "Compliance", "Bucket Name", "Status", and "Required Action".

Compliance	Bucket Name	Status	Required Action
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	BucketName1	● Not Scanning	Add Credentials
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	BucketName2	● Continuously Scanning	
<input type="checkbox"/>	BucketName3	● Not Scanning	

Result

Cloud Compliance starts scanning the S3 buckets that you enabled. If there are any errors, they'll appear in the Status column, alongside the required action to fix the error.

Scanning buckets from additional AWS accounts

You can scan S3 buckets that are under a different AWS account by assigning a role from that account to access the existing Cloud Compliance instance.

Steps

1. Go to the target AWS account where you want to scan S3 buckets and create an IAM role by selecting **Another AWS account**.

Create role

1 2 3 4

Select type of trusted entity

 AWS service EC2, Lambda and others	 Another AWS account Belonging to you or 3rd party	 Web identity Cognito or any OpenID provider	 SAML 2.0 federation Your corporate directory
--	---	---	--

Allows entities in other accounts to perform actions in this account. [Learn more](#)

Specify accounts that can use this role

Account ID* ⓘ

Options Require external ID (Best practice when a third party will assume this role)
 Require MFA ⓘ

Be sure to do the following:

- Enter the ID of the account where the Cloud Compliance instance resides.
- Change the **Maximum CLI/API session duration** from 1 hour to 12 hours and save that change.
- Attach the Cloud Compliance IAM policy. Make sure it has the required permissions.

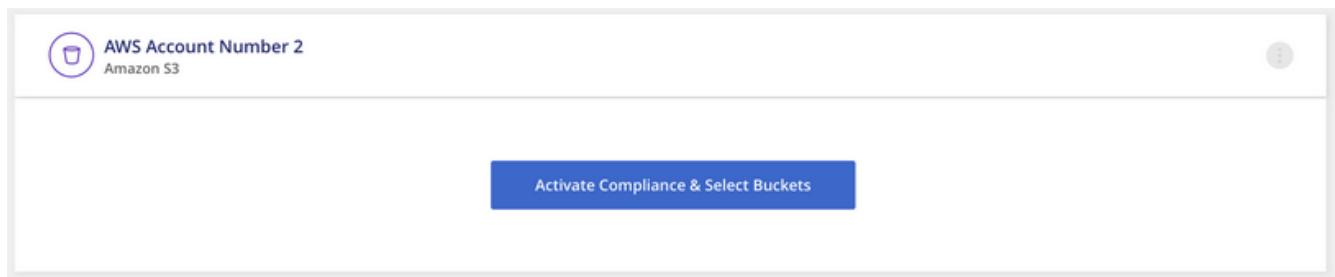
```
{  
    "Version": "2012-10-17",  
    "Statement": [  
        {  
            "Effect": "Allow",  
            "Action": [  
                "s3:Get*",  
                "s3>List*",  
                "s3:HeadBucket"  
            ],  
            "Resource": "*"  
        },  
    ]  
}
```

2. Go to the source AWS account where the Cloud Compliance instance resides and select the IAM role that is attached to the instance.
 - a. Change the **Maximum CLI/API session duration** from 1 hour to 12 hours and save that change.
 - b. Click **Attach policies** and then click **Create policy**.
 - c. Create a policy that includes the "sts:AssumeRole" action and the ARN of the role that you created in the target account.

```
{
    "Version": "2012-10-17",
    "Statement": [
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": "sts:AssumeRole",
            "Resource": "arn:aws:iam::<ADDITIONAL-ACCOUNT-ID>:role/<ADDITIONAL_ROLE_NAME>"
        },
        {
            "Effect": "Allow",
            "Action": [
                "iam:GetPolicyVersion",
                "iam:GetPolicy",
                "iam>ListAttachedRolePolicies"
            ],
            "Resource": [
                "arn:aws:iam::*:policy/*",
                "arn:aws:iam::*:role/*"
            ]
        }
    ]
}
```

The Cloud Compliance instance profile account now has access to the additional AWS account.

3. Go to the **Amazon S3 Scan Configuration** page and the new AWS account is displayed. Note that it can take a few minutes for Cloud Compliance to sync the new account's working environment and show this information.



4. Click **Activate Compliance & Select Buckets** and select the buckets you want to scan.

Result

Cloud Compliance starts scanning the new S3 buckets that you enabled.

Scanning on-premises ONTAP data with Cloud Compliance by using SnapMirror

You can scan your on-premises ONTAP data with Cloud Compliance by replicating the on-prem NFS or CIFS data to a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment and then enabling compliance. Scanning the data directly from an on-premises ONTAP working environment isn't supported.

Steps

1. From Cloud Manager, create a SnapMirror relationship between the on-premises ONTAP cluster and Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
 - a. [Discover the on-premises cluster in Cloud Manager](#).
 - b. [Create a SnapMirror replication between the on-premises ONTAP cluster and Cloud Volumes ONTAP from Cloud Manager](#).
2. From the ONTAP CLI, configure the destination volume for data access.
 - a. [Mount destination volumes to the NAS namespace](#).
 - b. If you're using CIFS:
 - [Create a CIFS share on the destination volume](#).
 - [Apply the appropriate ACLs to the CIFS share at the destination volume](#).
 - c. If you're using NFS:
 - [Assign NFS export policies to the destination volume](#).
3. From Cloud Manager, activate Cloud Compliance on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment that contains the SnapMirror data.
 - a. Click **Working Environments**.
 - b. Select the working environment that contains the SnapMirror data.
 - c. In the pane on the right, click **Enable Compliance**.

[Click here if you need help with enabling Cloud Compliance on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system](#).

Gaining visibility and control of private data

Gain control of your private data by viewing details about the personal data and sensitive personal data in your organization. You can also gain visibility by reviewing the categories and file types that Cloud Compliance found in your data.

By default, the Cloud Compliance dashboard displays compliance data for all working environments. If you want to see data for only some of the working environments, [select those working environments](#).

Personal data

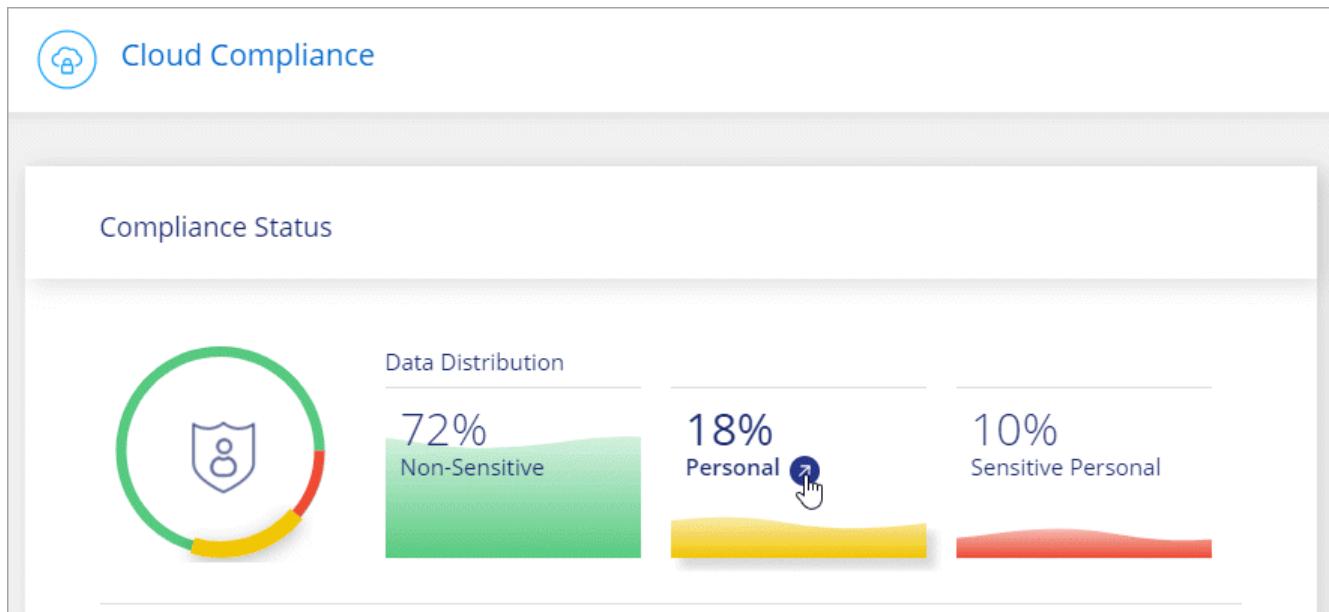
Cloud Compliance automatically identifies specific words, strings, and patterns (Regex) inside the data. For example, Personal Identification Information (PII), credit card numbers, social security numbers, bank account numbers, and more. [See the full list](#).

For some types of personal data, Cloud Compliance uses *proximity validation* to validate its findings. The validation occurs by looking for one or more predefined keywords in proximity to the personal data that was found. For example, Cloud Compliance identifies a U.S. social security number (SSN) as a SSN if it sees a proximity word next to it—for example, *SSN* or *social security*. [The list below](#) shows when Cloud Compliance uses proximity validation.

Viewing files that contain personal data

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Compliance**.
2. To investigate the details for all personal data, click the icon next to the personal data percentage.



3. To investigate the details for a specific type of personal data, click **View All** and then click the **Investigate Results** icon for a specific type of personal data.

The screenshot shows the Cloud Compliance interface. At the top left is a blue circular icon with a white cloud and padlock. To its right is the text "Cloud Compliance". Below this, a navigation bar has a back arrow and the text "Personal Files". Underneath is a sub-header "7 Types | 41.1K Files". The main content area lists four categories with their respective file counts and a "View Details" button:

Category	File Count	Action
Email Address	40K Files	
Credit Card Number	2.3K Files	
U.K. National Insurance Number (NINO)	10 Files	
Slovenian Tax Identification Number	2 Files	

4. Investigate the data by searching, sorting, expanding details for a specific file, clicking **Investigate Results** to see masked information, or by downloading the file list.

The screenshot shows a dashboard investigation for 'Credit Card Number'. At the top left is the text "Dashboard investigation for 'Credit Card Number'". To the right is a search bar with the placeholder "Enter search term" and a download icon. Below this, it says "3.9K files found in All working environments". The main content area is a table with the following columns: "File Name ↑", "Personal", "Sensitive Personal", "Data Subjects", and "File Type ↓". A single row is visible for "customer-data.xls":

File Name ↑	Personal	Sensitive Personal	Data Subjects	File Type ↓
customer-data.xls	1K	0	63	XLS

Below the table, there is a detailed view of the file "customer-data.xls" with the following information:

- Working Environment: Amazon S3
- Storage Repository: compliantdemofiles
- File Path: /Patterns/NEW SSN
- Category: Miscellaneous
- File Size: 142.35 KB
- Last Modified: 2019-12-16 12:18

5. You can also filter the contents of the investigation page to display only the results you want to see.

Filters include working environment, category, private data, file type, last modified date, and whether the S3 object's permissions are open to public access.

Dashboard Investigation		3011 Results Found					
FILTERS: Clear All		File Name ↓↑	Personal ↓↑	Sensitive Personal ↓↑	Data Subjects ↓↑	File Type ↓↑	
Working Environment	+	> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	6	3	16	PDF	
Storage Repository	+	> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	9	2	11	PDF	
Category	+	> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	4	1	7	PDF	
Private Data 6	+	> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	9	1	6	PDF	
File Type	+	> Expense Report EXP-TPO-1060388	8	6	4	PDF	

Types of personal data

The personal data found in files can be general personal data or national identifiers. The third column identifies whether Cloud Compliance uses [proximity validation](#) to validate its findings for the identifier.

Type	Identifier	Proximity validation?
General	Email address	No
	Credit card number	No
	IBAN number (International Bank Account Number)	No
	IP address	Yes

Type	Identifier	Proximity validation?
National Identifiers	Belgian ID (Numero National)	Yes
	Brazilian ID (CPF)	Yes
	Bulgarian ID (Unified Civil Number)	Yes
	California Driver's License	Yes
	Cyprus Tax Identification Number (TIC)	Yes
	Danish ID (CPR)	Yes
	Estonian ID (Isikukood)	Yes
	Finnish ID (henkilötunnus)	Yes
	French Tax Identification Number (SPI)	Yes
	German Tax Identification Number (Steuerliche Identifikationsnummer)	Yes
	Hungarian Tax Identification Number (Adóazonosító jel)	Yes
	Irish ID (PPS)	Yes
	Israeli ID	Yes
	Italian ID (Codice Fiscale)	Yes
	Latvian ID	Yes
	Lithuanian ID (Asmens kodas)	Yes
	Luxembourg ID	Yes
	Maltese ID Card Number	Yes
	Netherlands ID (BSN)	Yes
	Polish Tax Identification Number	Yes
	Portuguese ID (NIF)	Yes
	Romanian ID (CNP)	Yes
	Slovak Tax Identification Number	Yes
	Slovenian Tax Identification Number	Yes
	South African ID	Yes
	Spanish ID (DNI)	Yes
	Swedish ID (personnummer)	Yes
	U.K. ID (NINO)	Yes
	USA Social Security Number (SSN)	Yes

Sensitive personal data

Cloud Compliance automatically identifies special types of sensitive personal information, as defined by privacy regulations such as [articles 9 and 10 of the GDPR](#). For example, information regarding a person's health, ethnic origin, or sexual orientation. [See the full list.](#)

Cloud Compliance uses artificial intelligence (AI), natural language processing (NLP), machine learning (ML), and cognitive computing (CC) to understand the meaning of the content that it scans in order to extract entities and categorize it accordingly.

For example, one sensitive GDPR data category is ethnic origin. Because of its NLP abilities, Cloud Compliance can distinguish the difference between a sentence that reads "George is Mexican" (indicating sensitive data as specified in article 9 of the GDPR), versus "George is eating Mexican food."

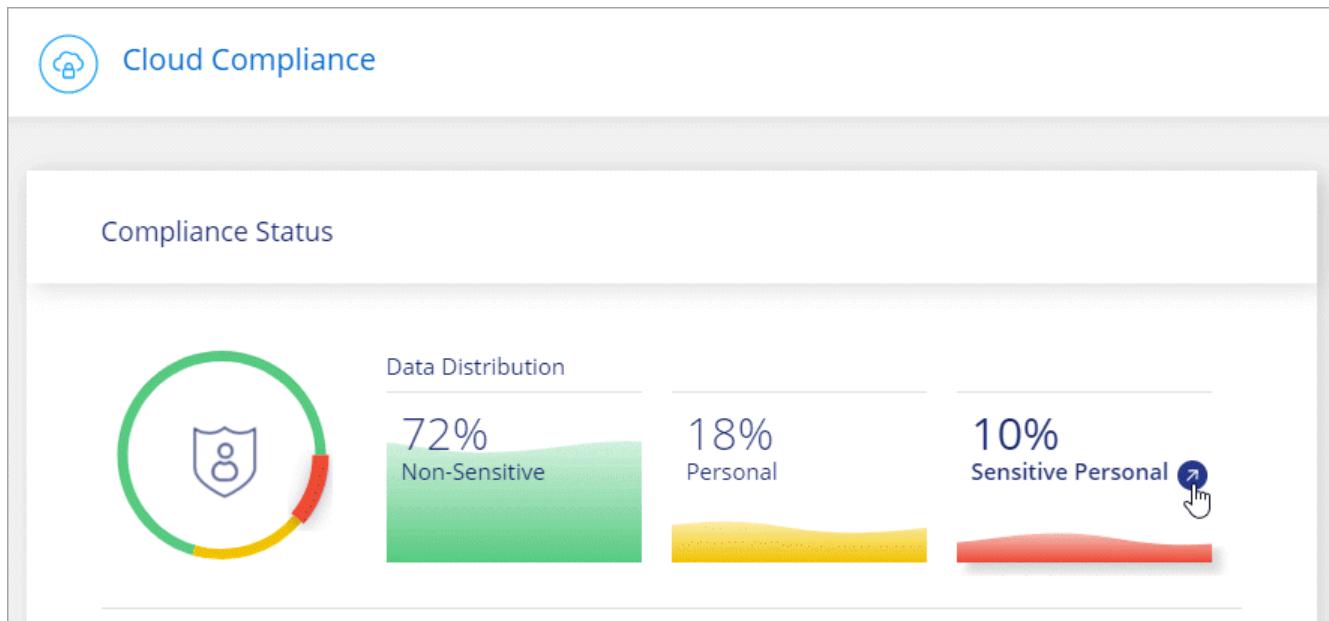


Only English is supported when scanning for sensitive personal data. Support for more languages will be added later.

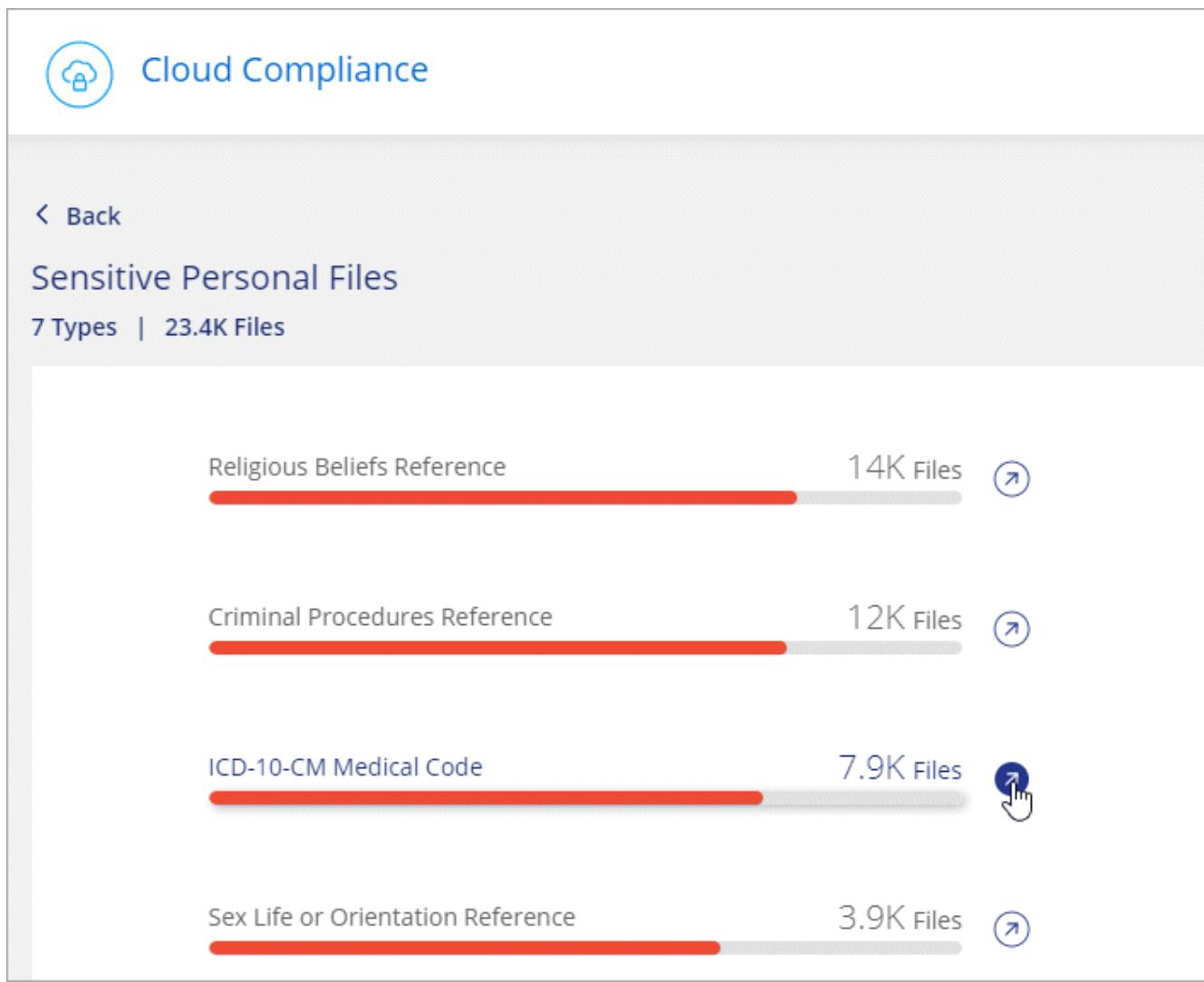
Viewing files that contain sensitive personal data

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Compliance**.
2. To investigate the details for all sensitive personal data, click the icon next to the sensitive personal data percentage.



3. To investigate the details for a specific type of sensitive personal data, click **View All** and then click the **Investigate Results** icon for a specific type of sensitive personal data.



4. Investigate the data by searching, sorting, expanding details for a specific file, clicking **Investigate Results** to see masked information, or by downloading the file list.

Types of sensitive personal data

The sensitive personal data that Cloud Compliance can find in files includes the following:

Criminal Procedures Reference

Data concerning a natural person's criminal convictions and offenses.

Ethnicity Reference

Data concerning a natural person's racial or ethnic origin.

Health Reference

Data concerning a natural person's health.

ICD-10-CM Medical Codes

Codes used in the medical and health industry.

Philosophical Beliefs Reference

Data concerning a natural person's philosophical beliefs.

Religious Beliefs Reference

Data concerning a natural person's religious beliefs.

Sex Life or Orientation Reference

Data concerning a natural person's sex life or sexual orientation.

Categories

Cloud Compliance takes the data that it scanned and divides it into different types of categories. Categories are topics based on AI analysis of the content and metadata of each file. [See the list of categories.](#)

Categories can help you understand what's happening with your data by showing you the types of information that you have. For example, a category like resumes or employee contracts can include sensitive data. When you investigate the results, you might find that employee contracts are stored in an insecure location. You can then correct that issue.



Only English is supported for categories. Support for more languages will be added later.

Viewing files by categories

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Compliance**.
2. Click the **Investigate Results** icon for one of the top 4 categories directly from the main screen, or click **View All** and then click the icon for any of the categories.

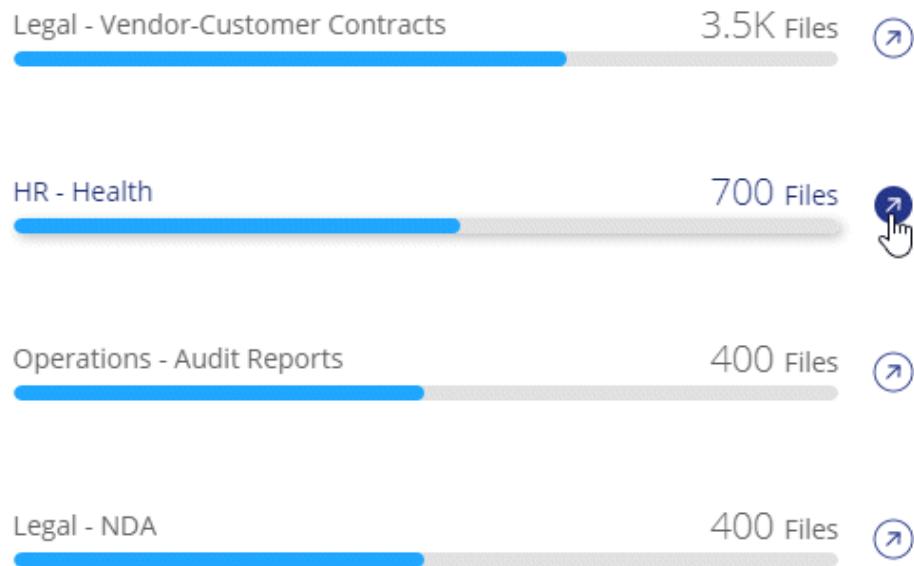


Cloud Compliance

[Back](#)

Categories

27 Categories | 219.9K Files



3. Investigate the data by searching, sorting, expanding details for a specific file, clicking **Investigate Results** to see masked information, or by downloading the file list.

Types of categories

Cloud Compliance categorizes your data as follows:

Finance

- Balance Sheets
- Purchase Orders
- Invoices
- Quarterly Reports

HR

- Background Checks
- Compensation Plans

- Employee Contracts
- Employee Reviews
- Health
- Resumes

Legal

- NDAs
- Vendor-Customer contracts

Marketing

- Campaigns
- Conferences

Operations

- Audit Reports

Sales

- Sales Orders

Services

- RFI
- RFP
- SOW
- Training

Support

- Complaints and Tickets

Metadata categories

- Application Data
- Archive Files
- Audio
- Business Application Data
- CAD Files
- Code
- Database and index files
- Design Files
- Email Application Data

- Executables
- Financial Application Data
- Health Application Data
- Images
- Logs
- Miscellaneous Documents
- Miscellaneous Presentations
- Miscellaneous Spreadsheets
- Videos

File types

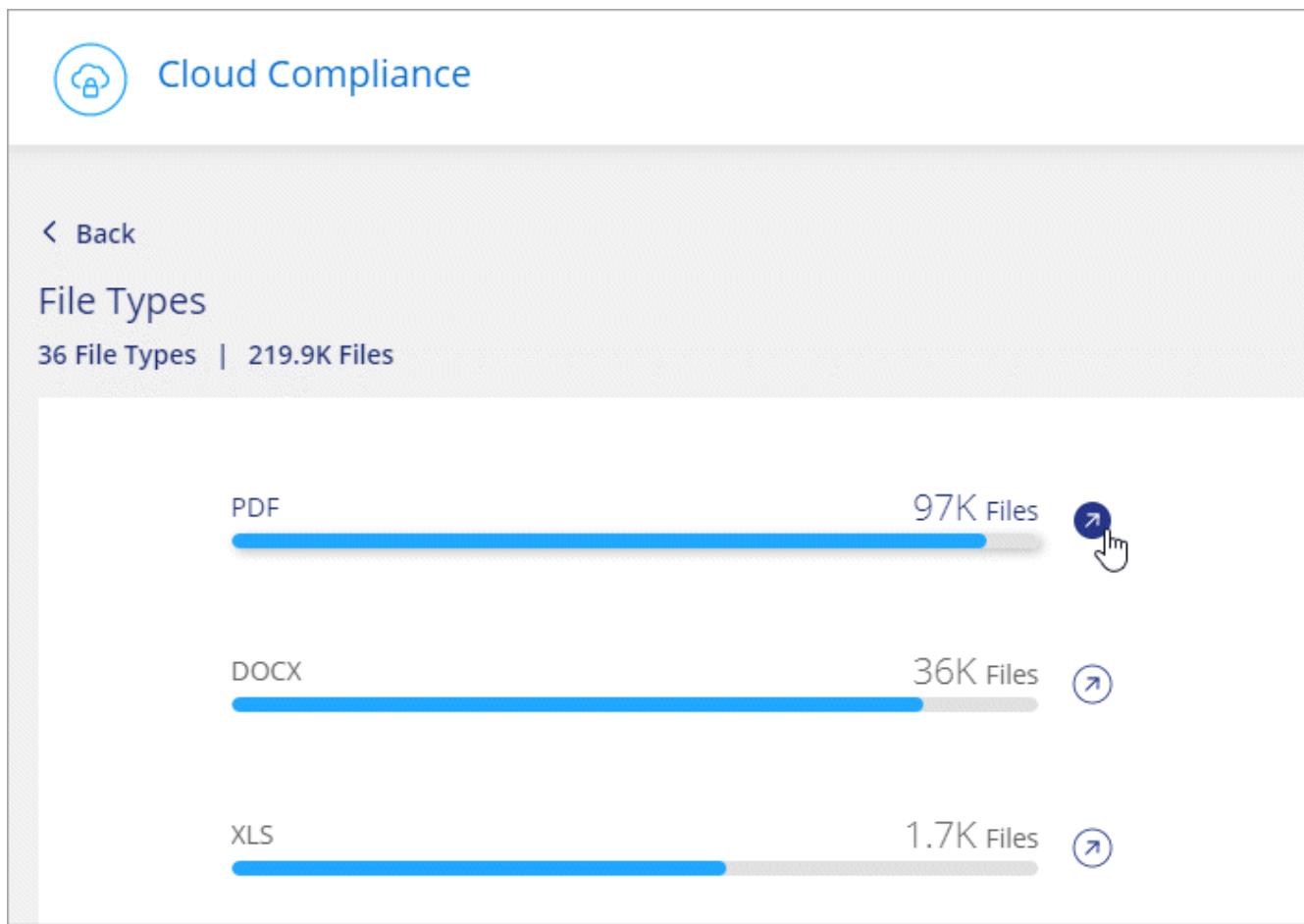
Cloud Compliance takes the data that it scanned and breaks it down by file type. Reviewing your file types can help you control your sensitive data because you might find that certain file types are not stored correctly. [See the list of file types.](#)

For example, you might be storing CAD files that include very sensitive information about your organization. If they are unsecured, you can take control of the sensitive data by restricting permissions or moving the files to another location.

Viewing file types

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Compliance**.
2. Click the **Investigate Results** icon for one of the top 4 file types directly from the main screen, or click **View All** and then click the icon for any of the file types.



3. Investigate the data by searching, sorting, expanding details for a specific file, clicking **Investigate Results** to see masked information, or by downloading the file list.

Types of files

Cloud Compliance scans all files for category and metadata insights and displays all file types in the file types section of the dashboard.

But when Cloud Compliance detects Personal Identifiable Information (PII), or when it performs a DSAR search, only the following file formats are supported:

.PDF, .DOCX, .DOC, .PPTX, .XLS, .XLSX, .CSV, .TXT, .RTF, and .JSON.

Viewing data from specific working environments

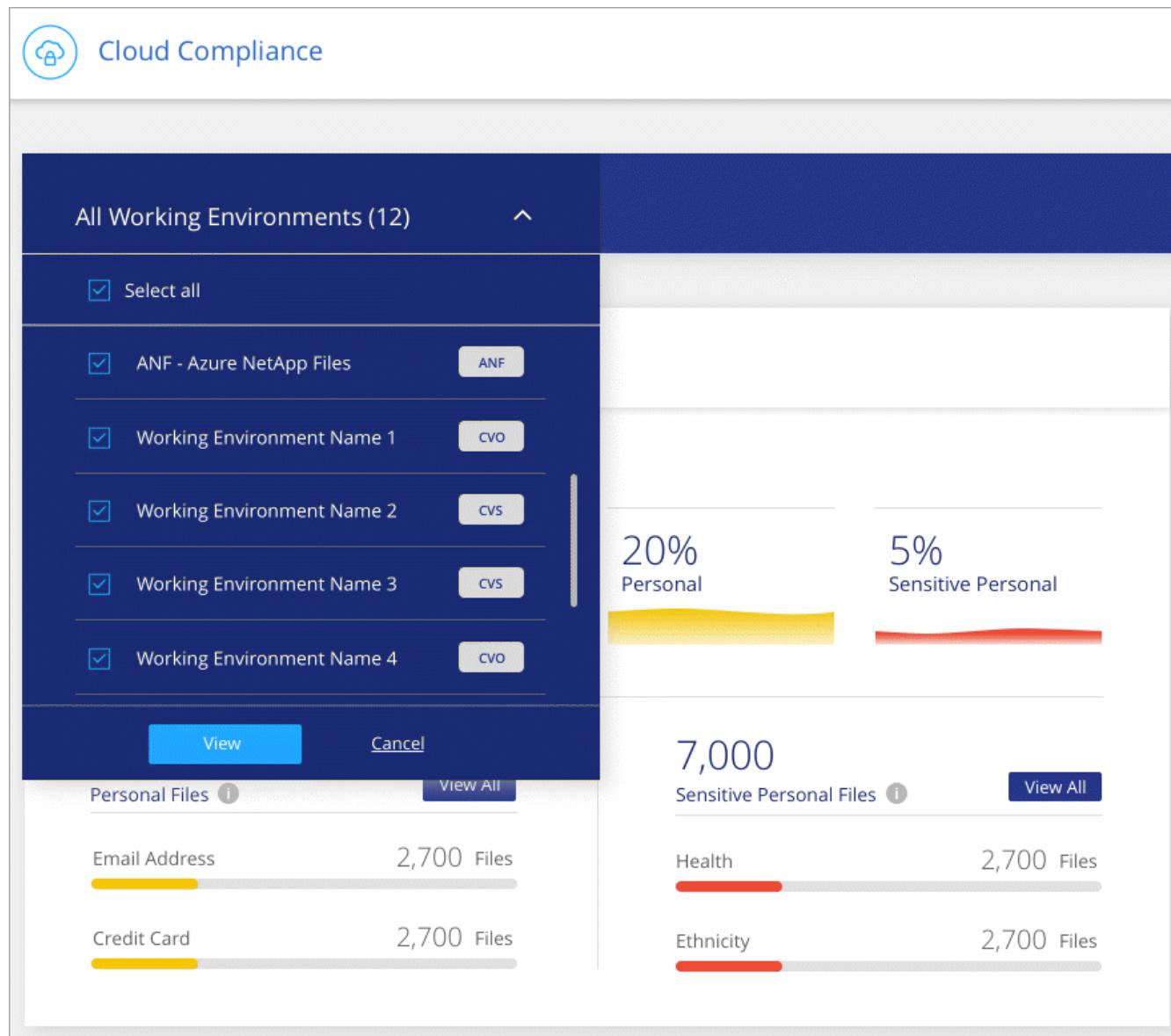
You can filter the contents of the Cloud Compliance dashboard to see compliance data for specific working environments.

When you filter the dashboard, Cloud Compliance scopes the compliance data and reports to just those working environments that you selected.

Steps

1. Click the filter drop-down, select the working environments that you'd like to view data for, and

click **View**.



Accuracy of information found

NetApp can't guarantee 100% accuracy of the personal data and sensitive personal data that Cloud Compliance identifies. You should always validate the information by reviewing the data.

Based on our testing, the table below shows the accuracy of the information that Cloud Compliance finds. We break it down by *precision* and *recall*:

Precision

The probability that what Cloud Compliance finds has been identified correctly. For example, a precision rate of 90% for personal data means that 9 out of 10 files identified as containing personal information, actually contain personal information. 1 out of 10 files would be a false positive.

Recall

The probability for Cloud Compliance to find what it should. For example, a recall rate of 70% for personal data means that Cloud Compliance can identify 7 out of 10 files that actually contain personal information in your organization. Cloud Compliance would miss 30% of the data and it won't appear in the dashboard.

Cloud Compliance is in a Controlled Availability release and we are constantly improving the accuracy of our results. Those improvements will be automatically available in future Cloud Compliance releases.

Type	Precision	Recall
Personal data - General	90%-95%	60%-80%
Personal data - Country identifiers	30%-60%	40%-60%
Sensitive personal data	80%-95%	20%-30%
Categories	90%-97%	60%-80%

What's included in each file list report (CSV file)

From each Investigation page you can download file lists (in CSV format) that include details about the identified files. If there are more than 10,000 results, only the top 10,000 appear in the list.

Each file list includes the following information:

- File name
- Location type
- Working environment
- Storage repository
- Protocol
- File path
- File type
- Category
- Personal information
- Sensitive personal information
- Deletion detection date

A deletion detection date identifies the date that the file was deleted or moved. This enables you to identify when sensitive files have been moved. Deleted files aren't part of the file number count that appears in the dashboard or on the Investigation page. The files only appear in the CSV reports.

Viewing compliance reports

Cloud Compliance provides reports that you can use to better understand the status of your organization's data privacy program.

By default, the Cloud Compliance dashboard displays compliance data for all working environments. If you want to view reports that contain data for only some of the working environments, [select those working environments](#).



NetApp can't guarantee 100% accuracy of the personal data and sensitive personal data that Cloud Compliance identifies. You should always validate the information by reviewing the data.

Privacy Risk Assessment Report

The Privacy Risk Assessment Report provides an overview of your organization's privacy risk status, as required by privacy regulations such as GDPR and CCPA. The report includes the following information:

Compliance status

A [severity score](#) and the distribution of data, whether it's non-sensitive, personal, or sensitive personal.

Assessment overview

A breakdown of the types of personal data found, as well as the categories of data.

Data subjects in this assessment

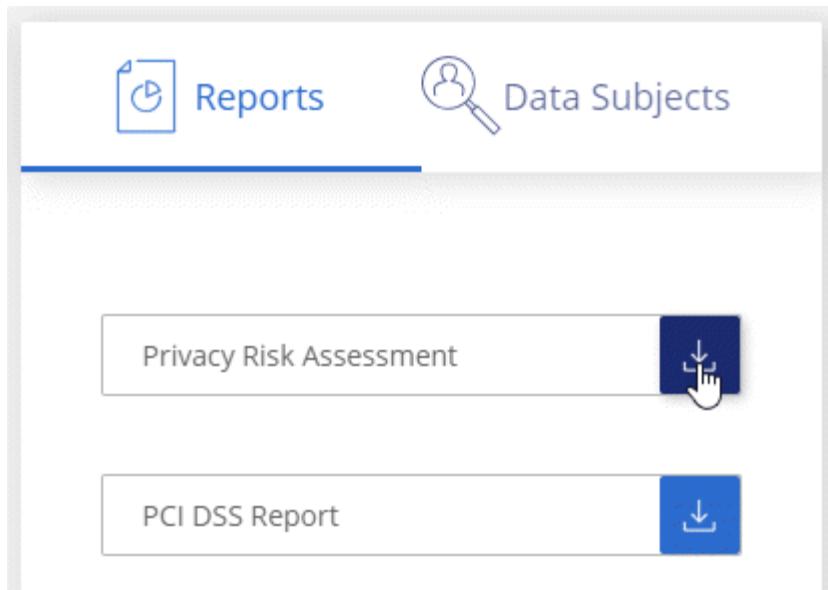
The number of people, by location, for which national identifiers were found.

Generating the Privacy Risk Assessment Report

Go to the Compliance tab to generate the report.

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Compliance**.
2. Under **Reports**, click the download icon next to **Privacy Risk Assessment**.



Result

Cloud Compliance generates a PDF report that you can review and send to other groups as needed.

Severity score

Cloud Compliance calculates the severity score for the Privacy Risk Assessment Report on the basis of three variables:

- The percentage of personal data out of all data.
- The percentage of sensitive personal data out of all data.
- The percentage of files that include data subjects, determined by national identifiers such as national IDs, Social Security numbers, and tax ID numbers.

The logic used to determine the score is as follows:

Severity score	Logic
0	All three variables are exactly 0%
1	One of the variables are larger than 0%
2	One of the variables are larger than 3%
3	Two of the variables are larger than 3%
4	Three of the variables are larger than 3%
5	One of the variables are larger than 6%
6	Two of the variables are larger than 6%
7	Three of the variables are larger than 6%
8	One of the variables are larger than 15%

Severity score	Logic
9	Two of the variables are larger than 15%
10	Three of the variables are larger than 15%

PCI DSS Report

The Payment Card Industry Data Security Standard (PCI DSS) Report can help you identify the distribution of credit card information across your files. The report includes the following information:

Overview

How many files contain credit card information and in which working environments.

Encryption

The percentage of files containing credit card information that are on encrypted or unencrypted working environments. This information is specific to Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Ransomware Protection

The percentage of files containing credit card information that are on working environments that do or don't have ransomware protection enabled. This information is specific to Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Retention

The timeframe in which the files were last modified. This is helpful because you shouldn't keep credit card information for longer than you need to process it.

Distribution of Credit Card Information

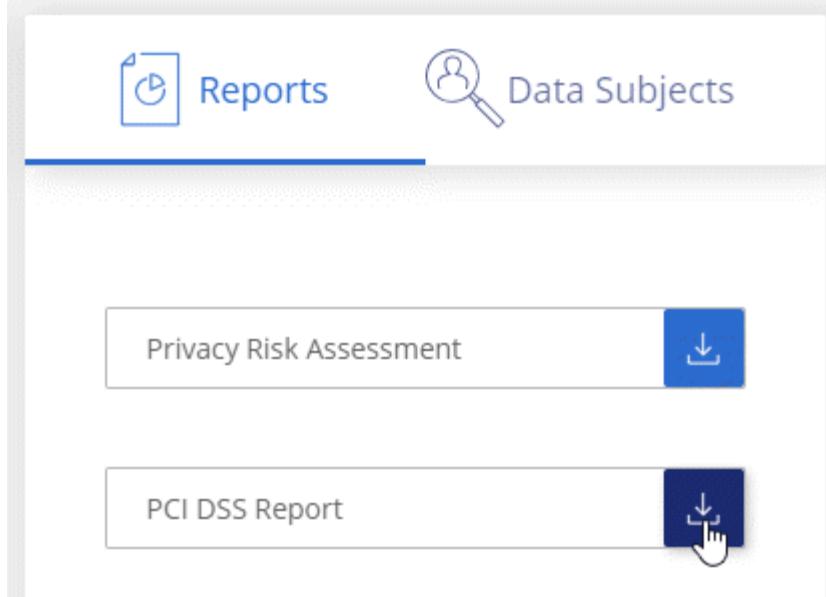
The working environments where the credit card information was found and whether encryption and ransomware protection are enabled.

Generating the PCI DSS Report

Go to the Compliance tab to generate the report.

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Compliance**.
2. Under **Reports**, click the download icon next to **PCI DSS Report**.



Result

Cloud Compliance generates a PDF report that you can review and send to other groups as needed.

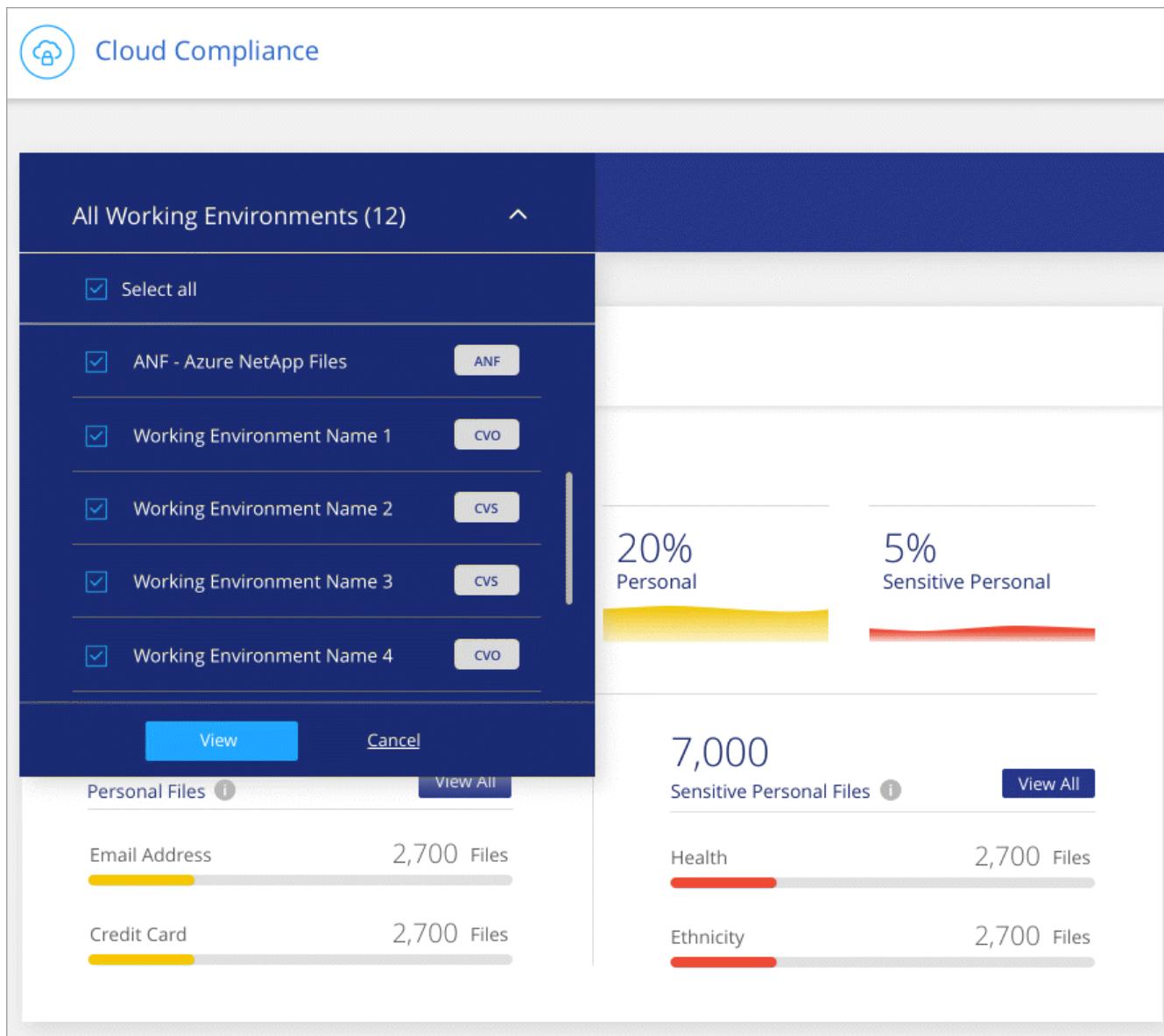
Selecting the working environments for reports

You can filter the contents of the Cloud Compliance dashboard to see compliance data for all or for just specific working environments.

When you filter the dashboard, Cloud Compliance scopes the compliance data and reports to just those working environments that you selected.

Steps

1. Click the filter drop-down, select the working environments that you'd like to view data for, and click **View**.



Responding to a Data Subject Access Request

Respond to a Data Subject Access Request (DSAR) by searching for a subject's full name or known identifier (such as an email address) and then downloading a report. The report is designed to aid in your organization's requirement to comply with GDPR or similar data privacy laws.



NetApp can't guarantee 100% accuracy of the personal data and sensitive personal data that Cloud Compliance identifies. You should always validate the information by reviewing the data.

What is a Data Subject Access Request?

Privacy regulations such as the European GDPR grant data subjects (such as customers or employees) the right to access their personal data. When a data subject requests this information, this is known as a DSAR (data subject access request). Organizations are required to respond to these requests "without undue delay," and at the latest within one month of receipt.

How can Cloud Compliance help you respond to a DSAR?

When you perform a data subject search, Cloud Compliance finds all of the files that has that person's name or identifier in it. Cloud Compliance checks the latest pre-indexed data for the name or identifier. It doesn't initiate a new scan.

After the search is complete, you can then download the list of files for a Data Subject Access Request report. The report aggregates insights from the data and puts it into legal terms that you can send back to the person.

Searching for data subjects and downloading reports

Search for the data subject's full name or known identifier and then download a file list report or DSAR report. You can search by [any personal information type](#).



Only English is supported when searching for the names of data subjects. Support for more languages will be added later.

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Compliance**.
2. Click **Data Subjects**.
3. Search for the data subject's full name or known identifier.

Here's an example that shows a search for the name *john doe*:

The screenshot shows the 'Data Subjects' section of the Cloud Compliance interface. At the top, there are two navigation icons: 'Reports' (with a pie chart icon) and 'Data Subjects' (with a magnifying glass over a person icon). Below the navigation is a back button labeled '< Back'. A search bar contains the text 'john doe Results' with a clear 'X' button to its right. Underneath the search bar, a blue icon representing a user profile is followed by the number '203' and the text 'Files Found'. Below this, there are two main buttons: 'Download DSAR Report' with a download icon and 'Investigate Results' with a circular arrow icon.

4. Choose one of the available options:

- **Download DSAR Report:** A formal response to the access request that you can send to the data subject. This report contains automatically-generated information based on data that Cloud Compliance found on the data subject and is designed to be used as a template. You should complete the form and review it internally before sending it to the data subject.
- **Investigate Results:** A page that enables you to investigate the data by searching, sorting, expanding details for a specific file, and by downloading the file list.



If there are more than 10,000 results, only the top 10,000 appear in the file list.

Disabling Cloud Compliance

If you need to, you can stop Cloud Compliance from scanning one or more working environments. You can also delete the Cloud Compliance instance if you no longer want to use Cloud Compliance with your working environments.

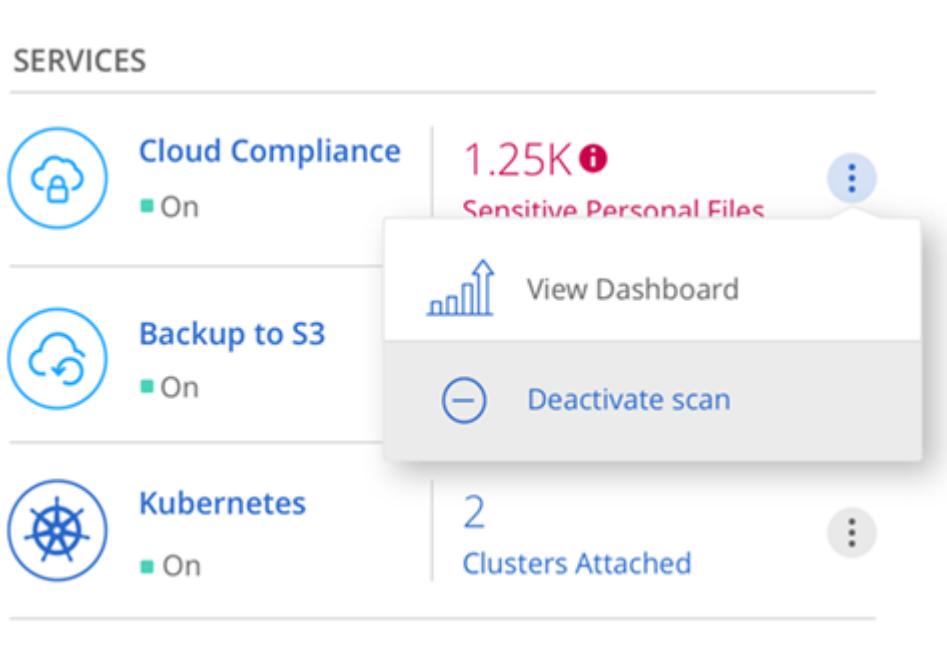
Deactivating compliance scans for a working environment

When you deactivate scans, Cloud Compliance no longer scans the data on the system and it removes the indexed compliance insights from the Cloud Compliance instance (the data from the working

environment itself isn't deleted).

Steps

1. At the top of Cloud Manager, click **Working Environments**.
2. Select the working environment.
3. In the right panel, click the action icon for the Cloud Compliance service and select **Deactivate scan**.



You can also disable compliance scans for a working environment from the Scan Configuration page by clicking the icon and selecting **Deactivate Compliance**.

Deleting the Cloud Compliance instance

You can delete the Cloud Compliance instance if you no longer want to use Cloud Compliance. Deleting the instance also deletes the associated disks where the indexed data resides.

Step

1. Go to your cloud provider's console and delete the Cloud Compliance instance.

The instance is named *CloudCompliance* with a generated hash (UUID) concatenated to it. For example: *CloudCompliance-16bb6564-38ad-4080-9a92-36f5fd2f71c7*

Frequently asked questions about Cloud Compliance

This FAQ can help if you're just looking for a quick answer to a question.

What is Cloud Compliance?

Cloud Compliance is a new NetApp cloud offering. Using Artificial Intelligence (AI) driven technology, Cloud Compliance helps organizations understand data context and identify sensitive data across your Azure NetApp Files configurations, Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems hosted in AWS or Azure, and Amazon S3 buckets.

Cloud Compliance provides pre-defined parameters (such as sensitive information types and categories) to address new data compliance regulations for data privacy and sensitivity, such as GDPR, CCPA, and more.

Why should I use Cloud Compliance?

Cloud Compliance can empower you with data to help you:

- Comply with data compliance and privacy regulations.
- Comply with data retention policies.
- Easily locate and report on specific data in response to data subjects, as required by GDPR, CCPA, and other data privacy regulations.

What are the common use cases for Cloud Compliance?

- Identify Personal Identifiable Information (PII).
- Identify a wide scope of sensitive information as required by GDPR and CCPA privacy regulations.
- Comply with new and upcoming data privacy regulations.

[Learn more about the use cases for Cloud Compliance.](#)

What types of data can be scanned with Cloud Compliance?

Cloud Compliance supports scanning of unstructured data over NFS and CIFS protocols that are managed by Cloud Volumes ONTAP and Azure NetApp Files.

Cloud Compliance can also scan data stored on Amazon S3 buckets.

[Learn how scans work.](#)

Which cloud providers are supported?

Cloud Compliance operates as part of Cloud Manager and currently supports AWS and Azure. This provides your organization with unified privacy visibility across different cloud providers. Support for Google Cloud Platform (GCP) will be added soon.

How do I access Cloud Compliance?

Cloud Compliance is operated and managed through Cloud Manager. You can access Cloud Compliance features from the **Compliance** tab in Cloud Manager.

How does Cloud Compliance work?

Cloud Compliance deploys another layer of Artificial Intelligence alongside your Cloud Manager system and Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances. It then scans the data on volumes and indexes the data insights found.

[Learn more about how Cloud Compliance works.](#)

How much does Cloud Compliance cost?

The cost depends on the type of working environment that you're scanning.

- Cloud Compliance is offered as part of Cloud Volumes ONTAP and Azure NetApp Files. There are no additional charges from NetApp, but you will incur costs from your cloud provider. [Learn more](#).
- You need to pay to scan your Amazon S3 buckets. [Learn about pricing](#).

How often does Cloud Compliance scan my data?

Data changes frequently, so Cloud Compliance scans your data continuously with no impact to your data. While the initial scan of your data might take longer, subsequent scans only scan the incremental changes, which reduces system scan times.

[Learn how scans work.](#)

Does Cloud Compliance offer reports?

Yes. The information offered by Cloud Compliance can be relevant to other stakeholders in your organizations, so we enable you to generate reports to share the insights.

The following reports are available for Cloud Compliance:

Privacy Risk Assessment report

Provides privacy insights from your data and a privacy risk score. [Learn more](#).

Data Subject Access Request report

Enables you to extract a report of all files that contain information regarding a data subject's specific name or personal identifier. [Learn more](#).

PCI DSS report

Helps you identify the distribution of credit card information across your files.

Reports on a specific information type

Reports are available that include details about the identified files that contain personal data and sensitive personal data. You can also see files broken down by category and file type. [Learn more](#).

What type of instance or VM is required for Cloud Compliance?

- In Azure, Cloud Compliance runs on a Standard_D16s_v3 VM with a 512 GB disk.
- In AWS, Cloud Compliance runs on an m5.4xlarge instance with a 500 GB io1 disk.

In regions where m5.4xlarge isn't available, Cloud Compliance runs on an m4.4xlarge instance instead.



Changing or resizing the instance/VM type isn't supported. You need to use the default size that's provided.

[Learn more about how Cloud Compliance works.](#)

Does scan performance vary?

Scan performance can vary based on the network bandwidth and the average file size in your cloud environment.

Which file types are supported?

Cloud Compliance scans all files for category and metadata insights and displays all file types in the file types section of the dashboard.

But when Cloud Compliance detects Personal Identifiable Information (PII), or when it performs a DSAR search, only the following file formats are supported:

.PDF, .DOCX, .DOC, .PPTX, .XLS, .XLSX, .CSV, .TXT, .RTF, and .JSON.

How do I enable Cloud Compliance?

You can enable Cloud Compliance when you create a new working environment. You can enable it on existing working environments from the **Compliance** tab (on first activation only) or by selecting a specific working environment.

[Learn how to get started.](#)



Activating Cloud Compliance results in an immediate initial scan. Compliance results display shortly after.

How do I disable Cloud Compliance?

You can disable Cloud Compliance from the Working Environments page after you select an individual working environment.

[Learn more.](#)



To completely remove the Cloud Compliance instance, you can manually remove the Cloud Compliance instance from your cloud provider's portal.

What happens if data tiering is enabled on Cloud Volumes ONTAP?

You might want to enable Cloud Compliance on a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that tiers cold data to object storage. If data tiering is enabled, Cloud Compliance scans all of the data—data that's on disks and cold data tiered to object storage.

The compliance scan doesn't heat up the cold data—it stays cold and tiered to object storage.

Can I use Cloud Compliance to scan on-premise ONTAP storage?

No. Cloud Compliance is currently available as part of Cloud Manager and supports Cloud Volumes ONTAP and Azure NetApp Files. We're planning to support Cloud Compliance with additional cloud offerings such as Cloud Volumes Service.

[Learn more.](#)

Can Cloud Compliance send notifications to my organization?

No, but you can download status reports that you can share internally in your organization.

Can I customize the service to my organization's need?

Cloud Compliance provides out-of-the-box insights to your data. These insights can be extracted and used for your organization's needs.

Can I limit Cloud Compliance information to specific users?

Yes, Cloud Compliance is fully integrated with Cloud Manager. Cloud Manager users can only see information for the working environments they are eligible to view according to their workspace privileges.

[Learn more.](#)

Administer Cloud Manager

Updating Cloud Manager

You can update Cloud Manager to the latest version or with a patch that NetApp personnel shared with you.

Enabling automatic updates

Cloud Manager can automatically update itself when a new version is available. This ensures that you are running the latest version.

About this task

Cloud Manager automatically updates at 12:00 midnight if no operations are running.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **Cloud Manager Settings**.
2. Select the checkbox under Automatic Cloud Manager Updates and then click **Save**.

Updating Cloud Manager to the latest version

You should enable automatic updates to Cloud Manager, but you can always do a manual update directly from the web console. Cloud Manager obtains the software update from a NetApp-owned S3 bucket in AWS.

Before you begin

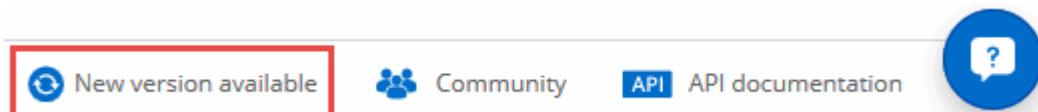
You should have reviewed [what is new in the release](#) to identify new requirements and changes in support.

About this task

The software update takes a few minutes. Cloud Manager will not be available during the update.

Steps

1. Check whether a new version is available by looking at the lower-right corner of the console:



2. If a new version is available, click **Timeline** to determine whether any tasks are in progress.

If any tasks are in progress, wait for them to finish before you proceed to the next step.

3. In the lower-right of the console, click **New version available**.
4. On the Cloud Manager Software Update page, click **Update** next to the version that you want.
5. Complete the confirmation dialog box, and then click **OK**.

Result

Cloud Manager starts the update process. You can log in to the console after a few minutes.

Updating Cloud Manager with a patch

If NetApp shared a patch with you, you can update Cloud Manager with the supplied patch directly from the Cloud Manager web console.

About this task

The patch update typically takes a few minutes. Cloud Manager will not be available during the update.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **Software Update**.



2. Click the link to update Cloud Manager with the supplied patch.

If NetApp shared a patch with you, click [here](#) to update Cloud Manager with the supplied patch.



3. Complete the confirmation dialog box and then click **OK**.
4. Select the patch that you were provided.

Result

Cloud Manager applies the patch. You can log in to the console after a few minutes.

Managing workspaces and users in the Cloud Central account

After you perform initial setup, you might need to later manage users, workspaces, and service connectors.

[Learn more about how Cloud Central accounts work.](#)

Adding users

Associate Cloud Central users with the Cloud Central account so those users can create and manage working environments in Cloud Manager.

Steps

1. If the user has not already done so, ask the user to go to [NetApp Cloud Central](#) and create an account.
2. In Cloud Manager, click **Account Settings**.
3. In the Users tab, click **Associate User**.
4. Enter the user's email address and select a role for the user:
 - **Account Admin:** Can perform any action in Cloud Manager.
 - **Workspace Admin:** Can create and manage resources in assigned workspaces.
5. If you selected Workspace Admin, select one or more workspaces to associate with that user.

The screenshot shows the 'Associate User' dialog box. At the top, there is a placeholder icon for a user profile. Below it, the title 'Associate User' is centered. A descriptive message explains that the user must be signed up at NetApp Cloud Central and provides the email address used for sign-up. The 'User's Email' field contains 'test@netapp.com'. The 'Role' dropdown menu is set to 'Workspace Admin'. Under the heading 'Associate User to Workspaces', there is a single item 'Workspace-1' with a delete 'X' icon. At the bottom, there are two buttons: 'Cancel' on the left and a large blue 'Associate User' button on the right.

To add a user to your NetApp Cloud Account, that user must already have signed up at [NetApp Cloud Central](#). Enter the email address that they used when signing up with Cloud Central.

User's Email

test@netapp.com

Role

Workspace Admin

Associate User to Workspaces

Workspace-1 X

Cancel Associate User

6. Click Associate User.

Result

The user should receive an email from NetApp Cloud Central titled "Account Association." The email includes the information needed to access Cloud Manager.

Removing users

Disassociating a user makes it so they can no longer access the resources in a Cloud Central account.

Steps

1. Click Account Settings.
2. Click the action menu in the row that corresponds to the user.

Name	Email	Role	Workspaces
Ben	[REDACTED]	Account Admin	All Workspaces
test	test@netapp.com	Workspace Admin	None

3. Click Disassociate User and click Disassociate to confirm.

Result

The user can no longer access the resources in this Cloud Central account.

Managing a Workspace Admin's workspaces

You can associate and disassociate Workspace Admins with workspaces at any time. Associating the user enables them to create and view the working environments in that workspace.

Steps

1. Click Account Settings.
2. Click the action menu in the row that corresponds to the user.

Name	Email	Role	Workspaces
Ben	[REDACTED]	Account Admin	All Workspaces
test	test@netapp.com	Workspace Admin	None

3. Click Manage Workspaces.
4. Select the workspaces to associate with the user and click Apply.

Result

The user can now access those workspaces from Cloud Manager, as long as the service connector was also associated with the workspaces.

Managing workspaces

Manage your workspaces by creating, renaming, and deleting them. Note that you can't delete a workspace if it contains any resources. It must be empty.

Steps

1. Click **Account Settings**.
2. Click **Workspaces**.
3. Choose one of the following options:
 - Click **Add New Workspace** to create a new workspace.
 - Click **Rename** to rename the workspace.
 - Click **Delete** to delete the workspace.

Managing a service connector's workspaces

You need to associate the service connector with workspaces so Workspace Admins can access those workspaces from Cloud Manager.

If you only have Account Admins, then associating the service connector with workspaces isn't required. Account Admins have the ability to access all workspaces in Cloud Manager by default.

[Learn more about users, workspaces, and service connectors.](#)

Steps

1. Click **Account Settings**.
2. Click **Service Connector**.
3. Click **Manage Workspaces** for the service connector that you want to associate.
4. Select the workspaces to associate with the service connector and click **Apply**.

Removing Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environments

The Account Admin can remove a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment to move it to another system or to troubleshoot discovery issues.

About this task

Removing a Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment removes it from Cloud Manager. It does not delete the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system. You can later rediscover the working environment.

Removing a working environment from Cloud Manager enables you to do the following:

- Rediscover it in another workspace
- Rediscover it from another Cloud Manager system
- Rediscover it if you had problems during the initial discovery

Steps

1. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **Tools**.



2. From the Tools page, click **Launch**.
3. Select the Cloud Volumes ONTAP working environment that you want to remove.
4. On the Review and Approve page, click **Go**.

Result

Cloud Manager removes the working environment. Users can rediscover this working environment from the Working Environments page at any time.

Configuring Cloud Manager to use a proxy server

When you first deploy Cloud Manager, it prompts you to enter a proxy server if the system does not have internet access. You can also manually enter and modify the proxy from Cloud Manager's settings.

About this task

If your corporate policies dictate that you use a proxy server for all HTTP communication to the internet, then you must configure Cloud Manager to use that proxy server. The proxy server can be in the cloud or in your network.

When you configure Cloud Manager to use a proxy server, Cloud Manager, Cloud Volumes ONTAP, and the HA mediator all use the proxy server.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **Cloud Manager Settings**.



- Under HTTP Proxy, enter the server using the syntax `http://address:port`, specify a user name and password if basic authentication is required for the server, and then click **Save**.



Cloud Manager does not support passwords that include the @ character.

Result

After you specify the proxy server, new Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems are automatically configured to use the proxy server when sending AutoSupport messages. If you do not specify the proxy server before users create Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems, then they must use System Manager to manually set the proxy server in the AutoSupport options for each system.

Renewing the Cloud Manager HTTPS certificate

You should renew the Cloud Manager HTTPS certificate before it expires to ensure secure access to the Cloud Manager web console. If you do not renew the certificate before it expires, a warning appears when users access the web console using HTTPS.

Steps

- In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **HTTPS Setup**.
Details about the Cloud Manager certificate displays, including the expiration date.
- Click **Renew HTTPS Certificate** and follow the steps to generate a CSR or install your own CA-signed certificate.

Result

Cloud Manager uses the new CA-signed certificate to provide secure HTTPS access.

Overriding CIFS locks for Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA in Azure

The Account Admin can enable a setting in Cloud Manager that prevents issues with Cloud Volumes ONTAP storage failover during Azure maintenance events. When you enable this setting, Cloud Volumes ONTAP vetoes CIFS locks and resets active CIFS sessions.

About this task

Microsoft Azure schedules periodic maintenance events on its virtual machines. When a maintenance event occurs on a node in a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA pair, the HA pair initiates storage takeover. If there are active CIFS sessions during this maintenance event, the locks on CIFS files can prevent

storage failover.

If you enable this setting, Cloud Volumes ONTAP will veto the locks and reset the active CIFS sessions. As a result, the HA pair can complete storage failover during these maintenance events.



This process might be disruptive to CIFS clients. Data that is not committed from CIFS clients could be lost.

Steps

1. In the upper right of the Cloud Manager console, click the Settings icon, and select **Cloud Manager Settings**.



2. Under **HA CIFS Locks**, select the checkbox and click **Save**.

Restoring Cloud Manager

Your [NetApp Cloud Central account](#) makes it easy for you to restore a Cloud Manager configuration. The account is a service running in Cloud Central so the users, workspaces, and service connectors that you associated with the account are always accessible. Even if your Cloud Manager system was accidentally deleted.



Starting with the 3.7.1 release, Cloud Manager no longer supports downloading a backup and using it to restore your configuration. You need to follow these steps to restore Cloud Manager.

Steps

1. Deploy a new Cloud Manager system in your existing Cloud Central account.

[Deployment options](#)

2. Add your cloud provider accounts and NetApp Support Site accounts to Cloud Manager.

This step gets Cloud Manager ready so you can create additional Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems in your cloud provider.

It's important to complete this step if you used AWS keys to deploy an existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP system that you want to discover on this new Cloud Manager system. Cloud Manager needs the AWS keys to properly discover and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

- [Adding AWS accounts to Cloud Manager](#)

- [Adding Azure accounts to Cloud Manager](#)
 - [Adding NetApp Support Site accounts to Cloud Manager](#)
3. Rediscover your working environments: Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems, on-premises clusters, and NetApp Private Storage for Cloud configurations.
- [Adding existing Cloud Volumes ONTAP systems to Cloud Manager](#)
 - [Discovering ONTAP clusters](#)

Result

Your Cloud Manager configuration is now restored with your accounts, settings, and working environments.

Uninstalling Cloud Manager

Cloud Manager includes an uninstallation script that you can use to uninstall the software to troubleshoot issues or to permanently remove the software from the host.

Steps

1. From the Linux host, run the uninstallation script:

```
/opt/application/netapp/cloudmanager/bin/uninstall.sh [silent]
```

silent runs the script without prompting you for confirmation.

APIs and automation

Automation samples for infrastructure as code

Use the resources on this page to get help integrating Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP with your [infrastructure as code](#).

DevOps teams use a variety of tools to automate the setup of new environments, which allows them to treat infrastructure as code. Two such tools are Ansible and Terraform. We have developed Ansible and Terraform samples that DevOps team can use with Cloud Manager to automate and integrate Cloud Volumes ONTAP with infrastructure as code.

[View the automation samples](#).

For example, you can use sample Ansible playbooks to deploy Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP, create an aggregate, and create a volume. Modify the samples for your environment or create new playbooks based on the samples.

Related links

- [NetApp Cloud Blog: Using Cloud Manager REST APIs with Federated Access](#)
- [NetApp Cloud Blog: Cloud Automation with Cloud Volumes ONTAP and REST](#)
- [NetApp Cloud Blog: Automated Data Cloning for Cloud-Based Testing of Software Applications](#)
- [NetApp Blog: Infrastructure-As-Code \(IaC\) Accelerated with Ansible + NetApp](#)
- [NetApp thePub: Configuration Management & Automation with Ansible](#)
- [NetApp thePub: Roles for Ansible ONTAP use](#)

Reference

Security group rules for AWS

Cloud Manager creates AWS security groups that include the inbound and outbound rules that Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP need to operate successfully. You might want to refer to the ports for testing purposes or if you prefer your own security groups.

Rules for Cloud Manager

The security group for Cloud Manager requires both inbound and outbound rules.

Inbound rules for Cloud Manager

The source for inbound rules in the predefined security group is 0.0.0.0/0.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
SSH	22	Provides SSH access to the Cloud Manager host
HTTP	80	Provides HTTP access from client web browsers to the Cloud Manager web console and connections from Cloud Compliance
HTTPS	443	Provides HTTPS access from client web browsers to the Cloud Manager web console
TCP	3128	Provides the Cloud Compliance instance with internet access, if your AWS network doesn't use a NAT or proxy

Outbound rules for Cloud Manager

The predefined security group for Cloud Manager opens all outbound traffic. If that is acceptable, follow the basic outbound rules. If you need more rigid rules, use the advanced outbound rules.

Basic outbound rules

The predefined security group for Cloud Manager includes the following outbound rules.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All TCP	All	All outbound traffic
All UDP	All	All outbound traffic

Advanced outbound rules

If you need rigid rules for outbound traffic, you can use the following information to open only those ports that are required for outbound communication by Cloud Manager.



The source IP address is the Cloud Manager host.

Service	Protocol	Port	Destination	Purpose
Active Directory	TCP	88	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V authentication
	TCP	139	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS service session
	TCP	389	Active Directory forest	LDAP
	TCP	445	Active Directory forest	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
	TCP	464	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (SET_CHANGE)
	TCP	749	Active Directory forest	Active Directory Kerberos V change & set password (RPCSEC_GSS)
	UDP	137	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS name service
	UDP	138	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS datagram service
	UDP	464	Active Directory forest	Kerberos key administration
API calls and AutoSupport	HTTP S	443	Outbound internet and ONTAP cluster management LIF	API calls to AWS and ONTAP, and sending AutoSupport messages to NetApp
API calls	TCP	3000	ONTAP cluster management LIF	API calls to ONTAP
	TCP	8088	Backup to S3	API calls to Backup to S3
DNS	UDP	53	DNS	Used for DNS resolve by Cloud Manager
Cloud Compliance	HTTP	80	Cloud Compliance instance	Cloud Compliance for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

The security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP requires both inbound and outbound rules.

Inbound rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

The source for inbound rules in the predefined security group is 0.0.0.0/0.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All ICMP	All	Pinging the instance
HTTP	80	HTTP access to the System Manager web console using the IP address of the cluster management LIF
HTTPS	443	HTTPS access to the System Manager web console using the IP address of the cluster management LIF
SSH	22	SSH access to the IP address of the cluster management LIF or a node management LIF
TCP	111	Remote procedure call for NFS
TCP	139	NetBIOS service session for CIFS
TCP	161-162	Simple network management protocol
TCP	445	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
TCP	635	NFS mount
TCP	749	Kerberos
TCP	2049	NFS server daemon
TCP	3260	iSCSI access through the iSCSI data LIF
TCP	4045	NFS lock daemon
TCP	4046	Network status monitor for NFS
TCP	10000	Backup using NDMP
TCP	11104	Management of intercluster communication sessions for SnapMirror
TCP	11105	SnapMirror data transfer using intercluster LIFs
UDP	111	Remote procedure call for NFS
UDP	161-162	Simple network management protocol
UDP	635	NFS mount
UDP	2049	NFS server daemon
UDP	4045	NFS lock daemon
UDP	4046	Network status monitor for NFS
UDP	4049	NFS rquotad protocol

Outbound rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

The predefined security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP opens all outbound traffic. If that is acceptable, follow the basic outbound rules. If you need more rigid rules, use the advanced outbound rules.

Basic outbound rules

The predefined security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP includes the following outbound rules.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All ICMP	All	All outbound traffic
All TCP	All	All outbound traffic
All UDP	All	All outbound traffic

Advanced outbound rules

If you need rigid rules for outbound traffic, you can use the following information to open only those ports that are required for outbound communication by Cloud Volumes ONTAP.



The source is the interface (IP address) on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

Service	Protocol	Port	Source	Destination	Purpose
Active Directory	TCP	88	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V authentication
	UDP	137	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS name service
	UDP	138	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS datagram service
	TCP	139	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS service session
	TCP & UDP	389	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	LDAP
	TCP	445	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
	TCP	464	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (SET_CHANGE)
	UDP	464	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Kerberos key administration
	TCP	749	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set Password (RPCSEC_GSS)
	TCP	88	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS, iSCSI)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V authentication
	UDP	137	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS name service
	UDP	138	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS datagram service
	TCP	139	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS service session
	TCP & UDP	389	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	LDAP
	TCP	445	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
	TCP	464	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (SET_CHANGE)
	UDP	464	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos key administration
	TCP	749	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (RPCSEC_GSS)

Service	Protocol	Port	Source	Destination	Purpose
Backup to S3	TCP	5010	Intercluster LIF	Backup endpoint or restore endpoint	Back up and restore operations for the Backup to S3 feature
Cluster	All traffic	All traffic	All LIFs on one node	All LIFs on the other node	Intercluster communications (Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA only)
	TCP	3000	Node management LIF	HA mediator	ZAPI calls (Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA only)
	ICMP	1	Node management LIF	HA mediator	Keep alive (Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA only)
DHCP	UDP	68	Node management LIF	DHCP	DHCP client for first-time setup
DHCPS	UDP	67	Node management LIF	DHCP	DHCP server
DNS	UDP	53	Node management LIF and data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	DNS	DNS
NDMP	TCP	1860 0–18 699	Node management LIF	Destination servers	NDMP copy
SMTP	TCP	25	Node management LIF	Mail server	SMTP alerts, can be used for AutoSupport
SNMP	TCP	161	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
	UDP	161	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
	TCP	162	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
	UDP	162	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
SnapMirror	TCP	1110 4	Intercluster LIF	ONTAP intercluster LIFs	Management of intercluster communication sessions for SnapMirror
	TCP	1110 5	Intercluster LIF	ONTAP intercluster LIFs	SnapMirror data transfer
Syslog	UDP	514	Node management LIF	Syslog server	Syslog forward messages

Rules for the HA mediator external security group

The predefined external security group for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA mediator includes the following inbound and outbound rules.

Inbound rules

The source for inbound rules is 0.0.0.0/0.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
SSH	22	SSH connections to the HA mediator
TCP	3000	RESTful API access from Cloud Manager

Outbound rules

The predefined security group for the HA mediator opens all outbound traffic. If that is acceptable, follow the basic outbound rules. If you need more rigid rules, use the advanced outbound rules.

Basic outbound rules

The predefined security group for the HA mediator includes the following outbound rules.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All TCP	All	All outbound traffic
All UDP	All	All outbound traffic

Advanced outbound rules

If you need rigid rules for outbound traffic, you can use the following information to open only those ports that are required for outbound communication by the HA mediator.

Protocol	Port	Destination	Purpose
HTTP	80	Cloud Manager IP address	Download upgrades for the mediator
HTTPS	443	AWS API services	Assist with storage failover
UDP	53	AWS API services	Assist with storage failover



Rather than open ports 443 and 53, you can create an interface VPC endpoint from the target subnet to the AWS EC2 service.

Rules for the HA mediator internal security group

The predefined internal security group for the Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA mediator includes the following rules. Cloud Manager always creates this security group. You do not have the option to use your own.

Inbound rules

The predefined security group includes the following inbound rules.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All traffic	All	Communication between the HA mediator and HA nodes

Outbound rules

The predefined security group includes the following outbound rules.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All traffic	All	Communication between the HA mediator and HA nodes

Security group rules for Azure

Cloud Manager creates Azure security groups that include the inbound and outbound rules that Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP need to operate successfully. You might want to refer to the ports for testing purposes or if you prefer your to use own security groups.

Rules for Cloud Manager

The security group for Cloud Manager requires both inbound and outbound rules.

Inbound rules for Cloud Manager

The source for inbound rules in the predefined security group is 0.0.0.0/0.

Port	Protocol	Purpose
22	SSH	Provides SSH access to the Cloud Manager host
80	HTTP	Provides HTTP access from client web browsers to the Cloud Manager web console
443	HTTPS	Provides HTTPS access from client web browsers to the Cloud Manager web console

Outbound rules for Cloud Manager

The predefined security group for Cloud Manager opens all outbound traffic. If that is acceptable, follow the basic outbound rules. If you need more rigid rules, use the advanced outbound rules.

Basic outbound rules

The predefined security group for Cloud Manager includes the following outbound rules.

Port	Protocol	Purpose
All	All TCP	All outbound traffic
All	All UDP	All outbound traffic

Advanced outbound rules

If you need rigid rules for outbound traffic, you can use the following information to open only those ports that are required for outbound communication by Cloud Manager.



The source IP address is the Cloud Manager host.

Service	Port	Protocol	Destination	Purpose
Active Directory	88	TCP	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V authentication
	139	TCP	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS service session
	389	TCP	Active Directory forest	LDAP
	445	TCP	Active Directory forest	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
	464	TCP	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (SET_CHANGE)
	749	TCP	Active Directory forest	Active Directory Kerberos V change & set password (RPCSEC_GSS)
	137	UDP	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS name service
	138	UDP	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS datagram service
	464	UDP	Active Directory forest	Kerberos key administration
API calls and AutoSupport	443	HTTP(S)	Outbound internet and ONTAP cluster management LIF	API calls to AWS and ONTAP, and sending AutoSupport messages to NetApp
API calls	3000	TCP	ONTAP cluster management LIF	API calls to ONTAP
DNS	53	UDP	DNS	Used for DNS resolve by Cloud Manager

Rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

The security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP requires both inbound and outbound rules.

Inbound rules for single node systems

The rules listed below allow traffic, unless the description notes that it blocks specific inbound traffic.

Priority and name	Port and protocol	Source and destination	Description
1000 inbound_ssh	22 TCP	Any to Any	SSH access to the IP address of the cluster management LIF or a node management LIF
1001 inbound_http	80 TCP	Any to Any	HTTP access to the System Manager web console using the IP address of the cluster management LIF
1002 inbound_111_tcp	111 TCP	Any to Any	Remote procedure call for NFS
1003 inbound_111_udp	111 UDP	Any to Any	Remote procedure call for NFS
1004 inbound_139	139 TCP	Any to Any	NetBIOS service session for CIFS
1005 inbound_161-162 _tcp	161-162 TCP	Any to Any	Simple network management protocol
1006 inbound_161-162 _udp	161-162 UDP	Any to Any	Simple network management protocol
1007 inbound_443	443 TCP	Any to Any	HTTPS access to the System Manager web console using the IP address of the cluster management LIF
1008 inbound_445	445 TCP	Any to Any	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
1009 inbound_635_tcp	635 TCP	Any to Any	NFS mount
1010 inbound_635_udp	635 UDP	Any to Any	NFS mount
1011 inbound_749	749 TCP	Any to Any	Kerberos
1012 inbound_2049_tcp	2049 TCP	Any to Any	NFS server daemon

Priority and name	Port and protocol	Source and destination	Description
1013 inbound_2049_udp	2049 UDP	Any to Any	NFS server daemon
1014 inbound_3260	3260 TCP	Any to Any	iSCSI access through the iSCSI data LIF
1015 inbound_4045- 4046_tcp	4045-4046 TCP	Any to Any	NFS lock daemon and network status monitor
1016 inbound_4045- 4046_udp	4045-4046 UDP	Any to Any	NFS lock daemon and network status monitor
1017 inbound_10000	10000 TCP	Any to Any	Backup using NDMP
1018 inbound_11104- 11105	11104- 11105 TCP	Any to Any	SnapMirror data transfer
3000 inbound_deny _all_tcp	Any port TCP	Any to Any	Block all other TCP inbound traffic
3001 inbound_deny _all_udp	Any port UDP	Any to Any	Block all other UDP inbound traffic
65000 AllowVnetInBound	Any port Any protocol	VirtualNetwork to VirtualNetwork	Inbound traffic from within the VNet
65001 AllowAzureLoad BalancerInBound	Any port Any protocol	AzureLoadBalanc er to Any	Data traffic from the Azure Standard Load Balancer
65500 DenyAllInBound	Any port Any protocol	Any to Any	Block all other inbound traffic

Inbound rules for HA systems

The rules listed below allow traffic, unless the description notes that it blocks specific inbound traffic.



HA systems have less inbound rules than single node systems because inbound data traffic goes through the Azure Standard Load Balancer. Because of this, traffic from the Load Balancer should be open, as shown in the "AllowAzureLoadBalancerInBound" rule.

Priority and name	Port and protocol	Source and destination	Description
100 inbound_443	443 Any protocol	Any to Any	HTTPS access to the System Manager web console using the IP address of the cluster management LIF
101 inbound_111_tcp	111 Any protocol	Any to Any	Remote procedure call for NFS
102 inbound_2049_tcp	2049 Any protocol	Any to Any	NFS server daemon
111 inbound_ssh	22 Any protocol	Any to Any	SSH access to the IP address of the cluster management LIF or a node management LIF
121 inbound_53	53 Any protocol	Any to Any	DNS and CIFS
65000 AllowVnetInBound	Any port Any protocol	VirtualNetwork to VirtualNetwork	Inbound traffic from within the VNet
65001 AllowAzureLoadBalancerInBound	Any port Any protocol	AzureLoadBalancer to Any	Data traffic from the Azure Standard Load Balancer
65500 DenyAllInBound	Any port Any protocol	Any to Any	Block all other inbound traffic

Outbound rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

The predefined security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP opens all outbound traffic. If that is acceptable, follow the basic outbound rules. If you need more rigid rules, use the advanced outbound rules.

Basic outbound rules

The predefined security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP includes the following outbound rules.

Port	Protocol	Purpose
All	All TCP	All outbound traffic
All	All UDP	All outbound traffic

Advanced outbound rules

If you need rigid rules for outbound traffic, you can use the following information to open only those ports that are required for outbound communication by Cloud Volumes ONTAP.



The source is the interface (IP address) on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

Service	Port	Protocol	Source	Destination	Purpose
Active Director					

	464	TCP	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (SET_CHANGE)
Service	Port	Protocol	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Destination directory forest	Purposes key administration
	749	TCP	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (RPCSEC_GSS)
DHCP	68	UDP	Node management LIF	DHCP	DHCP client for first-time setup
DHCPS	67	UDP	Node management LIF	DHCP	DHCP server
DNS	53	UDP	Node management LIF and data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	DNS	DNS
NDMP	18600–18699	TCP	Node management LIF	Destination servers	NDMP copy
SMTP	25	TCP	Node management LIF	Mail server	SMTP alerts, can be used for AutoSupport
SNMP	161	TCP	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
	161	UDP	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
	162	TCP	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
	162	UDP	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
SnapMirror	11104	TCP	Intercluster LIF	ONTAP intercluster LIFs	Management of intercluster communication sessions for SnapMirror
	11105	TCP	Intercluster LIF	ONTAP intercluster LIFs	SnapMirror data transfer
Syslog	514	UDP	Node management LIF	Syslog server	Syslog forward messages

Firewall rules for GCP

Cloud Manager creates GCP firewall rules that include the inbound and outbound rules that Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP need to operate successfully. You might want to refer to the ports for testing purposes or if you prefer your to use own security groups.

Rules for Cloud Manager

The firewall rules for Cloud Manager requires both inbound and outbound rules.

Inbound rules for Cloud Manager

The source for inbound rules in the predefined firewall rules is 0.0.0.0/0.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
SSH	22	Provides SSH access to the Cloud Manager host
HTTP	80	Provides HTTP access from client web browsers to the Cloud Manager web console
HTTPS	443	Provides HTTPS access from client web browsers to the Cloud Manager web console

Outbound rules for Cloud Manager

The predefined firewall rules for Cloud Manager opens all outbound traffic. If that is acceptable, follow the basic outbound rules. If you need more rigid rules, use the advanced outbound rules.

Basic outbound rules

The predefined firewall rules for Cloud Manager includes the following outbound rules.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All TCP	All	All outbound traffic
All UDP	All	All outbound traffic

Advanced outbound rules

If you need rigid rules for outbound traffic, you can use the following information to open only those ports that are required for outbound communication by Cloud Manager.



The source IP address is the Cloud Manager host.

Service	Protocol	Port	Destination	Purpose
Active Directory	TCP	88	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V authentication
	TCP	139	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS service session
	TCP	389	Active Directory forest	LDAP
	TCP	445	Active Directory forest	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
	TCP	464	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (SET_CHANGE)
	TCP	749	Active Directory forest	Active Directory Kerberos V change & set password (RPCSEC_GSS)
	UDP	137	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS name service
	UDP	138	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS datagram service
	UDP	464	Active Directory forest	Kerberos key administration
API calls and AutoSupport	HTTP S	443	Outbound internet and ONTAP cluster management LIF	API calls to GCP and ONTAP, and sending AutoSupport messages to NetApp
API calls	TCP	300 0	ONTAP cluster management LIF	API calls to ONTAP
DNS	UDP	53	DNS	Used for DNS resolve by Cloud Manager

Rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

The security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP requires both inbound and outbound rules.

Inbound rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

The source for inbound rules in the predefined security group is 0.0.0.0/0.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All ICMP	All	Pinging the instance
HTTP	80	HTTP access to the System Manager web console using the IP address of the cluster management LIF
HTTPS	443	HTTPS access to the System Manager web console using the IP address of the cluster management LIF
SSH	22	SSH access to the IP address of the cluster management LIF or a node management LIF
TCP	111	Remote procedure call for NFS

Protocol	Port	Purpose
TCP	139	NetBIOS service session for CIFS
TCP	161-162	Simple network management protocol
TCP	445	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
TCP	635	NFS mount
TCP	749	Kerberos
TCP	2049	NFS server daemon
TCP	3260	iSCSI access through the iSCSI data LIF
TCP	4045	NFS lock daemon
TCP	4046	Network status monitor for NFS
TCP	10000	Backup using NDMP
TCP	11104	Management of intercluster communication sessions for SnapMirror
TCP	11105	SnapMirror data transfer using intercluster LIFs
UDP	111	Remote procedure call for NFS
UDP	161-162	Simple network management protocol
UDP	635	NFS mount
UDP	2049	NFS server daemon
UDP	4045	NFS lock daemon
UDP	4046	Network status monitor for NFS
UDP	4049	NFS rquotad protocol

Outbound rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

The predefined security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP opens all outbound traffic. If that is acceptable, follow the basic outbound rules. If you need more rigid rules, use the advanced outbound rules.

Basic outbound rules

The predefined security group for Cloud Volumes ONTAP includes the following outbound rules.

Protocol	Port	Purpose
All ICMP	All	All outbound traffic
All TCP	All	All outbound traffic
All UDP	All	All outbound traffic

Advanced outbound rules

If you need rigid rules for outbound traffic, you can use the following information to open only those ports that are required for outbound communication by Cloud Volumes ONTAP.



The source is the interface (IP address) on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

Service	Protocol	Port	Source	Destination	Purpose
Active Directory	TCP	88	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V authentication
	UDP	137	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS name service
	UDP	138	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS datagram service
	TCP	139	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS service session
	TCP & UDP	389	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	LDAP
	TCP	445	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
	TCP	464	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (SET_CHANGE)
	UDP	464	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Kerberos key administration
	TCP	749	Node management LIF	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set Password (RPCSEC_GSS)
	TCP	88	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS, iSCSI)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V authentication
	UDP	137	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS name service
	UDP	138	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS datagram service
	TCP	139	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	NetBIOS service session
	TCP & UDP	389	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	LDAP
	TCP	445	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Microsoft SMB/CIFS over TCP with NetBIOS framing
	TCP	464	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (SET_CHANGE)
	UDP	464	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos key administration
	TCP	749	Data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	Active Directory forest	Kerberos V change & set password (RPCSEC_GSS)

Service	Protocol	Port	Source	Destination	Purpose
Cluster	All traffic	All traffic	All LIFs on one node	All LIFs on the other node	Intercluster communications (Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA only)
	TCP	3000	Node management LIF	HA mediator	ZAPI calls (Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA only)
	ICMP	1	Node management LIF	HA mediator	Keep alive (Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA only)
DHCP	UDP	68	Node management LIF	DHCP	DHCP client for first-time setup
DHCPS	UDP	67	Node management LIF	DHCP	DHCP server
DNS	UDP	53	Node management LIF and data LIF (NFS, CIFS)	DNS	DNS
NDMP	TCP	1860 0–18 699	Node management LIF	Destination servers	NDMP copy
SMTP	TCP	25	Node management LIF	Mail server	SMTP alerts, can be used for AutoSupport
SNMP	TCP	161	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
	UDP	161	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
	TCP	162	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
	UDP	162	Node management LIF	Monitor server	Monitoring by SNMP traps
SnapMirror	TCP	1110 4	Intercluster LIF	ONTAP intercluster LIFs	Management of intercluster communication sessions for SnapMirror
	TCP	1110 5	Intercluster LIF	ONTAP intercluster LIFs	SnapMirror data transfer
Syslog	UDP	514	Node management LIF	Syslog server	Syslog forward messages

AWS Marketplace pages for Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Several offerings are available in the AWS Marketplace for Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP. If need help understanding the purpose of each page, read the descriptions below.

In all cases, remember that you can't launch Cloud Volumes ONTAP in AWS from the AWS Marketplace. You need to launch it directly from Cloud Manager.

Goal	AWS Marketplace page to use	More information
Enable the use of Cloud Volumes ONTAP PAYGO, Cloud Tiering, Cloud Compliance, and other add-on services	Cloud Manager - Deploy & Manage NetApp Cloud Data Services	<p>This subscription enables charging for the PAYGO version of Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9.6 and later. It also enables charging for Cloud Tiering, Cloud Compliance, and other add-on services.</p> <p>You should subscribe to this offering when Cloud Manager prompts you and redirects you to the page. Cloud Manager prompts you in the Working Environment wizard or when you add new credentials in the Settings.</p> <p>This page doesn't enable you to launch Cloud Manager in AWS. That should be done from NetApp Cloud Central, or alternatively using the AMI listed in row 3 of this table.</p>
Enable the use of Cloud Volumes ONTAP PAYGO, Cloud Tiering, Cloud Compliance, and other add-on services <i>using an annual contract</i>	Cloud Manager (Contracts) - Deploy & Manage NetApp Cloud Data Services	This subscription is an alternative to the subscription in the first row. It enables you to get an annual upfront payment for the listings. It's mostly for NetApp partners.

Goal	AWS Marketplace page to use	More information
Deploy Cloud Manager from the AWS Marketplace using an AMI	Cloud Manager - Manual installation without access keys	We recommend that you launch Cloud Manager in AWS from NetApp Cloud Central , but you can launch it from this AWS Marketplace page, if you prefer.
Enable deployment of Cloud Volumes ONTAP using a license that I purchased from NetApp (BYOL)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cloud Volumes ONTAP for AWS (BYOL) • Cloud Volumes ONTAP for AWS - High Availability (BYOL) 	These AWS Marketplace pages enable you to subscribe to the single node or HA versions of Cloud Volumes ONTAP BYOL. You should subscribe to these offerings when Cloud Manager prompts you and redirects you to the page.
Enable deployment of Cloud Volumes ONTAP PAYGO (9.5 or earlier)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cloud Volumes ONTAP for AWS • Cloud Volumes ONTAP for AWS - High Availability 	<p>These AWS Marketplace pages enable you to subscribe to the single node or HA versions of Cloud Volumes ONTAP PAYGO for versions 9.5 and earlier.</p> <p>Starting with version 9.6, you need to subscribe through the AWS Marketplace page listed in row 1 of this table for PAYGO deployments.</p>

How Cloud Manager uses cloud provider permissions

Cloud Manager requires permissions to perform actions in your cloud provider. These permissions are included in [the policies provided by NetApp](#). You might want to understand what Cloud Manager does with these permissions.

What Cloud Manager does with AWS permissions

Cloud Manager uses an AWS account to make API calls to several AWS services, including EC2, S3, CloudFormation, IAM, the Security Token Service (STS), and the Key Management Service (KMS).

Actions	Purpose
"ec2:StartInstances", "ec2:StopInstances", "ec2:DescribeInstances", "ec2:DescribeInstanceStatus", "ec2:RunInstances", "ec2:TerminateInstances", "ec2:ModifyInstanceAttribute",	Launches a Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance and stops, starts, and monitors the instance.
"ec2:DescribeInstanceAttribute",	Verifies that enhanced networking is enabled for supported instance types.
"ec2:DescribeRouteTables", "ec2:DescribeImages",	Launches a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configuration.
"ec2>CreateTags",	Tags every resource that Cloud Manager creates with the "WorkingEnvironment" and "WorkingEnvironmentId" tags. Cloud Manager uses these tags for maintenance and cost allocation.
"ec2>CreateVolume", "ec2:DescribeVolumes", "ec2:ModifyVolumeAttribute", "ec2:AttachVolume", "ec2:DeleteVolume", "ec2:DetachVolume",	Manages the EBS volumes that Cloud Volumes ONTAP uses as back-end storage.
"ec2>CreateSecurityGroup", "ec2>DeleteSecurityGroup", "ec2:DescribeSecurityGroups", "ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupEgress", "ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupEgress", "ec2:AuthorizeSecurityGroupIngress", "ec2:RevokeSecurityGroupIngress",	Creates predefined security groups for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
"ec2>CreateNetworkInterface", "ec2:DescribeNetworkInterfaces", "ec2:DeleteNetworkInterface", "ec2:ModifyNetworkInterfaceAttribute",	Creates and manages network interfaces for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in the target subnet.
"ec2:DescribeSubnets", "ec2:DescribeVpcs",	Gets the list of destination subnets and security groups, which is needed when creating a new working environment for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
"ec2:DescribeDhcpOptions",	Determines DNS servers and the default domain name when launching Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances.

Actions	Purpose
"ec2>CreateSnapshot", "ec2>DeleteSnapshot", "ec2>DescribeSnapshots",	Takes snapshots of EBS volumes during initial setup and whenever a Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance is stopped.
"ec2>GetConsoleOutput",	Captures the Cloud Volumes ONTAP console, which is attached to AutoSupport messages.
"ec2>DescribeKeyPairs",	Obtains the list of available key pairs when launching instances.
"ec2>DescribeRegions",	Gets a list of available AWS regions.
"ec2>DeleteTags", "ec2>DescribeTags",	Manages tags for resources associated with Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances.
"cloudformation>CreateStack", "cloudformation>DeleteStack", "cloudformation>DescribeStacks", "cloudformation>DescribeStackEvents", "cloudformation>ValidateTemplate",	Launches Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances.
"iam>PassRole", "iam>CreateRole", "iam>DeleteRole", "iam>PutRolePolicy", "iam>CreateInstanceProfile", "iam>DeleteRolePolicy", "iam>AddRoleToInstanceProfile", "iam>RemoveRoleFromInstanceProfile", "iam>DeleteInstanceProfile",	Launches a Cloud Volumes ONTAP HA configuration.
"iam>ListInstanceProfiles", "sts>DecodeAuthorizationMessage", "ec2>AssociateIamInstanceProfile", "ec2>DescribeIamInstanceProfileAssociations", "ec2>DisassociateIamInstanceProfile",	Manages instance profiles for Cloud Volumes ONTAP instances.
"s3>GetBucketTagging", "s3>GetBucketLocation", "s3>ListAllMyBuckets", "s3>ListBucket"	Obtains information about AWS S3 buckets so Cloud Manager can integrate with the NetApp Data Fabric Cloud Sync service.

Actions	Purpose
"s3:CreateBucket", "s3>DeleteBucket", "s3:GetLifecycleConfiguration", "s3:PutLifecycleConfiguration", "s3:PutBucketTagging", "s3>ListBucketVersions", "s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus", "s3:GetBucketPublicAccessBlock", "s3:GetBucketAcl", "s3:GetBucketPolicy", "s3:PutBucketPublicAccessBlock"	Manages the S3 bucket that a Cloud Volumes ONTAP system uses as a capacity tier for data tiering.
"kms>List*", "kms:ReEncrypt*", "kms:Describe*", "kms>CreateGrant",	Enables data encryption of Cloud Volumes ONTAP using the AWS Key Management Service (KMS).
"ce:GetReservationUtilization", "ce:GetDimensionValues", "ce:GetCostAndUsage", "ce:GetTags"	Obtains AWS cost data for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
"ec2>CreatePlacementGroup", "ec2>DeletePlacementGroup"	When you deploy an HA configuration in a single AWS Availability Zone, Cloud Manager launches the two HA nodes and the mediator in an AWS spread placement group.
"ec2:DescribeReservedInstancesOfferings"	Cloud Manager uses the permission as part of Cloud Compliance deployment to choose which instance type to use.
"s3>DeleteBucket", "s3:GetLifecycleConfiguration", "s3:PutLifecycleConfiguration", "s3:PutBucketTagging", "s3>ListBucketVersions", "s3:GetObject", "s3>ListBucket", "s3>ListAllMyBuckets", "s3:GetBucketTagging", "s3:GetBucketLocation", "s3:GetBucketPolicyStatus", "s3:GetBucketPublicAccessBlock", "s3:GetBucketAcl", "s3:GetBucketPolicy", "s3:PutBucketPublicAccessBlock"	Cloud Manager uses these permissions when you enable the Backup to S3 service.

What Cloud Manager does with Azure permissions

The Cloud Manager Azure policy includes the permissions that Cloud Manager needs to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure.

Actions	Purpose
"Microsoft.Compute/locations/operations/read", "Microsoft.Compute/locations/vmSizes/read", "Microsoft.Compute/operations/read", "Microsoft.Compute/virtualMachines/instanceView/read", "Microsoft.Compute/virtualMachines/powerOff/action", "Microsoft.Compute/virtualMachines/read", "Microsoft.Compute/virtualMachines/restart/action", "Microsoft.Compute/virtualMachines/start/action", "Microsoft.Compute/virtualMachines/deallocate/action", "Microsoft.Compute/virtualMachines/vmSizes/read", "Microsoft.Compute/virtualMachines/write",	Creates Cloud Volumes ONTAP and stops, starts, deletes, and obtains the status of the system.
"Microsoft.Compute/images/write", "Microsoft.Compute/images/read",	Enables Cloud Volumes ONTAP deployment from a VHD.
"Microsoft.Compute/disks/delete", "Microsoft.Compute/disks/read", "Microsoft.Compute/disks/write", "Microsoft.Storage/checknameavailability/read", "Microsoft.Storage/operations/read", "Microsoft.Storage/storageAccounts/listkeys/action", ", "Microsoft.Storage/storageAccounts/read", "Microsoft.Storage/storageAccounts/regeneratekey/action", "Microsoft.Storage/storageAccounts/write" "Microsoft.Storage/storageAccounts/delete", "Microsoft.Storage/usages/read",	Manages Azure storage accounts and disks, and attaches the disks to Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
"Microsoft.Network/networkInterfaces/read", "Microsoft.Network/networkInterfaces/write", "Microsoft.Network/networkInterfaces/join/action", ",	Creates and manages network interfaces for Cloud Volumes ONTAP in the target subnet.

Actions	Purpose
"Microsoft.Network/networkSecurityGroups/read", "Microsoft.Network/networkSecurityGroups/write", "Microsoft.Network/networkSecurityGroups/join/action",	Creates predefined network security groups for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
"Microsoft.Resources/subscriptions/locations/read", "Microsoft.Network/locations/operationResults/read", "Microsoft.Network/locations/operations/read", "Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks/read", "Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks/checkIpAddressAvailability/read", "Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks/subnets/read", "Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks/subnets/virtualMachines/read", "Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks/virtualMachines/read", "Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks/subnets/join/action",	Gets network information about regions, the target VNet and subnet, and adds Cloud Volumes ONTAP to VNets.
"Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks/subnets/write", "Microsoft.Network/routeTables/join/action",	Enables VNet service endpoints for data tiering.
"Microsoft.Resources/deployments/operations/read", "Microsoft.Resources/deployments/read", "Microsoft.Resources/deployments/write",	Deploys Cloud Volumes ONTAP from a template.

Actions	Purpose
"Microsoft.Resources/deployments/operations/read", "Microsoft.Resources/deployments/operationStatuses/read", "Microsoft.Resources/deployments/read", "Microsoft.Resources/deployments/write", "Microsoft.Resources/resources/read", "Microsoft.Resources/subscriptions/operationresults/read", "Microsoft.Resources/subscriptions/resourceGroups/delete", "Microsoft.Resources/subscriptions/resourceGroups/read", "Microsoft.Resources/subscriptions/resourcegroups/resources/read", "Microsoft.Resources/subscriptions/resourceGroups/write",	Creates and manages resource groups for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
"Microsoft.Compute/snapshots/write", "Microsoft.Compute/snapshots/read", "Microsoft.Compute/disks/beginGetAccess/action"	Creates and manages Azure managed snapshots.
"Microsoft.Compute/availabilitySets/write", "Microsoft.Compute/availabilitySets/read",	Creates and manages availability sets for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
"Microsoft.MarketplaceOrdering/offertypes/publishers/offers/plans/agreements/read", "Microsoft.MarketplaceOrdering/offertypes/publishers/offers/plans/agreements/write"	Enables programmatic deployments from the Azure Marketplace.
"Microsoft.Network/loadBalancers/read", "Microsoft.Network/loadBalancers/write", "Microsoft.Network/loadBalancers/delete", "Microsoft.Network/loadBalancers/backendAddressPools/read", "Microsoft.Network/loadBalancers/backendAddressPools/join/action", "Microsoft.Network/loadBalancers/frontendIPConfigurations/read", "Microsoft.Network/loadBalancers/loadBalancingRules/read", "Microsoft.Network/loadBalancers/probes/read", "Microsoft.Network/loadBalancers/probes/join/activation",	Manages an Azure load balancer for HA pairs.
"Microsoft.Authorization/locks/*"	Enables management of locks on Azure disks.

Actions	Purpose
"Microsoft.Authorization/roleDefinitions/write", "Microsoft.Authorization/roleAssignments/write", "Microsoft.Web/sites/*"	Manages failover for HA pairs.
"Microsoft.Network/privateEndpoints/write", "Microsoft.Storage/storageAccounts/PrivateEndpointConnectionsApproval/action", "Microsoft.Storage/storageAccounts/privateEndpointConnections/read", "Microsoft.Network/privateEndpoints/read", "Microsoft.Network/privateDnsZones/write", "Microsoft.Network/privateDnsZones/virtualNetworkLinks/write", "Microsoft.Network/virtualNetworks/join/action", "Microsoft.Network/privateDnsZones/A/write", "Microsoft.Network/privateDnsZones/read", "Microsoft.Network/privateDnsZones/virtualNetworkLinks/read",	Enables the management of private endpoints. Private endpoints are used when connectivity isn't provided to outside the subnet. Cloud Manager creates the storage account for HA with only internal connectivity within the subnet.
"Microsoft.NetApp/netAppAccounts/capacityPools/volumes/delete",	Enables Cloud Manager to delete volumes for Azure NetApp Files.
"Microsoft.Insights/Metrics/Read"	Enables integration with Global File Cache in an upcoming release.

What Cloud Manager does with GCP permissions

The Cloud Manager policy for GCP includes the permissions that Cloud Manager needs to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

Actions	Purpose
- compute.disks.create - compute.disks.createSnapshot - compute.disks.delete - compute.disks.get - compute.disks.list - compute.disks.setLabels - compute.disks.use	To create and manage disks for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
- compute.firewalls.create - compute.firewalls.delete - compute.firewalls.get - compute.firewalls.list	To create firewall rules for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
- compute.globalOperations.get	To get the status of operations.

Actions	Purpose
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.images.get - compute.images.getFromFamily - compute.images.list - compute.images.useReadOnly 	To get images for VM instances.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.instances.attachDisk - compute.instances.detachDisk 	To attach and detach disks to Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.instances.create - compute.instances.delete 	To create and delete Cloud Volumes ONTAP VM instances.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.instances.get 	To list VM instances.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.instances.getSerialPortOutput 	To get console logs.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.instances.list 	To retrieve the list of instances in a zone.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.instances.setDeletionProtection 	To set deletion protection on the instance.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.instances.setLabels 	To add labels.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.instances.setMachineType 	To change the machine type for Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.instances.setMetadata 	To add metadata.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.instances.setTags 	To add tags for firewall rules.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.instances.start - compute.instances.stop - compute.instances.updateDisplayDevice 	To start and stop Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.machineTypes.get 	To get the numbers of cores to check qoutas.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.projects.get 	To support multi-projects.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.snapshots.create - compute.snapshots.delete - compute.snapshots.get - compute.snapshots.list - compute.snapshots.setLabels 	To create and manage persistent disk snapshots.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.networks.get - compute.networks.list - compute.regions.get - compute.regions.list - compute.subnetworks.get - compute.subnetworks.list - compute.zoneOperations.get - compute.zones.get - compute.zones.list 	To get the networking information needed to create a new Cloud Volumes ONTAP virtual machine instance.

Actions	Purpose
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - deploymentmanager.compositeTypes.get - deploymentmanager.compositeTypes.list - deploymentmanager.deployments.create - deploymentmanager.deployments.delete - deploymentmanager.deployments.get - deploymentmanager.deployments.list - deploymentmanager.manifests.get - deploymentmanager.manifests.list - deploymentmanager.operations.get - deploymentmanager.operations.list - deploymentmanager.resources.get - deploymentmanager.resources.list - deploymentmanager.typeProviders.get - deploymentmanager.typeProviders.list - deploymentmanager.types.get - deploymentmanager.types.list 	To deploy the Cloud Volumes ONTAP virtual machine instance using Google Cloud Deployment Manager.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - logging.logEntries.list - logging.privateLogEntries.list 	To get stack log drives.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - resourcemanager.projects.get 	To support multi-projects.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - storage.buckets.create - storage.buckets.delete - storage.buckets.get - storage.buckets.list - storage.buckets.update 	To create and manage a Google Cloud Storage bucket for data tiering.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - cloudkms.cryptoKeyVersions.useToEncrypt - cloudkms.cryptoKeys.get - cloudkms.cryptoKeys.list - cloudkms.keyRings.list 	To use customer-managed encryption keys from the Cloud Key Management Service with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - compute.instances.setServiceAccount - iam.serviceAccounts.getIamPolicy - iam.serviceAccounts.list 	To set a service account on the Cloud Volumes ONTAP instance. This service account provides permissions for data tiering to a Google Cloud Storage bucket.

Default configurations

Details about how Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP are configured by default can help you administer the systems.

Default configuration for Cloud Manager on Linux

If you need to troubleshoot Cloud Manager or your Linux host, it might help to understand how Cloud Manager is configured.

- If you deployed Cloud Manager from NetApp Cloud Central (or directly from a cloud provider's marketplace), note the following:
 - In AWS, the user name for the EC2 Linux instance is ec2-user.
 - The operating system for the Cloud Manager image is as follows:
 - AWS: Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.5 (HVM)
 - Azure: Red Hat Enterprise Linux 7.6 (HVM)
 - GCP: CentOS 7.6

The operating system does not include a GUI. You must use a terminal to access the system.

- The Cloud Manager installation folder resides in the following location:

/opt/application/netapp/cloudmanager

- Log files are contained in the following folder:

/opt/application/netapp/cloudmanager/log

- The Cloud Manager service is named occm.
- The occm service is dependent on the MySQL service.

If the MySQL service is down, then the occm service is down too.

- Cloud Manager installs the following packages on the Linux host, if they are not already installed:
 - 7Zip
 - AWSCLI
 - Java
 - Kubectl
 - MySQL
 - Tridentctl
 - Wget

Default configuration for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

Understanding how Cloud Volumes ONTAP is configured by default can help you set up and administer your systems, especially if you are familiar with ONTAP because the default setup for Cloud Volumes ONTAP is different than ONTAP.

- Cloud Volumes ONTAP is available as a single-node system in AWS, Azure, and GCP, and as an HA pair in AWS and Azure.
- Cloud Manager creates one data-serving SVM when it deploys Cloud Volumes ONTAP. Using multiple data-serving SVMs is not supported.
- Cloud Manager automatically installs the following ONTAP feature licenses on Cloud Volumes ONTAP:
 - CIFS
 - FlexCache
 - FlexClone
 - iSCSI
 - NetApp Volume Encryption (only for BYOL or registered PAYGO systems)
 - NFS
 - SnapMirror
 - SnapRestore
 - SnapVault
- Several network interfaces are created by default:
 - A cluster management LIF
 - An intercluster LIF
 - An SVM management LIF on HA systems in Azure, single node systems in AWS, and optionally on HA systems in multiple AWS Availability Zones
 - A node management LIF
 - An iSCSI data LIF
 - A CIFS and NFS data LIF



LIF failover is disabled by default for Cloud Volumes ONTAP due to EC2 requirements. Migrating a LIF to a different port breaks the external mapping between IP addresses and network interfaces on the instance, making the LIF inaccessible.

- Cloud Volumes ONTAP sends configuration backups to Cloud Manager using HTTPS.

When logged in to Cloud Manager, the backups are accessible from <https://ipaddress/occm/offboxconfig>

- Cloud Manager sets a few volume attributes differently than other management tools (System Manager or the CLI, for example).

The following table lists the volume attributes that Cloud Manager sets differently from the

defaults:

Attribute	Value set by Cloud Manager
Autosize mode	grow
Maximum autosize	1,000 percent
	 The Account Admin can modify this value from the Settings page.
Security style	NTFS for CIFS volumes UNIX for NFS volumes
Space guarantee style	none
UNIX permissions (NFS only)	777

See the *volume create* man page for information about these attributes.

Boot and root data for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

In addition to the storage for user data, Cloud Manager also purchases cloud storage for boot and root data on each Cloud Volumes ONTAP system.

AWS

- Two disks per node for boot and root data:
 - 9.7: 160 GB io1 disk for boot data and a 220 GB gp2 disk for root data
 - 9.6: 93 GB io1 disk for boot data and a 140 GB gp2 disk for root data
 - 9.5: 45 GB io1 disk for boot data and a 140 GB gp2 disk for root data
- One EBS snapshot for each boot disk and root disk
- For HA pairs, one EBS volume for the Mediator instance, which is approximately 8 GB

Azure (single node)

- Two Premium SSD disks:
 - One 90 GB disk for boot data
 - One 140 GB disk for root data
- One Azure snapshot for each boot disk and root disk

Azure (HA pairs)

- Two 90 GB Premium SSD disks for the boot volume (one per node)
- Two 140 GB Premium Storage page blobs for the root volume (one per node)
- Two 128 GB Standard HDD disks for saving cores (one per node)
- One Azure snapshot for each boot disk and root disk

GCP

- One 10 GB Standard persistent disk for boot data
- One 64 GB Standard persistent disk for root data
- One 500 GB Standard persistent disk for NVRAM
- One 216 GB Standard persistent disk for saving cores
- One GCP snapshot each for the boot disk and root disk

Where the disks reside

Cloud Manager lays out the storage as follows:

- Boot data resides on a disk attached to the instance or virtual machine.

This disk, which contains the boot image, is not available to Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

- Root data, which contains the system configuration and logs, resides in aggr0.
- The storage virtual machine (SVM) root volume resides in aggr1.
- Data volumes also reside in aggr1.

Encryption

Boot and root disks are always encrypted in Azure and Google Cloud Platform because encryption is enabled by default in those cloud providers.

When you enable data encryption in AWS using the Key Management Service (KMS), the boot and root disks for Cloud Volumes ONTAP are encrypted, as well. This includes the boot disk for the mediator instance in an HA pair. The disks are encrypted using the CMK that you select when you create the working environment.

Roles

The Account Admin and Workspace Admin roles provide specific permissions to users.

Task	Account Admin	Workspace Admin
Manage working environments	Yes	Yes, for associated workspaces
View data replication status	Yes	Yes, for associated workspaces
View the timeline	Yes	Yes, for associated workspaces
Delete working environments	Yes	No
Connect Kubernetes clusters to Cloud Volumes ONTAP	Yes	No
Receive the Cloud Volumes ONTAP report	Yes	No
Manage Cloud Central accounts	Yes	No
Manage cloud provider accounts	Yes	No
Modify Cloud Manager settings	Yes	No
View and manage the Support Dashboard	Yes	No
Remove working environments from Cloud Manager	Yes	No
Update Cloud Manager	Yes	No
Install an HTTPS certificate	Yes	No
Set up Active Directory	Yes	No

Related links

- [Setting up workspaces and users in the Cloud Central account](#)
- [Managing workspaces and users in the Cloud Central account](#)

Where to get help and find more information

You can get help and find more information about Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP through various resources, including videos, forums, and support.

- [NetApp Cloud Volumes ONTAP Support](#)

Access support resources to get help and troubleshoot issues with Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

- [Videos for Cloud Manager and Cloud Volumes ONTAP](#)

Watch videos that show you how to deploy and manage Cloud Volumes ONTAP and how to replicate data across your hybrid cloud.

- [Policies for Cloud Manager](#)

Download JSON files that include the permissions that Cloud Manager needs to perform actions in a cloud provider.

- [Cloud Manager API Developer Guide](#)

Read an overview of the APIs, examples of how to use them, and an API reference.

- Training for Cloud Volumes ONTAP

- [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Fundamentals](#)
- [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Deployment and Management for Azure](#)
- [Cloud Volumes ONTAP Deployment and Management for AWS](#)

- Technical reports

- [NetApp Technical Report 4383: Performance Characterization of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Amazon Web Services with Application Workloads](#)
- [NetApp Technical Report 4671: Performance Characterization of Cloud Volumes ONTAP in Azure with Application Workloads](#)
- [NetApp Technical Report 4816: Performance Characterization of Cloud Volumes ONTAP for Google Cloud](#)

- SVM disaster recovery

SVM disaster recovery is the asynchronous mirroring of SVM data and configuration from a source SVM to a destination SVM. You can quickly activate a destination SVM for data access if the source SVM is no longer available.

- [Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9 SVM Disaster Recovery Preparation Express Guide](#)

Describes how to quickly configure a destination SVM in preparation for disaster recovery.

- [Cloud Volumes ONTAP 9 SVM Disaster Recovery Express Guide](#)

Describes how to quickly activate a destination SVM after a disaster, and then reactivate the source SVM.

- [FlexCache Volumes for Faster Data Access Power Guide](#)

Describes how to create and manage FlexCache volumes in the same cluster or different cluster as the origin volume for accelerating data access.

- [Security advisories](#)

Identify known vulnerabilities (CVEs) for NetApp products, including ONTAP. Note that you can remediate security vulnerabilities for Cloud Volumes ONTAP by following ONTAP documentation.

- [ONTAP 9 Documentation Center](#)

Access product documentation for ONTAP, which can help you as you use Cloud Volumes ONTAP.

- [NetApp Community: Cloud Data Services](#)

Connect with peers, ask questions, exchange ideas, find resources, and share best practices.

- [NetApp Cloud Central](#)

Find information about additional NetApp products and solutions for the cloud.

- [NetApp Product Documentation](#)

Search NetApp product documentation for instructions, resources, and answers.

Earlier versions of Cloud Manager documentation

Documentation for previous releases of Cloud Manager is available in case you're not running the latest version.

- [Cloud Manager 3.7](#)
- [Cloud Manager 3.6](#)
- [Cloud Manager 3.5](#)
- [Cloud Manager 3.4](#)
- [Cloud Manager 3.3](#)
- [Cloud Manager 3.2](#)

Legal notices

Legal notices provide access to copyright statements, trademarks, patents, and more.

Copyright

<http://www.netapp.com/us/legal/copyright.aspx>

Trademarks

NETAPP, the NETAPP logo, and the marks listed on the NetApp Trademarks page are trademarks of NetApp, Inc. Other company and product names may be trademarks of their respective owners.

<http://www.netapp.com/us/legal/netapptmlist.aspx>

Patents

A current list of NetApp owned patents can be found at:

<https://www.netapp.com/us/media/patents-page.pdf>

Privacy policy

<https://www.netapp.com/us/legal/privacypolicy/index.aspx>

Open source

Notice files provide information about third-party copyright and licenses used in NetApp software.

- [Notice for Cloud Manager 3.8.5](#)
- [Notice for Cloud Manager 3.8.4](#)
- [Notice for Cloud Manager 3.8.3](#)
- [Notice for Cloud Manager 3.8.2](#)
- [Notice for Cloud Manager 3.8.1](#)
- [Notice for Cloud Manager 3.8](#)
- [Notice for the Cloud Backup Service](#)

Copyright Information

Copyright © 2020 NetApp, Inc. All rights reserved. Printed in the U.S. No part of this document covered by copyright may be reproduced in any form or by any means-graphic, electronic, or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, taping, or storage in an electronic retrieval system-without prior written permission of the copyright owner.

Software derived from copyrighted NetApp material is subject to the following license and disclaimer:

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NETAPP "AS IS" AND WITHOUT ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, WHICH ARE HEREBY DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NETAPP BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

NetApp reserves the right to change any products described herein at any time, and without notice. NetApp assumes no responsibility or liability arising from the use of products described herein, except as expressly agreed to in writing by NetApp. The use or purchase of this product does not convey a license under any patent rights, trademark rights, or any other intellectual property rights of NetApp.

The product described in this manual may be protected by one or more U.S. patents, foreign patents, or pending applications.

RESTRICTED RIGHTS LEGEND: Use, duplication, or disclosure by the government is subject to restrictions as set forth in subparagraph (c)(1)(ii) of the Rights in Technical Data and Computer Software clause at DFARS 252.277-7103 (October 1988) and FAR 52-227-19 (June 1987).

Trademark Information

NETAPP, the NETAPP logo, and the marks listed at <http://www.netapp.com/TM> are trademarks of NetApp, Inc. Other company and product names may be trademarks of their respective owners.